

1st
PREP
SECOND TERM

 **AL ADWAA**
Gem

2025

**BEYOND
BEYONDS**

HELLO!



Contents

Module 4

Unit 7

Helping each other to learn 6

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7 45

Unit 8

New life in old cities 49

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8 89

Module 4 Question Bank 93

Module 5

Unit 9

Plans with friends 96

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9 137

Review

Review C 141

Unit 10

The Online Generation 144

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10 177

Module 5 Question Bank 181

Module 6

Unit 11

Clean transportation 184

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11 223

Unit 12

Sustainable tourism 227

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12 264

Review

Review D 268

Answers

Listening Texts 270

Challenging Questions Answers 271

4 MODULE

مقرر الشهور
فبراير ومارس



Unit 7 Helping each other to learn

Unit 8 New life in old cities

Module 4 Question Bank

Unit

7

HELPING EACH OTHER TO LEARN



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading Forum posts about learning in an eco-friendly way, and facts and opinions about how the brain works

Writing A reflective journal entry

Listening A conversation about learning something new

Speaking Talking about learning

Language Wh- object questions in the present and past; defining relative clauses

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان؛ حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

device (n)	جهاز	nervous (adj)	عصبي/ متوتر
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	natural (adj)	طبيعي
electric light (n)	مصباح كهربائي	print (ed) (v)	يطبع
electricity (n)	كهرباء	recycled (adj)	مُعاد تدويره
energy (n)	طاقة	reduce (d) (v)	يقلل
environmentally friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكر
exist (ed) (v)	يوجد/ يتواجد	save (d) (v)	يوفر/ يدخر/ يحفظ
experience (n)	تجربة (حياتية)	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
grade (n)	مرحلة/ صف	sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
learning (n)	التعلم	tricky (adj)	صعب/ معقد/ مخادع
material (n)	مادة (خام)	waste (n)	نفايات

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

article (n)	مقال	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
classmate (n)	زميل الدراسة	relax (ed) (v)	يسرخى
cycle (d) (v)	يركب دراجة	spelling (n)	الهجاء
dessert (n)	حلوى/ تحلية	sentence (n)	جملة
following (adj)	الآتي/ التالي	student forum (n)	منتدى الطلاب
funny (adj)	مضحك	sweet strawberry	فراولة حلوة
letter (n)	حرف	text (n)	نص
meaning (n)	معنى	tips (n)	نصائح/ تلميحات
nature (n)	طبيعة	tired (adj)	مرهق/ متعب

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: **protect – reduce – electric – exist**

- 1 Many different types of animals in the ocean.
- 2 Celine wears gloves to her hands from the cold.
- 3 We should turn off the lights before going to bed.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Helping each other to learn

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> an exercise	يحل تمرينًا	have	> a choice an effect on	لديه اختيار لديه تأثير على
get	> dark	تصبح مظلمة	practice	> a presentation	يتدرب على عرض تقديمي
give	> a presentation suggestions	يقدم عرضًا تقديميًا يقدم اقتراحات	take	> a break public transportation	يأخذ فترة راحة يستقل وسائل النقل العام
highlight	> words	يظلل الكلمات	underline	> words	يضع خطًا تحت الكلمات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

on both sides of	على كلا الجانبين	pick up	يلتقط
a piece of	قطعة من	worried about	قلق على
get to	يصل إلى	link to	يوصل بـ
make into	يتحول إلى		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
begin يبدأ	began	begun	spell يتهجى	spelt	spelt
give يعطي	gave	given	understand يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
easy/simple	سهل / بسيط	hard/difficult	صعب	turn on (جهاز)	يفتح (جهاز)	turn off	يغلق (جهاز)
quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب	useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة

Check Point

Choose and complete: **useful – spell – up – on – take**

- I can't that word. Can you help me?
- You look tired. Why don't you a break?
- A flashlight is when the power goes out.
- Please, pick your toys after you finish playing.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Words/ expressions + to + inf.

ready (to + inf.)

- We're **ready to help** our community.

a way (to + inf.)

- That's a clever **way to solve** the problem.

كلمات وتعبيرات يأتي بعدها (to + inf.)

مستعد لـ

طريقة لـ

2 for + a period of time

- I plan to study **for the next twenty minutes**.

لمدة (يأتي بعدها مدة زمنية)

3 Sequence

التسلسل (كلمات تستخدم لترتيب أحداث)

أخيراً **finally** – بعد ذلك **after that** – التالى **next** – ثم **then** – أولاً **first**

- First**, we'll mix the eggs and sugar. **Then**, we'll add the flour. **After that**, heat it for ten minutes. **Finally**, we'll pour sauce on top before serving.

4 However

- She studied hard. **However**, she failed the exam.

ومع ذلك (تبين التناقض)

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 First, we'll set up the tent., we'll start a fire.

a) However b) But c) Then d) Because

- 2 I plan to travel two weeks.

a) at b) for c) on d) with

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
waste (n)	نفايات	rubbish	قمامة
helpful (adj)	مفيد/نافع	useful	مفيد

Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
pollute (v)	يلوث	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		pollution (n)	التلوث
suggest (v)	يقترح					suggestion (n)	اقتراح

Prefix


Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
eco-			تعنى متصلاً بالبيئة	friendly (adj)	ودود	eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 1: What helps us to learn?

- What problems do you face while learning English?

 Read and listen to the two posts from a student forum about learning. **SB page 5**

(A)

I was in **Grade**⁽¹⁾ 7 English last year and I really enjoyed it. From my **experiences**⁽²⁾ I have some suggestions to help you learn. When you read a **text**⁽³⁾, it is useful to **underline**⁽⁴⁾ new words or highlight them. I find it easy to remember the meaning of the words, but I sometimes find it difficult to remember how to spell them. I read online that you can remind yourself of tricky spelling words by linking them to other words. For example, I always forget the difference between **desert** and **dessert**. I tell myself that dessert has two 's' letters, so it reminds of **sweet strawberry** desserts! Sweet strawberry begins with two 's' letters like the word dessert, which is a sweet food to eat. Desert has only one 's' so it is a piece of land, not a kind of food.

Amr, 14

(B)

Hi Amr!

Thank you for your post, it was very interesting. I'm not really worried about learning new words, or spelling as this is something I am good at. However, the idea of underlining or highlighting new words is very useful, so I will try that this year. What makes me **nervous**⁽⁵⁾ is when I have to give a **presentation**⁽⁶⁾ in class. Can you give me any suggestions about that? What is a good way to practice a presentation? Also, my mom says it is good to take a break when you are tired. What do you think? What did you do in grade 7 when you needed a break?

Dalia, 13



(1) صف

(2) خبرات

(3) نص

(4) يضع خطاً تحت



(5) متوتر

(6) عرض تقديمي


Post-reading questions:

- 1 What does Amr find easy to learn?
- 2 What does Dalia have problems with?

Lesson 2: Learning in an environmentally friendly way

Pre-reading question:

- How can we help the environment while we're studying?

 **Read and listen to the article. Match the topics to the paragraphs. SB page 6**

Studying and the environment

When we are learning, it is important to think about the **environment**⁽¹⁾. Everyone knows how important it is to protect our planet. Here are some simple **tips**⁽²⁾ to make your learning more **eco-friendly**⁽³⁾. The nice thing is that these ideas are easy to do.



- (1) **Saving paper** First, try to use less paper. Why don't you use a computer or tablet to take notes or to read books? This way, you save paper and help the environment. I know these **devices**⁽⁴⁾ are quite new. What did people do in the past? People couldn't use a computer because they didn't **exist**⁽⁵⁾, but today we have a **choice**⁽⁶⁾. Another thing that is important to think about is what to do when you want to print something. One idea is to print on both sides of the paper to **reduce**⁽⁷⁾ waste.
- (2) **When you study** When do you usually study? A lot of students study in the evening when it gets dark. But ask yourself this question: How did people study before there were **electric lights**⁽⁸⁾? You can save energy while studying. Turn off lights and devices when you are not using them. Try to study during the day so you can use natural sunlight. This will help you use less electricity.
- (3) **What you use when you study** Next, ask yourself the following: What **materials**⁽⁹⁾ do I use when I study? Pick up a pen and look at it. Is it made from plastic? The answer is probably: yes. Nowadays you can buy pens made from recycled materials and notebooks that use recycled paper.
- (4) **Traveling to school** Finally, how do you get to school? Why not walk, cycle, or take **public transportation**⁽¹⁰⁾ to school, to help reduce pollution?

- (1) البيئة
- (2) نصائح
- (3) صديق للبيئة
- (4) أجهزة
- (5) يتواجد
- (6) اختيار
- (7) يقلل
- (8) مصابيح كهربائية
- (9) مواد خام
- (10) المواصلات العامة

Post-reading question:

- What is the article about?.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mariam shared her travel with her classmates. She had many adventures.
a) forums b) experiences c) experiments d) materials
2. It's important to water.
a) save b) learn c) think d) waste
3. Plants need to grow faster.
a) electricity b) sunlight c) pollution d) trash
4. The English test was because the sentences were long and complicated.
a) simple b) tricky c) easy d) quiet
5. This book is very for learning English; you must read it.
a) helpless b) ready c) tired d) helpful
6. Mazin told a story that made everyone laugh.
a) complex b) serious c) funny d) helpful
7. We need to recycle more to reduce
a) waste b) sunlight c) energy d) power
8. This picture always me of our vacation in Paris.
a) forgets b) remembers c) reminds d) reduces
9. We can use products to help protect the environment.
a) eco-friendly b) electricity c) environmentally d) friendly
10. My family and I are all worried my ill grandparent.
a) about b) of c) at d) with

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

natural – reduces – energy – planet – devices

Learning doesn't just help us grow smarter—it's also a chance to care for our (1)..... . Turn off lights and (2)..... when you don't need them. Study during the day so you can use (3)..... sunlight. Try writing on recycled paper or using a tablet or laptop for notes. Using less paper saves trees and (4)..... waste. By making small changes, you can study in a way that helps protect the environment.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

SB

1. Do you think when and how you study has any on the environment?
a) effect b) affect c) practice d) link
2. It is useful to new words or highlight them.
a) appear b) underline c) miss d) forget
3. Sometimes, I find it to remember how to spell words, so I ask my teacher.
a) easy b) funny c) difficult d) useless
4. Adam feels worried when he needs to a presentation in class.
a) think b) write c) do d) give
5. My little sister is in two in a primary school.
a) floor b) grade c) article d) guide
6. Turn devices when you are not using them.
a) up b) into c) on d) off
7. We can use to reduce pollution.
a) electricity b) public transportation
c) energy d) private transportation
8. To help reduce pollution, you can to school.
a) recycle b) highlight c) cycle d) drive
9. One way to reduce waste is to on both sides of the paper.
a) cycle b) print c) repair d) relax
10. Try to link tricky spelling words other words to help you remember them.
a) at b) to c) in d) of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

practice – make – tip – presentation – give

Giving presentations is a problem for many students, but there are ways to make it easier. One helpful (1) is to practice aloud in front of a mirror or a friend. This helps you more comfortable. You can also (2) notes or highlight the main ideas in your (3), so you don't forget the important points. The more you (4), the more comfortable you will become.

حلل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Wh- object questions forms (present/past)

- e.g. • What do you want to buy?
• Who did you meet at the club yesterday?

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use these questions to help us get more details and understand things better.
نستخدم هذه الأسئلة لمساعدتنا في الحصول على المزيد من التفاصيل وفهم الأمور بشكل أفضل.

- When we ask questions in English, we often use Wh- words. These are words like what, where, when, why, and how.

- عندما نطرح أسئلة باللغة الإنجليزية، فإننا غالباً ما نستخدم كلمات تبدأ بـ Wh. وهي كلمات مثل what و where و when و why و how. هيا بنا نراجع كلمات الاستفهام وفيم تستخدم:

Question Words

كلمات الاستفهام

What	ما/ماذا	How	كيف	How heavy	كم الوزن
When	متى	How many	كم عدد	How long	كم المدة
Where	أين	How much	كم الثمن/الكمية	How far	كم البعد/المسافة
Who	من	How often	كم مرة	How fast	كم السرعة
Which	أى/أيهما	How old	كم العمر	How wide	كم العرض/الاتساع
Why	لماذا	How tall	كم الطول	How deep	كم العمق
Whose	ملك من/لن	How high	كم الارتفاع	What kind	ما نوع

Form

التكوين

1 In the present

في المضارع

Q. Word + do + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + أداة استفهام
مصدر الفعل. inf.

e.g. A: What time do your kids get up? B: They get up at 6 o'clock.

Q. Word + does + he, she, it, اسم مفرد + أداة استفهام
مصدر الفعل. inf.

e.g. A: When does Sally go to work? B: She goes to work at 9 a.m.

لاحظ

١- عند الإجابة عن سؤال وبه الفعل المساعد (does) نضيف للفعل (s, es, ies).

٢- يمكن استخدام (am/is/are) إذا لم يأت فعل في المصدر وجاء صفة أو اسماً أو حرف جر.

e.g. A: Why are you late? B: I am late because the traffic is slow.

• A: How is your father? B: He is fine.



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What (do) Khalid do every morning?
- الإجابة الصحيحة (does) لأن الفاعل مفرد والسؤال في زمن المضارع البسيط.
- Where (does) Omar?
- الإجابة الصحيحة (is) لأنه لا يوجد فعل في المصدر في الجملة ولوجود اسم.

2

In the past

في الماضي

Q. Word + inf. + subject + did + أداة استفهام

e.g. A: Where did you go on vacation?

B: I went to Paris.

• A: Why didn't Hala answer the phone?

B: She didn't answer the phone because she was busy.

Subject: الفاعل
I, we, they,
you, he, she, it,
اسم مفرد، اسم جمع

لاحظ



١ - عند الإجابة عن سؤال به الفعل المساعد (did) نحول الفعل الأساسي إلى ماضٍ.

٢ - نستخدم (was/were) إذا لم يأت فعل في المصدر وجاء صفة أو اسمًا أو حرف جر.

e.g. A: Why weren't you at school yesterday?

B: I wasn't at school because I traveled yesterday.



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A: What (do) you buy from the mall?
B: I bought a new dress.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (did) لأن الفعل في الإجابة (bought) في زمن الماضي البسيط.
- How (did) your last birthday party?
- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (was) لأن الفاعل مفرد، ولا يوجد مصدر للفعل في السؤال.

لاحظ



أنا لا نستخدم (do/does/did) إذا كنا نسأل عن الفاعل.

e.g. A: Who helps you with your homework?

B: My mom helps me with my homework.

• A: How many people live in Cairo?

B: About ten million people.

• A: Who carried this heavy box for you?

B: My son.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. **A:** did you order for dinner? **B:** I ordered pizza.
 a) What b) When c) Where d) Why
2. movie did Dareen watch last night?
 a) When b) Which c) Who d) Where
3. Who you meet at the party yesterday?
 a) were b) do c) are d) did
4. Where does your father?
 a) work b) works c) working d) worked
5. What the main goals of the meeting?
 a) is b) are c) do d) does
6. Who your favorite teacher when you were in high school?
 a) is b) was c) were d) are
7. Where they live when they were young?
 a) were b) did c) do d) are
8. Who the book yesterday?
 a) bought b) buy c) buys d) buying

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What (are) you eat for breakfast every day?
2. Who (was) the teacher talk to after class yesterday?
3. **A:** How (do) Jana go to school? **B:** She cycles to school.
4. Where (did) the hotel you stayed at during the trip?
5. **A:** (Who) do you go to school? **B:** By bus.
6. Whose car (do) you borrow last weekend?
7. What did the doctor (told) him yesterday?
8. **A:** (How) drew this picture? **B:** Amira.
9. Why does your sister (woke) up so early in the morning?
10. **A:** What time (was) your English class? **B:** It's at 10 on Mondays.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What did Fadel last weekend?
a) doing b) did c) do d) does
- What time you go to school yesterday?
a) were b) weren't c) didn't d) did
- Who with your homework?
a) did you help b) helped you c) helping you d) you helped
- How your sister feel after the previous test?
a) did b) has c) is d) was
- Where yesterday?
a) were you b) you were c) are you d) you are
- What she wear to the party last night?
a) did b) does c) was d) is
- How do you today?
a) felt b) feels c) feel d) feeling
- What your favorite color?
a) is b) are c) did d) were

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- (What) far is the nearest hospital from here?
- When did you (finished) your homework?
- A:** (Where) did you buy at the market? **B:** I bought some cheese.
- Whose pen (this is)?
- Who (is) the winner of the previous competition?
- Where (does) students usually study?
- A:** How (long) do you visit your grandparents in the village?
B: Twice a month.
- Which book did you (borrowing) from the library?
- Why (weren't) you come to the party yesterday?
- Who (win) the football match last week?

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Talking about how you learn something new

التحدث عن كيفية تعلمك لشيء جديد

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد



online



What do you find easy/difficult to learn? ما الذي تجديه سهلاً/صعباً في التعلم؟

I find it easy to remember the meaning of new words.



أجد من السهل أن أتذكر معاني الكلمات الجديدة.

I find it difficult to remember the spelling of new words.

أجد من الصعب تذكر هجاء الكلمات الجديدة.



What idea can you use to help you? ما الفكرة التي يمكنك أن تستخدمها لمساعدتك؟

I can use the idea of underlining or highlighting new words to help me remember them.



يمكنني استخدام فكرة وضع خط أو تظليل الكلمات الجديدة لمساعدتي على حفظها.



What do you have problems with?

ما الشيء الذي تجدي به مشاكل؟

I have problems with giving presentations in class.



لدي مشاكل في تقديم عروض تقديمية في الفصل.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► **Habiba and Nermin are talking about learning new things.**

Habiba : What do you find when you learn new vocabulary?

Nermin : I find it easy to (1)..... the meaning of new words.

Habiba : (2)..... about the spelling?

Nermin : I find it difficult to remember the spelling.

Habiba : (3)..... you have problems with anything else?

Nermin : Yes, I have a problem with the presentation.

Habiba : You should practice in front of a mirror or with a friend to feel more comfortable.

Nermin : (4)..... for your advice.



2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about learning in an eco-friendly way

كيفية الكتابة عن التعلم بطريقة صديقة للبيئة

(1) What eco-friendly study materials can we use?

(2) How can we reduce using paper while studying?

(3) How can we save energy while studying?

How to learn in an eco-friendly way

(4) How can we reduce pollution while getting to school?

(5) Why should we make these changes?

Example

"How to learn in an eco-friendly way"

We can learn in an eco-friendly way by making small changes. We can walk, use bikes, or use public transport to get to school to reduce pollution. We can choose eco-friendly study materials like recycled notebooks and pens made from sustainable materials. We can take notes on a computer or tablet instead of using notebooks to reduce paper. We can study during daylight hours and turn off lights and devices when not in use to save energy. By making these simple changes, we can help protect our planet.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Learning in an environmentally friendly way"

Writing tips

Use capital letters at the beginning of sentences, names, the pronoun "I", and famous places.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجمل وأسماء الأشخاص والضمير «أ» والأماكن الشهيرة.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What does the word "enormous" mean?
a) Very small. b) Very big. c) Very fast. d) Very light.
- How did the speaker practice saying the word "enormous"?
a) By reading it in a book. b) By writing it down.
c) By saying it aloud. d) Both b & c.
- What sentence did the speaker's friend use to help?
a) The car is enormous! b) The elephant is enormous!
c) The cat is enormous! d) The house is enormous!

(B) Listen and complete:

- The speaker found it to say the word "enormous".
- Learning new words is
- The speaker felt after practicing and using the word correctly.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- This bag is made from materials.
a) recycled b) friendly c) tricky d) useless
- The mobile phone is a very useful
a) material b) advice c) device d) grade

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

practice – feel – planet – boring – simple

Learning new words is always exciting! Some words are (1)..... like "cat" and "dog." However, there are also words that are a little harder to remember, like "adventure" or "delicious," which take more (2)..... The most difficult part is when I learn a long phrase, like "environmentally friendly," which means how to protect our (3)..... Once I understand these words, I (4)..... proud because they help me express myself better.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What did Youmna to the event?
a) wearing b) wears c) wore d) wear
- What your plans for the weekend?
a) are b) do c) did d) will

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What does he (needs) to buy from the store?
2. Why (do) you late?
3. Where (were) they travel last summer?
4. **A:** How much (do) this shirt cost? **B:** It costs L.E. 600.

6 Complete the following dialog:

Anas is asking Amar about how to be eco-friendly while studying.

Anas : Hi Amar, how are you?

Amar : I'm (1)....., thanks.

Anas : (2)..... can we be eco-friendly while studying?

Amar : We can turn off lights when we're not using them.

Anas : (3)..... else can we do to save energy?

Amar : We can also use less paper.

Anas : Do you think these changes will make a difference?

Amar : Yes, I think these small changes can help (4).....
our planet.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Ways to be an eco-friendly student"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I want to know how (go/you) to school.
2. Why (didn't) you not join the school football team?
3. What (you/do) before breakfast every day?

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

animal kingdom (n)	مملكة الحيوانات	fact (n)	واقع/حقيقة علمية
brain (n)	المخ	grades (n)	درجات
cell (n)	الخلية	habit (n)	عادة
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق/يفحص/يراجع	link (n/v)	رابط/يربط
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	opinion (n)	رأي
complicated (adj)	معقد	research (n)	بحث علمي
complex (adj)	معقد	sperm whale (n)	حوت العنبر
connection (n)	اتصال	truth (n)	حقيقة/صدق
create (d) (v)	يُنشئ	topic (n)	موضوع
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	weigh (ed) (v)	يزن

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	منطقة	kindness (n)	العطف
believe (d) (v)	يعتقد/يظن	letter (n)	خطاب
grammar rules (n)	قواعد النحو	problem-solving	حل المشكلات
grandchild (n)	حفيد	real life (n)	الحياة الواقعية
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	statement (n)	بيان/إفادة/تصريح
hard work (n)	العمل الشاق/الجاد	discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف

Check Point

Choose and complete:

opinion – part – habit – cell

- 1 Adel walks to school every day. It's his
- 2 The is the smallest part of the human body.
- 3 I want to know your on my new story.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> research	يقوم بعمل بحث	get	> enough sleep	يحصل على قدر كافٍ من النوم
create	> a connection	يُنشئ اتصالاً	stay	> active	يبقى نشطاً
learn/ remember	> better	يتعلم/يتذكر بشكل أفضل			

Prepositions

agree/disagree with	يتفق/لا يتفق مع	interested in	مهتم بـ
connect to/with	يربط/يوصل بـ	proud of	فخور بـ
difficult for	صعب لـ	share with	يشارك مع
in my opinion	في رأيي	useful for	مفيد لـ

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
get يحصل على	got	got	teach يُعلم/يُدرس	taught	taught

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
active	نشيط	lazy	كسول	complex	معقد	simple	بسيط
useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة	true	صحيح	false	خطأ
agree (with)	يتفق مع	disagree (with)	يختلف مع	patient	صبور	impatient	غير صبور

Check Point

Choose and complete:

at – in – useless – create

- 1 Social media is a great way to a connection with people around the world.
- 2 This book is very useful. It's not
- 3 My sister is interested drawing.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعابير اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 The difference between fact, opinion, and truth

(A) Fact:

واقع / حقيقة علمية

واقع ملموس ومادى أى يمكن مشاهدته أو قياسه/ قابل للإثبات من خلال الأدلة والبراهين/ لا يتغير بتغير الزمان أو المكان.

- The sun rises every day.
- The heart pumps blood to the body.

(B) Opinion:

رأى

يعبر عما يفكر فيه أو يؤمن به شخص ما، فهو ليس صحيحاً أو خاطئاً بشكل مطلق. قد يعتقد بعض الناس أنه صحيح ويؤمنون به، بينما يعتقد الآخرون أنه خاطئ. نستخدم في الآراء عادةً صفات المقارنة أو التفضيل أو تعابير مثل I think ..., I believe ...

- I think this book is interesting.

(C) Truth:

حقيقة/صدق

هى ما يتوافق مع الواقع، وهى ثابتة ومطلقة/ قد تكون غير قابلة للإثبات المادى/ قد تختلف من شخص لآخر حسب المعتقدات.

- Sleep and rest are important for staying healthy.

2 teach (how to + inf./ to + inf.)

يُعلم كيف أن

- My dad teaches me how to ride a bike.
- The coach teaches us to swim fast.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My father will teach me a car.
a) drive b) drove
c) how drive d) how to drive
- 2 The sun gives us heat during the day. This a/an
a) truth b) fact
c) opinion d) research

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
check (v)	يتحقق/يفحص/يراجع	make sure	يتأكد	grades (n)	درجات	marks	درجات

Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
clear (adj)	واضح	-ly		تحويل الصفة إلى حال		clearly (adv)	بوضوح
connect (v)	يوصل	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		connection (n)	اتصال

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- What do you know about the brain?

Listening Text



Lesson 3: Fact or opinion

SB page 8

Listen and check your ideas for Exercise 1.

Hello, everyone! Today, we are going to talk about the brain. The brain is a very important part of our body. It helps us think, feel, and move. Our brain controls everything we do!

Now, let's look at some statements about the brain. I will tell you if each one is true or false.

Statement 1: We only use about 10% of our brain.

This statement is false. Some people say we only use 10% of our brain, but that is not true. We actually use almost all parts of our brain every day. Different parts of the brain work together to help us do different things, like speaking, moving, and remembering.

Statement 2: A sperm whale's brain is bigger than a person's brain.

This statement is true. The sperm whale has the biggest brain in the animal kingdom⁽¹⁾. Its brain can weigh about 8 kilograms, while a human brain weighs about 1.4 kilograms. Even though the whale's brain is bigger, our brains are more complex⁽²⁾. This makes us good at problem-solving⁽³⁾ and learning.

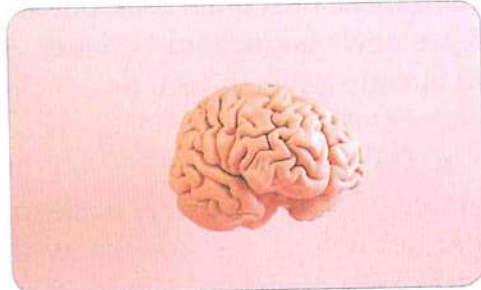
Statement 3: There is a lot that we don't know about the brain.

This statement is true. Scientists know many things about the brain, but there is still a lot we don't understand. The brain is very complicated⁽⁴⁾, and there is much more to discover about how it works.

Post-listening questions:

1 Do they know any other facts about the brain?

2 How do different parts of the brain work?



(1) مملكة


(2) معقد

(3) حل المشكلات

(4) معقد

Pre-reading question:

- Mention one of the functions of the brain.

 Read and listen to the article about the brain.

Lesson 3: Fact or opinion

SB page 9

The truth about the brain

Many people think that when we learn our brains make new brain cells. But actually, we create new connections between brain cells we already have. In fact, one brain cell can connect with up to 10,000 others.

In the past, people **believed**⁽¹⁾ the brain "turned off" when we went to sleep. But with new technology, we now know that some parts of the brain stay **active**⁽²⁾ during sleep. Sleep is very important for learning because it helps us remember things better. In fact, people who get enough sleep can remember about 20% more than those who do not.



(1) يعتقد

(2) نشيط

(3) بحث علمي

(4) يشرح/يفسر

For young people, **research**⁽³⁾ shows that learning feels more interesting if they know how it can help them in real life. About 85% of students say they learn better when they understand why a topic is useful. So, it's important for teachers to **explain**⁽⁴⁾ why lessons are helpful.

Finally, our brains have a habit of telling us that things we agree with are "facts". When we disagree with something, we see it as an opinion. This happens naturally, but it's helpful to remember that just because we agree or disagree with something doesn't mean we are right.

"Giving the main idea" «مهاراة إعطاء الفكرة الأساسية»

- The main idea means what the text is about.

الفكرة الرئيسية تعنى ما يدور حوله النص.

- To find the main idea easily, you should follow these steps:

لتجد الفكرة الرئيسية بسهولة عليك اتباع الخطوات التالية:

1. Look at the title.

انتبه للعنوان

2. Read the first sentence.

اقرأ الجملة الأولى.

3. Read the last sentence.

اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة.

Look for repeated words or phrases.

ابحث عن الكلمات والعبارات المكررة.

Example: What is the main idea of the passage?

Answer:

- The passage talks about how the brain learns, stays active during sleep, and views facts and opinions based on beliefs.



Pre-listening question:

- Who usually gives you advice when you have a problem?

Listen to the conversation and check your ideas for Exercise 1. **SB page 10**

Grandfather I need your help with something, Karim.

Grandson Of course, Grandpa. What do you need?

Grandfather I got this **letter**⁽¹⁾ from work, but I don't know what it says. Can you read it to me?

Grandson Sure, I can help. Why didn't you learn to read and write, Grandpa?

Grandfather When I was young, I had to work to help my family, so I couldn't go to school. Now, I want to learn, but it's hard.

Grandson I understand. I can teach you if you want.

Grandfather That would be great. You are the person whose help I need the most because you're **patient**⁽²⁾.

Grandson We can start with simple words. Do you remember any words that you learned before?

Grandfather Yes, I remember some words, but I forget them quickly. The book that I bought last year is still difficult for me.

Grandson Don't worry, Grandpa. We will go slowly. The important thing is to practice every day.

Grandfather You're right. The more that I practice, the better I'll get. Thanks for helping me, Karim.

Grandson Anytime, Grandpa. I'm happy to help.



(1) خطاب

(2) صبور

Listen to the second part of the conversation.

Grandfather You know, I'm proud of you. You're the one **grandchild**⁽³⁾ in the family who works really hard.

(3) حفيد

(4) العطف

Grandson Thanks Grandpa.

Grandfather Also, the school which you go to now is one of the best in the area.

Grandson Thanks, Grandpa, but it's not just the school. I also learn a lot from you.

Grandfather From me? But I don't know how to read.

Grandson Yes, but you taught me important lessons, like hard work and **kindness**⁽⁴⁾, which are more important than anything I learn from books.

Grandfather That's kind of you to say. I guess we can both learn from each other.

Grandson Exactly. I'll help you with reading, and you can keep teaching me about life.

Grandfather Yes, I believe that home is a place where we can all learn a lot from each other!

Post-listening questions:

1 Who needs help?

.....

2 Why can't he read or write?

.....

3 Why is Karim the best person to help?

.....

4 What does Karim say is important to do?

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An is a large sea animal.
 a) lion b) sperm whale c) elephant d) spider
2. I am proud my sister for winning the race.
 a) for b) of c) to d) off
3. Reading before bed is a good
 a) habit b) cell c) sign d) signal
4. Can you this lesson again? I can't understand it well.
 a) find b) tell c) explain d) check
5. Aya loves to active, so she plays sports.
 a) play b) stay c) make d) get
6. It's important to connections with your friends.
 a) do b) receive c) create d) get
7. Be while waiting for your turn.
 a) lazy b) weak c) patient d) expensive
8. It is a/an that the Earth moves around the sun.
 a) truth b) fact c) opinion d) research
9. The helps you think and learn.
 a) cell b) hair c) heart d) brain
10. Click on the to open the website.
 a) contact b) link c) connection d) grade

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

remember – becomes – cells – learns – connection

When you learn something new, information enters your brain through your eyes or ears. The brain (1)..... connect to each other when they receive this information. If the brain cells keep sending signals اشارات with the same information, a (2)..... forms between them. Over time, this connection becomes stronger, helping you (3)..... the information better. This is how your brain (4)..... and stores new things.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Many scientists study the animal to understand how animals live.
a) planet b) kingdom c) ground d) land
2. In, our brain is the most important part in our body.
a) fact b) opinion c) truth d) research
3. It is difficult young children to express their feelings clearly.
a) to b) with c) for d) of
4. That's a question. I can't answer it.
a) easy b) complex c) simple d) delicious
5. The human brain is all the time.
a) lazy b) active c) weak d) cheap
6. My teacher explained the lessons; we all understood it.
a) clearly b) lonely c) really d) only
7. Students should study grammar well.
a) rolls b) rules c) cells d) research
8. We our information with each other in the class.
a) join b) believe c) explain d) share
9. We should always enough sleep.
a) get b) become c) begin d) remind
10. Hana got good on her report card.
a) connections b) grades c) opinions d) links

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

disagree – research – taking – useful – making

Many people think learning is just about memorizing facts, but it's really about making connections in the brain. In the past, people thought (1) breaks while studying was not helpful, but (2) now shows breaks can help the brain. Students learn better when they know how it is (3) for them, so teachers should explain this. Also, when we agree with someone, we often believe it's a fact, but when we (4), we think it's just an opinion.

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 

C Language

Defining Relative Clauses

جمل الوصل المحددة

e.g. This is **the teacher** **who** helped me with math.

Usage الاستخدام

A relative clause gives us more information about a noun in the main clause.
جملة الوصل تعطينا مزيداً من المعلومات حول الاسم الموجود في الجملة الرئيسية.

الذي/التي (للعاقل) **who**

We use "**who**" when we talk about people.

- نستخدم «**who**» عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص (العاقل).

- e.g. • I saw **the boy** **who** won the prize.
• **The student** **who** studies hard always gets good grades.

الذي لديه (للملكية) **whose**

We use "**whose**" to show possession by people or things.

- نستخدم «**whose**» لتوضيح ملكية شخص/غير عاقل لشيء ما.

- e.g. • **That's the boy** **whose** father is a teacher at school.
• **The house** **whose** windows are broken needs repair.

الذي/التي (لغير العاقل) **which**

We use "**which**" when we talk about things or ideas.

- نستخدم «**which**» عندما نتحدث عن الأشياء أو الأفكار (غير العاقل).

- e.g. • **The book** **which** I read was very exciting.
• I bought **the dress** **which** we saw yesterday.

حيث (للمكان) **where**

We use "**where**" to talk about location.

- نستخدم «**where**» للتحدث عن المكان.

- e.g. • **The class is the place** **where** I meet my friends.
• **That's the supermarket** **where** I bought the groceries.

الذي/التي (عاقل أو غير العاقل) **that**

We use "**that**" for both people and things, but it is more informal.

- نستخدم «**that**» لكل من الأشخاص والأشياء أي (العاقل وغير العاقل)، ولكنها بطريقة غير رسمية.

- e.g. • **The bike** **that** I got for my birthday is blue.
• **The boy** **that** helped me is very kind.

عندما (للزمن) **when**

We use "**when**" to talk about time.

- نستخدم «**when**» للتحدث عن الزمن/الوقت.

- e.g. • **Morning is the time** **when** I learn best.
• **October is the month** **when** I was born.



Got it ?

تمتلك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Sally is the girl (**which**) gets the full marks in our class.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**who**) لأن الفاعل عاقل.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I know the new student father gave a lot of money to our school.
a) who b) that c) whose d) when
2. The cat is sleeping on the sofa is Sara's.
a) who b) when c) which d) what
3. The teacher is giving the presentation is my uncle.
a) what b) who c) whose d) a and b
4. Damietta is the city fine furniture is made.
a) when b) where c) which d) whose
5. The book you gave me is very interesting.
a) who b) that c) whose d) what
6. Do you remember the café we met last time?
a) when b) where c) which d) who
7. Friday is the time I go to the club with my family.
a) when b) which c) that d) where
8. Hany bought the toy he saw at the shop yesterday.
a) which b) that c) who d) a & b
9. The pen you used is mine.
a) which b) that c) - d) all of these

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The house (which) they live is near the beach.
2. I like to see the bird (what) sings every morning.
3. I'm proud of the student (which) scored the highest.
4. Mr. Hamdy is the one (who) car was stolen last week.
5. I repaired the chair (who) was broken.
6. The pizza (who) my mom made was delicious.
7. I know the artist (when) painted this picture.
8. The child (who) toy was lost cried until he found it.
9. The city (which) I grew up has changed a lot.
10. The man (where) helped me with my homework is my cousin.

D Skills



Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about facts of the brain

كيفية الكتابة عن حقائق عن المخ

(1) What is the brain?

(2) Where is it?

(3) What does the brain consist of?

(4) What happens in our brain when we learn something new?

The brain

(5) How does new technology help us understand brain activity during sleep?

(6) How does our brain infer agreement with someone?

(7) How does our brain infer disagreement with someone?

Example

"The brain"

The brain is a very important part of our body. It is inside our head and helps us think, learn, and control the whole body. The brain consists of many brain cells that connect with each other. When we learn something new, we make new connections between the cells. New technology helps us see that the brain stays active even when we sleep. When we agree with someone, our brain thinks it is a fact. When we disagree, our brain thinks it is only an opinion. Understanding the brain helps us learn and communicate better.

Write a paragraph on:

"The importance of the brain"

Check Point

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher asked us to choose a/an for our research project.
a) topic b) plan c) goal d) opinion
- The internet helps people make around the world.
a) brains b) dictionaries c) connections d) grades

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

get – on – off – remember – stay

Scientists made amazing discoveries اكتشافات about the brain. In the past, people believed the brain "turned (1)....." when we went to sleep. But with new technology, we now know that some parts of the brain (2)..... active during sleep. Sleep is very important for learning because it helps us (3)..... things better. In fact, people who (4)..... enough sleep can remember about 20% more than those who do not.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The brain is the control center of our body. It helps us think, feel, and move. It's like a supercomputer inside our head! The brain receives information from our senses, such as sight, hearing, and touch. It understands this information and sends signals to our body to respond. For example, if we touch something hot, our brain tells us to pull our hand away quickly.

The brain is made up of billions of tiny cells called brain cells. These cells connect with each other to form **complex** networks. Scientists are still learning about how the brain works, but we know that it's an amazing organ that helps us live our life.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- According to the passage, the brain is like a
a) smartphone b) machine c) computer d) signal
- The word "**complex**" in the passage is the opposite of the word ".....".
a) hard b) difficult c) weak d) simple

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
5. How do you think scientists will learn more about the brain?
6. How does the brain respond when we touch something hot?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The child won the prize is my cousin.
a) which b) who c) what d) why
2. This is the park we used to play as kids.
a) when b) which c) where d) that

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The doctor (which) treated me is young.
2. I can't remember the name of the restaurant (which) we had dinner.
3. The day (which) we went to the beach was so much fun.
4. The woman (who) dog ran away is sad.

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"The human brain is like a supercomputer"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاوب عنه نهاية الكتاب.



Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I like my teacher (which) very friendly.
2. That's the restaurant (what) serves the best pizza.
3. This is the house (who) I live in.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

ability (n)	قدرة	patience (n)	الصبر
action plan (n)	خطة العمل	peace (n)	السلام
annoying (adj)	مزعج	pedal (led) (v)	يحرك دواسة العجلة (يبدل)
appreciate (d) (v)	يُقدّر	perfect (adj)	رائع/ممتاز
confidence (n)	ثقة	process (n)	عملية
courage (n)	الشجاعة	reflective journal (n)	مذكرة تأملية
craft (n)	حرفة	represent (ed) (v)	يُمثل
culture (n)	ثقافة	result (n)	نتيجة
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	rhythm (n)	إيقاع/وزن شعري
entry (n)	تدوين	strength (n)	القوة
handicrafts (n)	حرف يدوية	traditions (n)	تقاليد
hope (n)	الأمل	values (n)	قيم
importance (n)	أهمية		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

beads (n)	خرز	necklace (n)	عقد
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	scared (adj)	خائف
colored (adj)	ملون	second (n)	ثانية
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	situation (n)	موقف
meaning (n)	معنى	society (n)	مجتمع
moral (n)	مغزى/درس أخلاقي		

Check Point

Choose and complete: **carry - appreciate - necklace - colored**

- 1 We all the hard work you do for the team.
- 2 Basant loves to use pencils to draw pictures.
- 3 Ola needs some beads to make a

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

get	> back up	ينهض	let	> go	يدع الأمور تسير
make	> a mind map	يصنع خريطة ذهنية	ride	> a bike	يركب الدراجة
share	> stories	يشارك قصصاً			

حروف الجر

Prepositions

the back of	الجزء الخلفي من	focus on	يركز على
-------------	-----------------	----------	----------

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
fall يقع	fell	fallen	hold يمسك	held	held
feel يشعر	felt	felt	spend يقضي/ينفق	spent	spent
give up يقلع عن/يستسلم	gave up	given up	ride يركب	rode	ridden

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful/ pretty جميل		ugly	قيح	different	مختلف	same	مشابه

Check Point

Choose and complete: shares – of – got – spend – on

- I a lot of time reading books. It's my favourite hobby.
- Students should focus their studies.
- My grandma always interesting stories with us.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



يستمر في

1 keep + (inf. + ing)

- The beads were small and I **kept dropping** them.

يستغرق

2 take + (to + inf.) + وقت

- It usually **takes** 30 minutes to **bake** a cake.

يشعر/يبقى/يصبح

3 feel/stay/get + adj.

- I **felt happy** when I got high grades.
- I will focus on **staying patient**.

4

try + to + inf.

- I didn't spend enough time **trying to do** my school project.

try + inf. + ing

- That's a delicious apple. **Try eating** it.

(يحاول أن (شيء) تختلف فيه القدرة لفعله)

(يجرب (شيء) الكل لديه القدرة لفعله بشكل عام)

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- They kept until they found the answer.
a) to trying b) trying c) to try d) try
- It takes an hour to school.
a) to get b) to getting c) get d) getting
- My son stayed all night studying for the test.
a) waking b) wake c) awake d) wakes

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

annoying	مزعج	make you feel angry
encourage	يشجع	to talk or behave in a way that gives someone confidence
rhythm	إيقاع	a regular pattern of movements
patience	الصبر	the ability to keep trying to do something and not give up
proud	فخور	to have a good feeling about something you do
tradition	تقليد	something that a group of people, or a society, started doing a long time ago and still do now

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
behave (v)	يتصرف	act	يتصرف
continue (v)	يستمر	carry on/go on	يستمر

Suffix

اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
Senegal (n)	دولة السنغال	-ese		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		Senegalese (adj)	سنغالي (الجنسية)

Prefix

البادئة


Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
en-		تحول الاسم إلى فعل		courage (n)	شجاعة	encourage (v)	يشجع

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5: Literature

Pre-reading question:

- How do you feel when you try to make something new?

 Read and listen to Aida's reflective journal entry and check your answer to Exercise 2.

SB page 12

An afternoon with my grandmother

Date: October 22, 2024

Today, I spent the afternoon with my grandmother who is from Senegal. She showed me how to make a necklace from different colored beads. The beads were very small and I kept dropping them which was annoying! I wanted to give up but my grandmother encouraged⁽¹⁾ me to keep going, saying, "It takes time to make something very beautiful." Her words made me think about how I always want quick results⁽²⁾ and don't spend enough time trying to learn something new. As I continued, I found a rhythm⁽³⁾, and I started to really enjoy myself.

My grandmother shared stories about how she learned this craft⁽⁴⁾ from her mother. She explained that each color bead has a different meaning in Senegalese culture. For example, red represents strength and courage; blue means peace; yellow is for money, and green is for hope or nature.

Now, I appreciate⁽⁵⁾ my culture. Making the necklace helped me to connect with the traditions of the women in my family. In the end, my necklace wasn't perfect, but I felt proud. I learned that handicrafts⁽⁶⁾ represent our connection to tradition⁽⁷⁾, culture⁽⁸⁾, and our values. This experience taught me patience⁽⁹⁾, the importance⁽¹⁰⁾ of practice, and the meaning behind what we make.

Action Plan⁽¹¹⁾: Next time I will focus on staying patient and asking my grandmother more about the meanings behind the beads. I want to enjoy the process and continue connecting with African culture and traditions.



- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| (1) شجعت | (2) نتائج |
| (3) إيقاع | (4) حرفة |
| (5) يقدر | (6) حرف يدوية |
| (7) تقليد | (8) الثقافة |
| (9) الصبر | (10) أهمية |
| (11) خطة العمل | |

Post-reading question:

- What is Aida's journal entry about?

Pre-reading question:

- What was difficult for you when learning a new skill?

 Read Eyad's journal entry and check your idea for Exercise 1. **SB page 14**

June 22, 2024

(1) Today, I spent the afternoon with my dad. My dad was teaching me how to ride a bike. I was a bit nervous⁽¹⁾ at first, but I really wanted to learn. I kept saying, "I want to ride like all my friends!"

(2) At the start, my dad held the back of the bike so I wouldn't fall. I tried to pedal⁽²⁾, but I almost fell a few times. I was scared⁽³⁾ but didn't give up. My dad kept telling me, "It's okay. Keep trying."

(3) After a while, my dad let go of the bike for a few seconds, and I rode a little by myself! I was so happy, and I was proud of myself. I fell once, but I got back up and tried again.

(4) In the end, I could ride for a few seconds without my dad's help. I think I learned that if you keep trying, you can do anything! Today was fun, and I was really happy to learn how to ride my bike.



(1) متوتر/عصبي

(2) يبدل

(3) خائف

Comprehension Skills

"Giving the main idea" «مهاراة إعطاء الفكرة الأساسية»

يأتى السؤال على الفكرة الرئيسية بأكثر من طريقة:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- What is the text about?
- What does the passage talk about?

Example : What's the previous passage about?

Answer : The passage is about Eyad learning to ride a bike with his dad's help and feeling proud of himself.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I find it to live in the city. It's very crowded and the air is polluted.
 a) deep b) annoying c) relaxing d) exciting
2. The in her reflective journal was about her birthday.
 a) exit b) tradition c) object d) entry
3. Eman wore a beautiful around her neck.
 a) earrings b) necklace c) ring d) bracelet
4. Alaa decided to eating sweets. They are bad for his health.
 a) give up b) feel c) spin d) fall
5. To organize our ideas, we can a mind map.
 a) make b) do c) spend d) take
6. Green trees and flowers the start of spring.
 a) represent b) recycle c) reuse d) rewrite
7. Haitham's helped him carry these heavy boxes.
 a) hope b) strength c) value d) pedal
8. My father always gives me the to do difficult things.
 a) courage b) weakness c) handicraft d) culture
9. People all around the world want to live in
 a) piece b) peace c) problems d) issues
10. I wanted to ride a bike, so I learnt to at first.
 a) pedal b) hold c) give up d) annoy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

patience – craft's – process – beads – expected

Mariam spent last weekend with her aunt. She taught her how to make a necklace from (1)..... It was harder than she thought, but her aunt's advice to take her time (2)..... her to keep trying. As Mariam worked, she enjoyed hearing family stories and realized the (3)..... importance in keeping family traditions. Her necklace wasn't perfect, but it taught her (4)..... and the value of creating meaningful things.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I have more after practicing every day.
a) ability b) confidence c) process d) moral
2. Never give up. When you fall, back up again.
a) let b) have c) get d) ride
3. The words "desert" and "dessert" have different
a) meanings b) values c) seconds d) languages
4. The beads were small and I kept them. It was very annoying.
a) falling b) dropping c) spending d) feeling
5. My mother stories about how she learned this craft.
a) paid b) did c) shared d) felt
6. We should respect other opinions and
a) cultures b) process c) objects d) agriculture
7. Don't make the same mistakes and wait for different
a) kickflips b) results c) boards d) edges
8. As I continued dropping the beads, I found a and started to enjoy myself.
a) culture b) craft c) board d) rhythm
9. The of the story is "Practice makes perfect".
a) moral b) process c) rhythm d) plan
10. This experience taught me the of practice.
a) journal b) importance c) exit d) entry

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

held – excited – kept – tried – ride

Today, I spent the afternoon with my dad. He was teaching me how to (1) a bike. At first, I was scared and (2) falling, but my dad (3) the bike to help me stay up. After a few tries, I finally rode without help. I felt (4), and we both laughed and had fun.

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Skills



Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



Write a reflective journal entry about something you learned to do

كتابة مذكرة تأملية عن شيء تعلمت فعله



Example

"Learning something new"

Last week, I learned how to ride a bike. At first, I was really scared to get on the bike because I thought I would fall. However, with the help of my older brother, I started practicing in a quiet park. It was hard to balance **يتوازن** and cycle at the same time. My brother was patient and encouraged me to keep trying. After a few days of practice, I could ride the bike slowly. It felt amazing to achieve this goal. I'm so proud of myself! I advise young people not to give up their dreams and to ask for help to learn new things.

Writing tips

الأسئلة المتفرعة من العنوان أعلى الصفحة تسمى **Mind map**. هيا بنا نتعلم كيف نفكر ونصنعها بأنفسنا.

Using a mind map to think of ideas.

- A mind map is a good way to make quick notes about ideas you can include in your writing.
تعتبر الخريطة الذهنية وسيلة جيدة لتدوين ملاحظات سريعة حول الأفكار التي يمكنك تضمينها في كتابتك.
- Start with the main topic and write this in the center of the mind map. Then think of some categories connected to the main idea.
ابدأ بالموضوع الرئيسي واكتبه في منتصف الخريطة الذهنية، ثم فكر في بعض الأفكار المرتبطة بالفكرة الرئيسية.
- Write these in boxes with lines connecting them to the central box. In each category, write three or four ideas. Remember to keep it simple.
اكتب هذه الأفكار في مربعات متصلة بخطوط في المربع المركزي. اكتب في كل فئة ثلاث أو أربع أفكار. تذكر أن تبقيها بسيطة.

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 7 Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Making pots is a traditional in Egypt.
a) trick b) object c) board d) handicraft
2. Ghada made a bracelet with colorful
a) feet b) beads c) beds d) boards

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

appreciated – proud – traditions – annoying – encouraged

Reda's grandmother is very helpful. She always (1)..... him to follow his dreams and he (2)..... her help. She taught him about the importance of (3)..... and how they bring people together. One day, Reda decided to make a necklace as a gift for her to show how (4)..... he was of his family. She was very happy when he gave it to her.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The pasta (who) she cooked was tasty.
2. The house (what) we live is very big.
3. I have a friend (which) speaks four languages.
4. What do you (did) after school every day?

4 Complete the following dialog:

Sarah tried painting with her mom this morning.

Amina: Hi, Sarah! What did you do today?

Sarah : Hi, Amina! This morning, I tried painting with my mom.

Amina: That sounds fun! (1)..... it easy?

Sarah : No, it wasn't easy. I kept trying (2)..... a long time.

Amina: Oh no! (3)..... did your mom do?

Sarah : She encouraged me and said, "Don't give up."

Amina: That's (4).....! Did it get easier?

Sarah : Yes, after a while, I started to enjoy it.



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you think (did he) all his tasks before going out?
2. The city (when) we traveled to last summer is known for its historic architecture.
3. **A:** Why (did) you go to school last week? **B:** Because I was ill.

A

Listening

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.



1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What did Mazen try to learn?
 - a) Riding a bike.
 - b) Making a necklace.
 - c) Driving a car.
 - d) Playing tennis.
2. How did he feel about learning it?
 - a) Nervous.
 - b) Excited.
 - c) Frustrated.
 - d) Upset.
3. What was Mazin afraid of?
 - a) Falling.
 - b) Giving up.
 - c) Trying harder.
 - d) Pedaling.

(B) Listen and complete:

4. Mazen's helped him practice pedaling.
5. He spent the learning to pedal.
6. He's always thought riding bikes looks fun and

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should our friends' help and support.
 - a) appreciate
 - b) create
 - c) behave
 - d) think
2. I you try the new restaurant in town; it's fantastic.
 - a) save
 - b) study
 - c) exist
 - d) suggest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fail – challenge – practice – give – take

I learned to play the piano. It was difficult at first, but I did it. I think what helped me succeed was that I didn't (1) up. I kept trying, and I went to music classes three times a week until I became better. Now, I know it's okay to (2) at first because that's how you learn. In the future, I will remember that (3) and patience are important for any (4)

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I spent the afternoon with my grandmother, learning how to make a necklace from colorful beads. At first, I was excited, but I quickly found it difficult because the beads were small, and I kept dropping them. I felt **annoyed** and wanted to give up. My grandmother encouraged me, saying it takes time to create something beautiful. Her words made me think about being patient and practicing more. As I continued, I enjoyed myself and appreciated the meaning of each bead. My grandmother shared stories about how she learned this craft from her mother. In the end, my necklace wasn't perfect, but I felt proud. I learned that handicrafts connect us to our family's traditions and teach us patience and practice.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The writer felt when he finished the necklace.
a) annoyed b) patient c) perfect d) proud
2. The word "**annoyed**" means
a) excited b) angry c) happy d) interested

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
.....
5. Why is making the necklace meaningful to the writer?
.....
6. What do you think of the writer?
.....



Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who did they to the wedding?
a) inviting b) invites c) invite d) invited
2. The neighbor lives next door is friendly.
a) what b) who's c) who d) which

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Summer is the season (which) we usually go to the beach.
2. That's the girl (who) father is our teacher.
3. (When) do you live?
4. What (do) you do yesterday?

7 Complete the following dialog:

Hadeer is learning to play the piano and Ghada is learning to cook.

Hadeer : What are you learning these days?

Ghada : I'm learning how to cook new recipes. (1)..... about you?

Hadeer : I am learning to play the piano.

Ghada : That's (2)..... . Is it hard?

Hadeer : Yes, it is hard, but I enjoy it. (3).....
you enjoy cooking?

Ghada : Yes, I enjoy cooking.

Hadeer : Can you teach me some recipes?

Ghada : Yes, of (4)..... .

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A reflective journal entry on learning a new thing"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Aly : Did you know that our brains make new connections when we learn?

Waleed : No, I (1)..... I thought we made new brain cells.

a) do

b) not think so

c) not know

d) don't

Aly : No, we just connect the cells we already have.

Waleed : That's (2)..... Is the brain active while sleeping?

a) bad

b) interesting

c) annoying

d) upset

Aly : Yes, it (3)..... But some people thought it isn't.

a) has

b) is

c) does

d) sleep

Waleed : (4)..... do we know that now?

a) How

b) Why

c) Who

d) When

Aly : We know that from the new technology.

Waleed : Great!

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. (How) were you absent yesterday?

a) What

b) When

c) Where

d) Why

2. Who (be) the main speaker at the event yesterday?

a) was

b) is

c) did

d) are

3. Who (were) you call last night?

a) did

b) does

c) do

d) doing

4. The car (where) is parked outside is new.

a) what

b) whom

c) that

d) who

5. The painter (who's) painted this graffiti is skilled.

a) what

b) which

c) where

d) who

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)



Unit 8

NEW LIFE IN OLD CITIES

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

- Reading** An article about the importance of city planning; blog posts about helping out at different places; a story about twins helping their community
- Writing** A reflective journal entry on the impact of your town or city on the environment
- Listening** A conversation about issues affecting cities and towns; A conversation about how a street market has changed over 25 years
- Speaking** Discussing a solution for a problem in your town or city
- Language** The past simple and the past continuous; the past continuous with *when* and *while*

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان؛ حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

apartment building (n)	عمارة سكنية/مبنى سكني	neighborhood (n)	حاف/جيرة
artifacts (n)	تحف/قطع أثرية	organizer (n)	مُنظّم
care (n)	رعاية	planner (n)	مُخطّط
construction (n)	بناء/عمران	population (n)	سكان
court (n)	ملعب	promise (d) (v)	يوعد
city planning (n)	تخطيط المدينة	quality (n)	جودة
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	realize (d) (v)	يدرك
enclosure (n)	حظيرة محاطة بسياج	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
experience (d) (v/n)	يمر بتجربة/تجربة	safety (n)	أمان
facilities (n)	مرافق/تسهيلات	solution (n)	حل
growth (n)	نمو	open spaces (n)	مساحات فارغة
hiking path (n)	مسار المشي/التنزه	the countryside (n)	الريف
improve (d) (v)	يُحسّن	tournament (n)	دورة مباريات
last (ed) (v)	يستمر/يدوم	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
leader (n)	قائد/زعيم		

Adjectives

الصفات

careful	حريص/حذر	playful	مُرح/لعوب
confident	واثق	proud	فخور
friendly	ودود	shy	خجول

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

as well as	بالإضافة إلى	include (d) (v)	يتضمن
education (n)	التعليم	land (n)	أرض/يابسة
everywhere (adv)	في كل مكان	movie (n)	فيلم
country (n)	دولة	national park (n)	حديقة وطنية
history (n)	تاريخ	nature (n)	الطبيعة

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Choose and complete: confident – country – facilities – history

- 1 The hotel offers excellent, including a swimming pool and a gym.
- 2 Tarek is that his team will win the game.
- 3 Cairo is a city, but Egypt is a

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

friends	يُكوّن صداقات	keep > healthy	يحافظ على صحته
make > displays	يُعدّ معروضات	go on > a vacation	يذهب في إجازة
birdhouses	يصنع بيوت الطيور	plan > a town	يخطط مدينة

التعبيرات اللغوية**Prepositions****حروف الجر**

provide ... for	يوفر ... لـ	keep in touch	يبقى على اتصال
plan for the future	يخطط للمستقبل	pick up	يلتقط
home to	موطن لـ	nervous about	متوتر/عصبى (بشأن)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs**تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة**

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
come يأتي	came	come	feed يطعم	fed	fed
drive يقود/يسوق	drove	driven	rise تشرق	rose	risen

Words and Opposites**الكلمات وعكسها**

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطر
luckily	لحسن الحظ	unluckily	لسوء الحظ

Choose and complete: feed – for – make – dangerous

- 1 My cousin found it hard to friends when he moved to a new city.
- 2 Hamdy likes to the birds in the park.
- 3 A: Is it safe to swim here? B: No, it's very

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.



1 There is/are + noun + (inf. + ing)

يوجد

- **There is** a lot of **construction** **happening** in our neighborhood.

2 Q. Word + to + inf.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن سؤال أو فكرة بأسلوب غير مباشر

- It helps city leaders decide **how to use** land.
- Leaders should think about **where to build** hospitals and public gardens.

3 by + (inf. + ing)

ب/بواسطة

- **By planning** carefully, cities can become better places.

4 start by + (inf. + ing)

يبدأ بـ

- I decided to help with the housework, and I **started by cleaning** up my room.

5 Not only + فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل أساسي , but + فاعل + also + فعل أساسي

(ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضاً)

- **Not only did I get** to help the animals, **but I also learned** a lot about animal care.

6 other/another/others:

اسم جمع + آخر

- Electric buses are better for the environment than **other types** of transportation.

اسم مفرد + آخر

- I want **another book** instead of this one.

others (بدون اسم بعدها)

آخرون

- You shouldn't tell **others** this information.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 By hard, Nada achieved her goals.

a) working b) work c) worked d) to work

- 2 The cake is delicious. Can I have piece?

a) others b) another c) either d) other

- 3 There are birds in the trees.

a) to singing b) singing c) to sing d) sing



Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
discover (v)	يكتشف	find out	يكتشف
last (v)	يستمر/يدوم	continue	يستمر

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
lead (v)	يقود	-er	تحويل الفعل إلى	leader (n) قائد/زعيم
organize (v)	ينظم		اسم فاعل	organizer (n) مُنظِّم

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطي عكس المعنى	important (adj) هام	unimportant (adj) غير هام
		luckily (adj) لحسن الحظ	unluckily (adj) لسوء الحظ

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think of the city planning in your neighborhood?

 Read the article. Choose the main idea.

Lesson 1: Planning for our future

SB page 17

Planning for our future

City planning⁽¹⁾ is very important for small cities in Egypt. It helps city leaders⁽²⁾ decide how to use land. As the population⁽³⁾ grows and more people need to live in cities, planning helps towns and cities plan carefully to make sure that all the new people have a good place to live.

One part of city planning is building new homes, schools, and parks. Construction⁽⁴⁾ is important: with more people moving to cities, we need more houses. Town and city planners⁽⁵⁾ must make sure that new homes are safe for the community.

Another important job is creating hospitals, shops, and other community areas, and thinking about where to put them. These facilities⁽⁶⁾ help improve the quality⁽⁷⁾ of life for the people who live there. For example, parks provide a place for families to relax and play, and schools are needed for education⁽⁸⁾.

Many small cities are near beautiful open areas. City planning thinks carefully about the countryside⁽⁹⁾. We need to protect the environment in these spaces as well as build homes and facilities for future population growth⁽¹⁰⁾. This way we can keep the environment healthy and provide a nice place for people to enjoy nature.

So, city planning is very important for all small cities, not just in Egypt, but everywhere. By planning carefully, cities can become better places to live in and respect the countryside at the same time.



- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| (1) تخطيط المدينة | (2) قادة |
| (3) السكان | (4) البناء/التشييد |
| (5) مخططون | (6) مرافق/تسهيلات |
| (7) جودة | (8) التعليم |
| (9) الريف | (10) النمو |

Comprehension Skills

How to guess the meaning of a word:

(1) Read the passage well.

(2) Look for Clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.

ابحث عن دليل يساعدك لفهم الكلمة - اقرأ الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المألوفة لتحاول فهم المعنى.

(3) Make a Guess:

حاول تخمين معنى الكلمة في النص:

For example: These facilities help improve the quality of life for people.

- What does the underlined word "improve" mean?

- **Answer:** It means "make better".

Pre-reading question:

- What did you do last summer?

Lesson 2: Helping out



Read and listen to three blog posts about students helping out at different places.

This week we are sharing our volunteering experiences. Tell us about your experience!

SB page 18



Last summer, I volunteered at the zoo every weekend, through our school volunteer program. I was so excited because I love animals, but I was also nervous about meeting new people. Everyone was friendly though. I started by feeding the monkeys. They were very **playful**⁽¹⁾! Here's a photo I took of them. I also helped clean the lions' **enclosure**⁽²⁾. The lions were usually lying in the sun. By the end of the summer, I felt proud. Not only did I get to help the animals, but I also learned a lot about animal care, and made new friends. Saying goodbye to my new friends was hard, but we promised to keep in touch and do it again next year.

Elias, Salzburg, Austria



Last week, I volunteered at the museum with my school history club. I love history and helping people, so I was excited! On Saturday, we arrived at 8:00 a.m. before the museum opened, and helped make some museum **displays**⁽³⁾. Then the museum opened! Not long after that, I saw a group of younger kids who needed some help. I helped them draw pictures of their favorite **artifacts**⁽⁴⁾. Some kids were shy at first, but when they started coloring, they became more **confident**⁽⁵⁾. By the end of the day, I realized how much I loved helping others discover history. I can't wait to volunteer again!

Lamees, Egypt



Last term, our class spent an amazing day volunteering at a national park. On Saturday, we left really early. The sun was still rising! We drove to the park in our school bus and met the park **organizers**⁽⁶⁾. Our first job was to clean up the hiking path. There was so much to do, we were still picking up trash at lunchtime! All the trash made me sad, but it also felt great to do something to keep the park beautiful.

I learned that our park is home to some important birds, and in the afternoon, we built birdhouses. At the end of the day, the park organizers told us that our work helps protect the wildlife and the environment.

Alex, Canada

Post-reading questions:

1 Why do you think Elias felt proud at the end of the summer?

2 How was Alex's work useful?

(1) مرح

(2) حظيرة محاطة بسياج

(3) عروض

(4) قطع أثرية

(5) واثق

(6) المنظمون

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The animals are safe in their
a) library b) enclosure c) window d) shop
2. A football match for 90 minutes.
a) lasts b) respects c) realizes d) drives
3. Trees need sunlight and water for
a) construction b) population c) race d) growth
4. Be careful while driving. This is important for
a) safety b) quality
c) country d) construction
5. Planting trees is a good to the problem of climate change.
a) leader b) solution
c) population d) neighborhood
6. Good is important for everyone. We should be interested in learning.
a) population b) pollution c) education d) solution
7. We bought a new flat in a friendly
a) neighborhood b) enclosure c) tournament d) leader
8. The of the new school will start next month.
a) construction b) population
c) growth d) spaces
9. Our class visited the museum and saw amazing there.
a) fields b) terms c) artifacts d) movies
10. This store sells clothes of high
a) wildlife b) experience c) quality d) hiking

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

discover – make – confident – do – volunteered

My name is Yara. Last week, I (1)..... at the museum with my school history club. We arrived early to help (2)..... some displays. After the museum opened, I helped younger kids in drawing pictures of their favorite artifacts. Some were shy, but they became more (3)..... while coloring. I loved helping others (4)..... history and can't wait to volunteer again!

Time to Practice




1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A good helps his team work together.
a) leader b) facility c) experience d) promise
2. Scientists amazing things about space every year.
a) promise b) discover c) include d) lead
3. Our charity aims to food for the poor.
a) experience b) promise c) move d) provide
4. The tennis has a net in the middle.
a) cart b) card c) car d) court
5. Doctors provide special for sick patients.
a) care b) promise c) facility d) growth
6. Cairo is a city that has lots of
a) population b) solution c) countryside d) desert
7. We to take care of the environment by planting trees.
a) hike b) move c) promise d) improve
8. We should different opinions, even if we disagree.
a) feed b) respect c) damage d) volunteer
9. This hiking leads to يقود إلى the forest.
a) bath b) pass c) path d) past
10. They promised to keep touch even after moving to different countries.
a) on b) in c) at d) off

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

facilities – important – provide – construction – court

The countryside plays an important role in protecting natural beauty and supporting a healthy environment. City (1) should be planned carefully to protect the countryside. It is important to protect nature while building homes and (2) for people. This helps keep the environment clean and (3) a healthy place to live. Good city planning is (4) for all small cities, not only in Egypt but around the world.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 

C Language

Past Simple and Past Continuous

الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر

Past Simple

ماضي بسيط

Past Continuous

ماضي مستمر

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject التصريف الثالث للفاعل + الفاعل ...

- She **played** tennis **yesterday**.
- We **went** to the zoo **last** Friday.

Subject الفاعل + **was/were** + **inf. + ing** ...

- I/He/She/It/ اسم مفرد → **was** + **(inf. + ing)** ...
- I **was eating** lunch at 3 **yesterday**.
- You/We/They/ اسم جمع → **were** + **(inf. + ing)** ...
- We **were sleeping** **yesterday evening**.

Negative النفي

Subject الفاعل + **didn't** + **inf. مصدر الفعل** ...

- He **didn't go** to work last week.

Subject الفاعل + **wasn't/weren't** + **اسم/صفة** ...

- They **weren't happy** yesterday.

Subject الفاعل + **wasn't/weren't** + **inf. + ing** ...

- He **wasn't sleeping** from 2 to 4 p.m.
- They **weren't studying** all time yesterday.

Yes/No question السؤال بـ Yes/No

Did + subject الفاعل + **inf. مصدر الفعل** ...?

- **Did you** watch TV last night?

Was/Were + subject الفاعل + **اسم/صفة** ...?

- **Were you** at school yesterday?

Was/Were + subject الفاعل + **inf. + ing** ...?

- **Was he** studying all night?
- **Were you** listening to music?

Wh- question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. word + **did** + subject الفاعل + **inf. مصدر الفعل** ...?

- Where **did** Samy **go** last Sunday?

Q. word + **was/were** + subject الفاعل + **اسم/صفة** ...?

- Why **was** Ali **sad**?

Q. word + **was/were** + subject الفاعل + **inf. + ing** ...?

- Who **was** studying all night yesterday?
- What **were** you **doing** yesterday afternoon?



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Where (did) you last Monday?

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (were) لأنه لا يوجد فعل في المصدر والفاعل جمع.

2 Were the boys (play) at the park yesterday afternoon?

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (playing) لأن (were) يتبعها الفعل مضافاً إليه (ing).

Uses of Past Simple

استخدامات الماضي البسيط

• We use the **past simple** to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

• نستخدم **الماضي البسيط** للتحدث عن الأفعال التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. • We **went** to the park and **met** the park organizers.

• We use the **past simple** for main events in the past.

• نستخدم **الماضي البسيط** للأحداث الرئيسية في الماضي.

e.g. • On Saturday, we **left** really early. The sun was still rising!

• We use the **past simple** for past habits and repeated actions.

• نستخدم **الماضي البسيط** للعادات الماضية والأفعال متكررة الحدوث في الماضي.

e.g. • Last summer, I **volunteered** at the zoo **every weekend**.

• We use the **past simple** with some stative verbs (want, like, need, hate, see, etc.) in the past.

• نستخدم **الماضي البسيط** مع بعض أفعال الحالة (يريد، يحب، يكره، يرى ... إلخ) في الماضي.

- I **saw** a group of younger kids who **needed** help.

Uses of Past Continuous

استخدامات الماضي المستمر

• We use the **past continuous** to say that someone was in the middle of doing something at a particular time.

• نستخدم **الماضي المستمر** لنقول إن شخصاً ما كان في منتصف القيام بفعل شيء ما في وقت معين. (وقت محدد تماماً في الماضي)

e.g. • We **were still picking up** trash **at lunchtime**.

• We use the **past continuous** for background events.

• نستخدم **الماضي المستمر** للأحداث الخلفية.

e.g. • On Saturday, we **left** really early. **The sun was still rising!**

• **Don't use** the past continuous with time markers.

• لا نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر مع علامات الوقت.

• **Don't use** the past continuous for habits and repeated actions.

• لا نستخدم الماضي المستمر للعادات والأفعال المتكررة.

• **Don't use** the past continuous with some stative verbs (want, like, need, hate, see, etc.).

• لا نستخدم الماضي المستمر مع بعض الأفعال الحالة (يريد، يحب، يحتاج، يكره، يرى ... إلخ).

Important Notes:

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I to school yesterday. I didn't cycle.
a) walk b) walked c) was walking d) am walking
2. Kamal a report at 8 p.m. yesterday.
a) was written b) is writing c) was writing d) writes
3. Who you that email yesterday?
a) will send b) was sent c) was sending d) is sending
4. Gamila at the library for her exams yesterday evening.
a) studies b) studied c) was studying d) is studying
5. Sally the movie we watched.
a) was liking b) liked c) likes d) like
6. On Friday, we went to the beach early. The waves softly on the shore.
a) crashed b) were crashing c) are crashing d) crash
7. Dalia to school because she was ill.
a) doesn't go b) won't go c) didn't go d) went
8. Amr to music all evening yesterday.
a) was listening b) listens c) listened d) is listening

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I visited Hana and (give) her a nice present.
2. The tennis tournament lasted a week, so my dad (was driving) me to the court every morning. SB
3. We went to the mall and (buy) a present for our mom's birthday. SB
4. I (watched) a movie on TV, but my sister was studying and asked me to turn it off.
5. On Saturday morning, the volunteers arrived at the park. It (rain) hard. SB
6. The tourists (staying) at a hotel for the last weekend.
7. At 8:00 PM, I (read) a book when the phone rang.
8. We (not/play) tennis last Saturday because it was snowing.
9. She didn't like the food at the party because it (be) too spicy.
10. What (you/do) yesterday evening, Tarek?

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I my homework at that time last Friday.
a) am doing b) did c) was doing d) do
2. Ahmed football every Saturday when he was a child.
a) played b) plays c) was playing d) will play
3. Sara want to go to the beach. She was tired.
a) wasn't b) don't c) didn't d) isn't
4. It all the evening yesterday.
a) snowed b) was snowing c) is snowing d) snows
5. Reda started his new job month.
a) last b) next c) ago d) in
6. We at the party yesterday.
a) were b) was c) wasn't d) are
7. Was your father TV at 9 p.m. last night?
a) watched b) watching c) watches d) watch
8. Tell me about the last time you
a) volunteer b) volunteered c) was volunteering d) volunteering

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. On Thursday, we started our drive early. The streets (not/get) busy yet.
2. Mariam (have) a cat called Felix when she was a child. SB
3. I (watch) movies on TV all day yesterday.
4. I didn't go to the cinema because I (am) studying.
5. I didn't (waking) up early this morning.
6. My sisters were (clean) the house all morning.
7. I saw Tom at the park yesterday. He (talk) to some friends.
8. Last weekend, we (have) a picnic at Al-Azhar Park.
9. (Was) you meet Adel at the club yesterday?
10. The children (not/sleep); they were playing outdoors.

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills



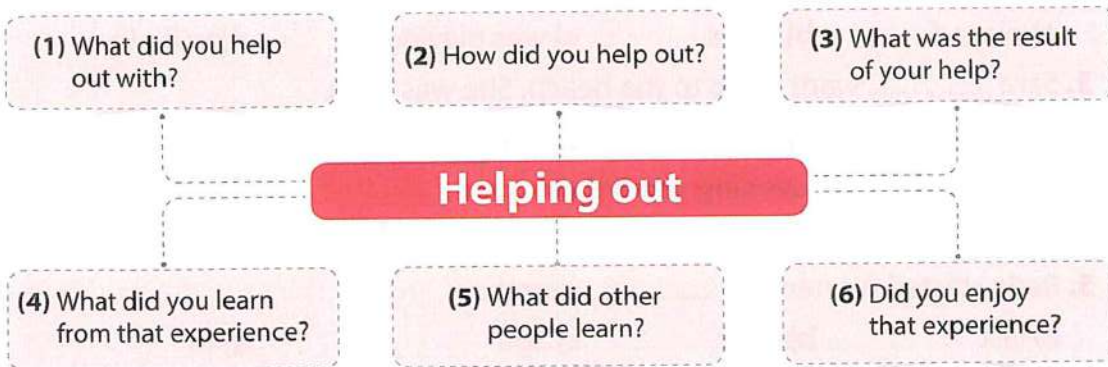
Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



Writing a blog post about helping out **كتابة مدونة إلكترونية عن المساعدة في عمل شيء**

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية، ومن خلال إجابتك ستتمكن من كتابة موضوع عن المساعدة في عمل شيء:



Example

YOUMNA'S BLOG

BLOG HOME

ABOUT ME

LINK

ARCHIVE



Thursday, 20th March

Helping out

I recently volunteered at a local animal volunteer program. I helped clean the monkey enclosure, feed the animals, and play with the cats and dogs. I helped make a cleaner and happier environment for the animals. I learned the importance of helping others and the joy of giving back to the community. It was a truly amazing experience. I will volunteer again next year.

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

Check Point

Write a blog post about:

"Helping your community"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 8 Lessons (1 & 2)

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع
فب نهاية الكتاب.



1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where did Karma volunteer?
a) At a school. b) At a zoo. c) At a hospital. d) At a library.
2. When was that?
a) Last winter. b) Last year. c) Last month. d) Last summer.
3. How often did Karma volunteer at the zoo?
a) Every day. b) Every weekend. c) Once a month. d) Twice a week.

(B) Listen and complete:

4. Karma fed the animals and cleaned their
5. She was about meeting new people.
6. It was a great for Karma.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should provide much love and for our children.
a) population b) care c) court d) growth
2. Scientists a new medicine for the virus.
a) respected b) moved c) protected d) discovered

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

artifacts – proud – leader – nervous – safety

Last summer, I joined a history club through my school. I was excited because I love learning about the past, but I was (1) about speaking in front of others. Everyone was kind. I started by helping organize (2) in the museum. By the end of the summer, I became a (3) in the group. I felt (4) because I learned so much and made new friends.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Daren couldn't come to the party. She
a) worked b) was working c) working d) is working
2. My father usually me to school when I was young.
a) drives b) was driving c) is driving d) drove

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Was Hadeel (work) on her project at midnight?
2. Leila (fly) to Jeddah yesterday.
3. I (study) for the test from 10 a.m. till 5 p.m. yesterday.
4. My cousins (not/take) the bus to work today.

6 Complete the following dialog:

Amr is asking Tarek, who was helping his parents, some questions.

Amr : Hello, Tarek. What were you doing at 5 yesterday?

Tarek : I was (1)..... my parents at home.

Amr : (2)..... your sister tidy your room?

Tarek : No, she didn't. I did it myself.

Amr : Great! What were your brothers doing?

Tarek : They were (3)..... computer games.

Amr : Did they (4)..... the game?

Tarek : Yes, they enjoyed the video game very much.

7 Write a social media post of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"An experience in helping out"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Three years ago, we (live) in my uncle's house while workers were painting ours.
2. I didn't hear you. I (think) of something.
3. They (leave) the house at seven yesterday.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

bother (ed) (v)	يُزعج	park (ed) (v)	يركن سيارة
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	shop assistant (n)	بائع
customer (n)	زبون	sign (n)	لافتة/علامة
food market (n)	سوق الغذاء	souvenirs (n)	هدايا تذكارية
frustrating (adj)	محبط/مخيب للأمل	stall (n)	كشك
grocery store (n)	متجر بقالة	subway station (n)	محطة مترو الأنفاق
left (adj)	متبقي	teens (n)	مراهقون
memory (n)	ذاكرة	the countryside (n)	الريف
outdated (adj)	قديم	underground parking (n)	موقف سيارات تحت الأرض
Issues قضايا			
facilities	المرافق	population growth	النمو السكاني
pollution	التلوث	transportation	المواصلات

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

ankle (n)	كاحل القدم	local community center (n)	مركز المجتمع المحلي
assign (ed) (v)	يحدد/يخصص/يعين	mention (ed) (v)	يذكر
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	nowhere (adv)	لا مكان
chance (n)	فرصة	offer (ed) (v)	يعرض
college (n)	كلية	present (ed) (v)	يقدم
design (ed) (v)	يصمم	sound (ed) like (v)	يبدو
Europe (n)	أوروبا	fresh (adj)	طازج
flowchart (n)	رسم بياني	tourist (n)	سائح

Check Point

Choose and complete: sign – flowchart – customer – design

- 1 A is a person who buys things.
- 2 My uncle can amazing buildings.
He's an architect مهندس معماري.
- 3 The store says it's open.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

brainstorm > ideas	يقوم بطرح الأفكار	make > comments	يقدم تعليقات
give > reasons	يعطى الأسباب	money	يكسب مالاً
get > busier	تزدحم أكثر	put > things right	يضع الأشياء في نصابها الصحيح
have > a conversation	يقوم بمحادثة		

Prepositions

حروف الجر

hang (hung) out	يخرج للتزهر	on the sidewalk	على الرصيف
-----------------	-------------	-----------------	------------

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
hold يحمل/يمسك	held	held	write down يحدون	wrote down	written down
meet يقابل	met	met	make يصنع	made	made

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي	appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي

Check Point

Choose and complete: different – on – to – hang

- The children are playing the sidewalk.
- My friends and I like to out on weekends.
- My shirt is similar to yours. It isn't

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة
والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
bother (v)	يزعج	upset	يزعج
outdated (adj)	قديم	old/ancient	قديم
frustrating (adj)	محبط/مخيب للأمال	disappointing	محبط/مخيب للأمال

Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
create (v)	يبدع/يبتكر	-ive		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر
assist (v)	يساعد	-ant		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		assistant (n)	مساعد

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3: Towns and cities around the world

- What problems does your city face?

 **Read and listen to the dialog. Check the issues that Shorouk and Farida mention.**

SB page 20



population growth



facilities



pollution



transportation

Shorouk Hey, Farida! How's your new life in Europe?

Farida Hi! It's OK, but I just went to the basketball court⁽¹⁾, and it's closed! There was a sign⁽²⁾ saying it isn't safe. Now there is nowhere to play basketball. 😞

Shorouk Oh, no! Here, we have a similar problem. The population is growing every year. They're building new apartment buildings everywhere, which is great, but they are building on the open spaces. I wish we had more parks to hang out⁽³⁾ in.

Farida Exactly! I want to meet new friends, so I went to the local community center. It's really old and outdated and doesn't offer many activities for teens.

Shorouk That's frustrating⁽⁴⁾. It sounds like you need better facilities. The thing that bothers me is that people are using their cars too much in the city and park their cars on the sidewalk!

Farida There needs to be a better solution, like more subway stations⁽⁵⁾ or more underground parking. You know what? I think we need to study city planning at college and put things right!

Shorouk Good idea!

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------|
| (1) ملعب | (2) لافتة |
| (3) يخرج للتنزه | (4) محيط |
| (5) محطات مترو الأنفاق | |

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What problem does population growth cause?
- 2 What future solution does Farida suggest?
- 3 What does the underlined word "outdated" mean?



Pre-listening question:

- Where do you usually buy fruit and vegetables?

Listen and check your answer to Exercise 1.

SB page 22

Interviewer Thank you for talking to me today for our school newspaper! We would love to hear about what the **food market**⁽¹⁾ was like in the past. How has it changed over the years?



Man

Well, my **stall**⁽²⁾ has been here in this street market for 25 years! Back then, the market was much smaller, and it had a small community feel. While I was selling food, people came to talk, not just buy food. When they were shopping, customers always stopped to have a **conversation**⁽³⁾. People's lives are so busy now, that doesn't happen as much.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| (1) سوق الغذاء | (2) كشك |
| (3) محادثة | (4) الريف |
| (5) متجر بقالة | (6) هدايا تذكارية |

Interviewer It sounds like it was wonderful! What about the things you sell? Are they the same now as they were then?

Man

Well back then every day we were bringing food from farms in the **countryside**⁽⁴⁾ nearby. Everything was fresh! But when the larger **grocery stores**⁽⁵⁾ and supermarkets appeared, everything changed customers while the supermarkets were making lots of money. People were choosing faster ways of shopping while their lives were getting busier.

Interviewer So, did your market get smaller?

Man

Well, no! In fact, it got bigger. There are more tourists now and they come to see the traditional market. We were only selling fresh food when the tourists first arrived. Now we also sell **souvenirs**⁽⁶⁾! This means that we are now selling more, which is good for everyone.

Interviewer What do you think the future holds for the market?

Man

I believe the market will continue to grow. As long as we're able to change with the times, I think we'll find new ways to sell to customers, and make our customers happy.

Interviewer Thank you for sharing your memories! It's clear that the market has a rich history.

Man

Thank you! Now, would you like to try some oranges ...

Post-listening question:

- What does the man think about the future of the market?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It was when my computer stopped working.
a) creative b) wonderful c) frustrating d) safe
2. This phone is and I need to buy a new one.
a) outdated b) creative c) left d) modern
3. You have a good of winning the competition if you practice.
a) cause b) comment c) chance d) reason
4. There is a/an that says "No Parking", so we mustn't park here.
a) problem b) issue c) line d) sign
5. The loud noise me while I was reading.
a) listened b) bothered c) designed d) offered
6. Most use phones or computers every day.
a) teens b) babies c) cats d) cows
7. The test results were, which made everyone happy.
a) disappointing b) negative c) frustrating d) positive
8. The teacher asked the students to comments on the presentation.
a) make b) wish c) bake d) stay
9. I would love to live in the It's quiet and the air is fresh there.
a) city b) town c) countryside d) castle
10. I went to the subway to take the underground.
a) station b) parking c) library d) airport

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

areas – outdoor – population – hang out – pollution

We need more city planning. The (1)..... is growing every year. So, the government الحكومة is building new apartment buildings everywhere, which is great, but they are building on the open spaces. I wish we had more parks to (2)..... and enjoy nature. It would be nice to have more green (3)..... where people can relax, play sports, or take a walk. We really need more (4)..... spaces.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I wish we had more parks to in.
a) shout b) hang out c) offer d) cause
2. We need a/an idea for our school project.
a) outdated b) frustrating c) weak d) creative
3. Students go to a after they finish school.
a) station b) supermarket c) college d) sign
4. The teacher asked us to reasons for our answers.
a) do b) give c) make d) play
5. Buses and trains are popular forms of in the city.
a) facilities b) pollution c) transportation d) population
6. People use underground to keep their cars safe.
a) ideas b) barking c) stops d) parking
7. There's a in our street that sells delicious sweet potatoes.
a) stall b) stale c) hut d) resort
8. My mom bought tea and coffee from a nearby store.
a) fruit b) grocery c) book d) clothing
9. Tourists like to buy from the country they visit to remember it.
a) souvenirs b) fruits c) food d) tickets
10. Every Thursday, our teachers the homework we will do.
a) assign b) shout c) design d) wish

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

recycling – Pollution – solutions – apartment – Transportation

Big cities have many problems, like a population growth. More people need more schools, hospitals, parks, and (1) buildings. (2) is also a big issue, with cars and factories causing dirty air. (3) can be crowded, making it hard to get around. These problems need (4) to make city life better for everyone.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Past continuous with when and while

1) We use **when** or **while** to introduce an action or situation that was progressing when something else happened.

- نستخدم (عندما **when**) أو (بينما/أثناء **while**) للتعبير عن فعل أو موقف كان مستمرًا أثناء حدوث شيء آخر.
(حدث قاطع استمرار حدث آخر في الماضي).

e.g. I **was studying** **when** my father **came**.



Customers always **stopped** to have a conversation **while** they **were shopping**.

عندما **When** - بينما / أثناء **While/As**

A While/As + past continuous , past simple

e.g. **While** I **was reading** a book, the phone **rang**.

Past simple + while/as + past continuous

e.g. Grandfather **arrived** **while** Mom **was cooking**.

B When + past simple , past continuous

e.g. **When** it **rained**, I **was cycling** to school.

Past continuous + when + past simple

e.g. My father **was watching** TV **when** the light **turned** off.

2) We use **while** with the past continuous for two longer actions that happened at the same time.

- نستخدم **while** مع الماضي المستمر لحدثين استمرّا معًا في نفس الوقت. (حدثان مستمران في نفس الوقت في الماضي دون أن يقطع أحدهما الآخر).

While + past continuous + past continuous

e.g. I **was listening** to music **while** my brother **was playing** computer games.

e.g. People **were choosing** faster ways of shopping **while** their lives **were getting** busier.

لاحظ أن: إذا لم يتبع **While** فاعل فيأتي الفعل بعدها (inf. + ing) بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحدًا في الجملتين.

While + inf. + ing , past simple

e.g. **While** **returning** home, I met my old friend, Rami.



Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعومة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1) While I (do) my homework, the light went out.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was doing) لأن (While) يتبعها ماضٍ مستمر.

2) Asser was sleeping (while) I phoned him.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (when) لأن الجملة الثانية في زمن الماضي البسيط.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Samir arrived while I food.
a) will make b) was making c) am making d) made
2. We were having lunch our uncle returned from his village.
a) as b) while c) when d) during
3. While I to Hurghada, the car engine suddenly broke down.
a) drive b) driving c) am driving d) was driving
4. When my father home late at night, we were playing video games.
a) came b) was coming c) is coming d) comes
5. I was watching the birds, they suddenly flew away.
a) Because b) While c) When d) Although
6. What when Rami visited you?
a) were you doing b) are you doing
c) will you do d) you were doing
7. Basmala was cleaning the garden she heard the news.
a) when b) while c) as d) if
8. While the vegetables, she hurt herself.
a) cutting b) was cutting c) cut d) cuts

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. I got a message from my best friend while I (have) breakfast this morning. SB
2. Peter (playing) football when he broke his leg. SB
3. We were playing football yesterday when it (start) to rain. SB
4. We were playing in the tournament when I (break) my ankle. SB
5. While I was studying, my brother (playing) video games. SB
6. I (meet) my old friends while going to the club. SB
7. We were watching a movie (while) the internet stopped working. SB
8. I (didn't) at home while Taher was preparing for the party. SB
9. She was drawing a picture while her brother (play) video games. SB
10. What was happening when the supermarkets (arrive) in the city? SB



1. Speaking

1. Responding to issues الرد على القضايا/المشكلات

- Oh, no!
- That's frustrating.

أوه، لا! / ياه!
هذا مُحبط

2. Suggesting solutions to issues اقتراح حلول للمشكلات

- It sounds like you need يبدو أنك بحاجة إلى
- There needs to be a better solution, like نحتاج لأن يكون هناك حل أفضل، مثل

Example:

(1) The basketball court is closed! Now there is nowhere to play basketball.

- Oh, no!

(2) The local community center is outdated and doesn't offer many activities for teens.

- That's frustrating. It sounds like you need better facilities.

(3) People are using their cars too much in the city and park their cars on the sidewalk!

- There needs to be a better solution, like more subway stations or more underground parking.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► **Magdy went to the basketball court but it was closed.**

Ahmed: How was your day, Magdy?

Magdy: It (1)..... OK.

Ahmed: Why not?

Magdy: Because I went to the tennis court, but it was closed!

Ahmed: Oh, no! Where (2)..... you go then?

Magdy: I went to the local (3)..... center.

Ahmed: (4)..... did you go there?

Magdy: I went there to meet my friends.



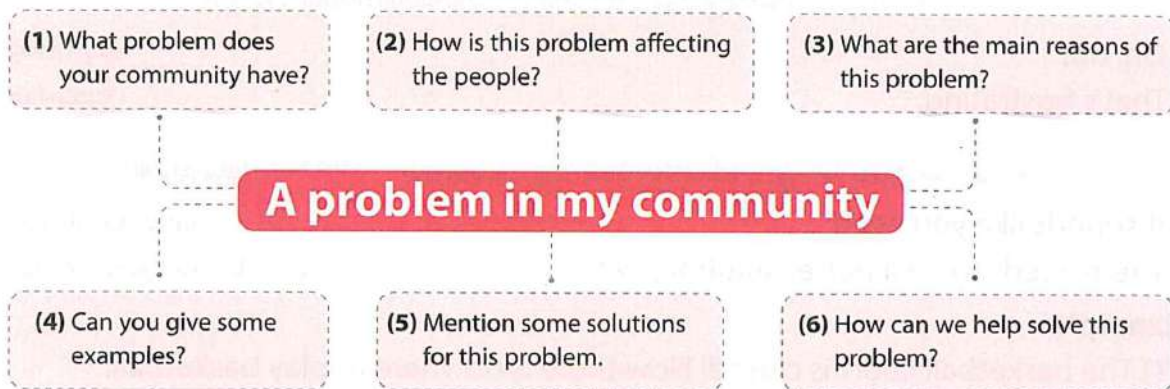
2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about a problem in your community

كيفية الكتابة عن مشكلة في مجتمعك



Example

A problem in my community

Every community has some problems. One of the problems in my community is that there aren't many facilities for children and adults. There aren't enough places for exercising, relaxing, hanging out, and having fun. The main reason is the construction of new buildings on open spaces. For example, they built an apartment building instead of the local park. It was very frustrating. We can work together to solve this problem. We can encourage the local leaders to assign land for building more parks and community centers. We should also keep all these places clean to improve the quality of life.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"A community problem"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 8 Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The team met to ideas for the project.
a) brainstorm b) think c) appear d) comment
2. The shop showed me where the toys are.
a) countryside b) markets c) assistant d) customers

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

planning – bark – park – bothers – transportation

The city has become very crowded, and one of the biggest problems is the lack of green spaces. What really (1)..... me is the noise, especially with all the cars driving around. People often (2)..... their cars in the wrong places, blocking sidewalks. To make the city better, I think we need better public (3)..... options, such as additional buses and bike lanes. If there is good city (4)....., we can create a more organized and peaceful environment for everyone.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Transportation is the way people use to move from one place to another. We use different types of vehicles, like cars, buses, trains, and planes, to travel. However, there are several problems with transportation that affect the environment and our daily lives.

First, cars can cause pollution and harm the environment, but we can reduce **this** by using cleaner, electric cars that don't produce harmful gases. Second, traffic can be very busy, especially during rush hours. However, if we have better public transportation options, like more buses and trains, and encourage people to use them, the roads will be less crowded, making travel easier and faster for everyone.

By using these solutions, we can reduce pollution, save time, and create cities that are more **friendly** for everyone. If more people use public transportation and choose walking or cycling, we can make our cities cleaner, less crowded, and better for everyone to live in.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The word "**friendly**" in the text could be similar in meaning to
a) dangerous b) boring c) pleasant d) expensive
2. Transportation causes air that is harmful for the environment.
a) pollution b) journeys c) stations d) solutions

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. What does the underlined word "this" refer to?
5. What can we do to reduce pollution?
6. Think of other solutions to improve transportation in cities.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When dad the room, we were playing the game.
a) was entering b) entered c) is entering d) enters
2. Lamiaa was driving she saw an accident.
a) if b) as c) when d) while

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My little sister was sleeping when I (call) her.
2. While I was studying, my brother (draw) a picture.
3. Sorry, Manal, I didn't hear you because I (sleeping).
4. While we (wait) for the bus, it started to rain.

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"The issue of population growth"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We (watch) TV all the evening yesterday.
2. I (play) football when I was younger.
3. While (walk) in the street, one of her friends suddenly stopped her.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

bench (n)	مقعد	memories (n)	ذكريات
climbing structure (n)	هيكل التسلق	nod (ded) (v)	يومئ برأسه
contribute to (d) (v)	يساهم في	peaceful (adj)	هادئ/مسالم
crowd (n)	حشد/جمهور	process (n)	عملية
gate (n)	بوابة	reflect on (ed) (v)	يفكر/يتأمل في
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	slide (n)	زلاقة/مزلجة
excitement (n)	إثارة	step (ped) back (v)	يتراجع للوراء/للخلف
fascinated (adj)	مفتون	swing (n)	أرجوحة
happiness (n)	سعادة	teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعي
impact (n)	تأثير	twin (n)	توعم

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

across (prep)	عبر	interest (n)	اهتمام
actions (n)	أفعال	noise (n)	ضوضاء/ضجيج
back then	في ذلك الوقت/حينها	notice (d) (v)	يلاحظ
especially (adv)	خصوصاً	playground (n)	ملعب
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
field (n)	حقل	sound (n)	صوت
importance (n)	أهمية	worker (n)	عامل
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	describe (d) (v)	يصف

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: explore – crowd – twin – importance

- 1 A of people is waiting for the bus.
- 2 We used a map to the city.
- 3 I can't tell the difference between the boys.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

look > through	ينظر من خلال	move > up and down	يتحرك لأعلى ولأسفل
do > a good job	يقوم بعمل جيد	go to > the front	يذهب إلى الأمام
feel > part of	يشعر بأنه جزء من	make > changes	يحدث تغييرات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

try out	يجرب	on the top floor of	في الطابق العلوي من
chat with	يحدثش مع	point at	يشير إلى
full of	ملء بـ	slow down	يبطئ
go on	يحدث/يستمر	under construction	تحت الإنشاء
interested in	مهتم بـ	with excitement	بإثارة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
lie يرقد/يتمدد	lay	lain	show يوضح/يبين	showed	shown
set up ينشئ/يؤسس	set up	set up			

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
bright لامع	dark غامق	giant عملاق/ضخم	tiny/small صغير
busy مشغول	free فارغ	inside بالداخل	outside بالخارج

Check Point

Choose and complete: lie – tiny – do – of – with

- Scientists good jobs by inventing useful things.
- The garden is full flowers. I like them all.
- Our cat likes to in the sun.
- The forest has giant trees. The opposite of "giant" is ".....".

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



يعنى

mean + (inf. + ing)

- Winning the race **means** **running** faster than everyone else.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

climbing structure هيكل التسلق	something that children can climb and have fun on
swing أرجوحة	something you can sit on and move up and down by using your legs
fascinated منبهر	very interested in something
contribute يساهم	to give something
twins توعم	two children who are brothers and/or sisters born at the same time
excitement إثارة	a feeling of happiness and interest
process عملية	actions you need to take in order to do something

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
impact (n)	تأثير	effect	تأثير
peaceful (adj)	هادئ/مسالم	quiet	هادئ

Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
happy (adj)	سعيد	-ness		تحويل الصفة إلى اسم		happiness (n)	سعادة
peace (n)	السلام/الهدوء	-ful		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		peaceful (adj)	هادئ/مسالم
wonder (v)	يتعجب	-ful		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		wonderful (adj)	رائع
excite (v)	يثير	-ment		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		excitement (n)	إثارة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What do you usually do at the weekend?

 Read and listen to the story.

Lesson 5: Literature

SB page 24

The twins' discovery

1 In the new city, **twins**⁽¹⁾ Adam and Amira lived in a small apartment on the top floor of a tall building. Outside in the city were the sounds of cars, and the noise of the construction of new apartment buildings and facilities.

2 One sunny Saturday, Amira and Adam wanted to explore their neighborhood. "Let's see what's happening at the park!" Amira suggested to their parents, with **excitement**⁽²⁾. The park was across the street, and they often played there on Saturday mornings, but today they wanted to see the new playground that was under construction.

3 As they walked along with their parents, they noticed the busy workers setting up **swings**⁽³⁾ and **slides**⁽⁴⁾. "Wow, look at that!" Adam shouted, pointing at a giant **climbing structure**⁽⁵⁾. "I can't wait to try it out!"

4 When they reached the park gates, they found a small **crowd**⁽⁶⁾ of people looking at the construction through the gates. They wanted to **find out** what was going on, so the twins went to the front. A friendly worker named Mr. Ragab noticed them and smiled. "Hey there! Do you want to see how we build playgrounds?"

5 Amira and Adam nodded with excitement. Mr. Ragab explained the **process**⁽⁷⁾ of construction, showing them how they carefully put each piece to make sure it was both safe and fun. The twins were **fascinated**⁽⁸⁾. They learned about **teamwork**⁽⁹⁾, planning, and the importance of **creating**⁽¹⁰⁾ spaces for everyone to enjoy.

6 After the playground construction was finished and safe, Mr. Ragab invited families to help with a small task. "We need to paint the benches. Would you like to help?" The twins looked at each other, and agreed.



- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| (1) توعم | (2) إثارة |
| (3) أرجوحات | (4) زحاليق |
| (5) هيكل التسلق | (6) حشد |
| (7) عملية | (8) مفتون/منبهر |
| (9) العمل الجماعي | (10) إنشاء |

The family spent an hour painting bright colors on the benches, laughing and **chatting**⁽¹¹⁾ with the other volunteers.

يحدث (11)

مخور (12)

يرقد (13)

أفعال (14)

- 7 Amira and Adam stepped back to look at their work. The new benches looked wonderful and bright. "We did a good job!" Adam said. Amira agreed, her heart was full of happiness. "We can be **proud**⁽¹²⁾ that we helped make our city better!"
- 8 On their way home, the twins and their parents talked about how important it was to **contribute** to their community. "Today I understood that it's not just about having fun at the park," Amira said. "It's about making it a nice place for everyone too."
- 9 That night, as they **lay**⁽¹³⁾ in bed, the twins realized that even small **actions**⁽¹⁴⁾ make big changes. They felt part of a community, and that meant working together to create a better place for everyone.

"Guessing the meaning" «مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة»

تعتبر مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة في النص من المهارات التي قد تختبرها قطعة الفهم، وتعتمد على فهم معنى الكلمة من خلال السياق:

- The underlined word "**find out**" has the same meaning as
 - describe
 - wonder
 - explore
 - notice
- The underlined word "**contribute**" is similar in meaning to
 - help
 - invite
 - feel
 - lie

Pre-reading question:

- What do you like most about your city?

Lesson 6: Writing

SB page 26

 **Read the Nabila's journal entry post.**
January 25th, 2025

Today, my grandma showed me some old photos of our city. It was a town back then! She could walk to the sea from her house. There were lots of green spaces, and it looked so peaceful⁽¹⁾ in the photos. Now, there's hardly any open land left. It's all been taken over by construction. The population has grown so much that there are apartment buildings from here to the sea. I love my city but now there are not enough trees for the birds to live in.

I started thinking about how the town has changed over the years. We've built more houses and roads, but there is not enough countryside anymore. There's too much pollution and too many buildings. Maybe we need to slow down and think more about the future – especially the future of the environment.



(1) هادئ

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What was different about Nabila's city in the past?
.....
- 2 How does Nabila feel about the changes?
.....
- 3 What does Nabila think should happen in the future?
.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. In big cities, it's important to green spaces for everyone to enjoy.
a) damage b) excite c) destroy d) create
2. The park has colorful for the children to play on.
a) crowds b) slides c) boats d) ships
3. Manar has a brother. They are the same age.
a) worker b) twin c) process d) distant
4. The from the construction site was very loud.
a) noise b) silence c) whispering d) action
5. It's important to reflect your actions before making a decision.
a) at b) in c) on d) with
6. Wael likes to on the grass and watch the clouds.
a) lie b) show c) lay d) feel
7. Shahenda keeps all her old photos to remember the good
a) wishes b) memories c) discoveries d) workers
8. The room was calm and, perfect for reading.
a) low b) poor c) weak d) peaceful
9. Please, park your car outside the school
a) window b) gate c) roof d) class
10. My little sister her head to say yes.
a) nodded b) described c) wondered d) invited

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

playground – under – happening – explore – above

Mona and Alaa are my cousins. Last Monday, they wanted to (1)..... their neighborhood. They wanted to know what's (2)..... at the park! The park is near their house, and they often played there on Friday afternoons, but today they wanted to see the new (3)..... . They thought it was still (4)..... construction. They were surprised to see that it was finished.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is an area for children to play, especially at a school or in a park.
a) library b) laboratory c) class d) playground
2. The under the tree is my favorite place to relax.
a) kitchen b) hole c) team d) bench
3. The heavy rain had a big on the crops.
a) impact b) discovery c) process d) crowd
4. The party was full of We all were very excited.
a) process b) worry c) quietness d) happiness
5. Amira talked with about her trip to the local park. She was happy.
a) worry b) excitement c) treatment d) discouragement
6. As they were walking, they the busy workers setting up swings and slides.
a) noticed b) nodded c) created d) invited
7. The show was so wonderful. We were
a) bored b) fascinated c) sleepy d) developed
8. We learn about from playing a sport like football.
a) homework b) history c) teamwork d) construction
9. It's important to to your community. We should all help develop it.
a) create b) contribute c) invite d) notice
10. The twins realized that even small actions big changes.
a) do b) make c) damage d) lock

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

increasing – spices – protect – slow down – spaces

I love my town. It has changed a lot over the years. We've built more houses and roads, but there are not enough green (1)..... . They are disappearing now, and that's bad for all of us. Pollution is (2)..... . I wish they could develop and (3)..... the environment. We need to (4)..... and think about the future.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Quantifiers (many/much/enough)

محددات الكمية

- e.g. I didn't save **much** money this month.
- There weren't **many** people on the beach.
 - There **isn't enough** rice for everyone.

1 many (كثيرًا (للجمع)

many
too many
so many

} اسم جمع +

- e.g. There aren't **many** students in the classroom.
- Don't eat **too many** sweets.
 - Salma has **so many** ideas for the project.

هناك فرق بين **so many/ too many**

- تُستخدم **so many** لإظهار عدد كبير من الأشياء، وغالبًا ما يكون ذلك بشكل إيجابي وتأتي في الجملة المثبتة.
- **too many** تعني أن العدد أكبر من اللازم أو مفرط، ويمكن أن يعنى وجود مشكلة، وتأتي غالبًا في النفي والسؤال.

2 much (كثيرًا (للكمية)

much
too much
so/very much

} اسم مفرد لا يُعد (كمية) +

- e.g. I don't drink **much** coffee.
- Oh no, there's **too much** noise outside!
 - Omar has **so much** energy.

هناك فرق بين **so/very much / too much**

- تُستخدم **so/very much** عندما تكون الكمية كبيرة ولكنها مقبولة أو إيجابية وتأتي في الجملة المثبتة
- **too much** تعني أن الكمية مفرطة أو أكثر من اللازم، مما قد يسبب مشكلة أو عدم راحة، وتأتي غالبًا في السؤال والنفي.
- لاحظ يمكن أن يأتي (**too much/ too many**) في الجمل المثبتة، ولكنهما دائمًا ما يحملان معنى سلبيًا (عادة مشكلة).

3 enough (كاف/ بدرجة كافية (جمع/ كمية)

enough
not enough

} + اسم جمع/ اسم مفرد لا يُعد (كمية)

- e.g. We have **enough** chairs for the guests.
- Is there **enough** water in the bottle?
 - Oh no, there aren't **enough** players for the game!
 - There isn't **enough** space in the car.



Got it ?

يمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعومة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- There aren't (**much**) trees in the park.
- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**many**) لأن (**trees**) اسم جمع يُعد.
- (**Are**) there much pollution in big cities?
- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**Is**) لأن (**pollution**) اسم لا يُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد تعامل معاملة المفرد.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. We don't have time to finish the project.
 a) some b) many c) not enough d) enough
2. There are too cars on the road. It's too busy.
 a) much b) many c) enough d) a lot
3. There is too noise outside. I can't focus.
 a) much b) enough c) many d) so many
4. Are there many mistakes in your homework?
 a) enough b) any c) too d) some
5. Great, there's food for everyone!
 a) enough b) too many c) not much d) not many
6. I'm surprised there aren't enough
 a) seat's b) seat c) a seat d) seats
7. Oh no, there's much snow!
 a) some b) so c) enough d) any
8. We have money for the trip.
 a) so much b) so many c) too many d) not enough

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. Are there too (much) people at the party?
2. Don't eat too (many) fast food.
3. We have so many (thing) to do today.
4. I have so (enough) homework to finish tonight.
5. Ugh, there's too (many) pollution in the city!
6. There isn't (many) water in the bottle.
7. There are many (apple) left in the basket.
8. She has so (much) friends in her class.
9. There isn't (many) sugar in my coffee. Could you add some?
10. I want to buy that mobile, but I don't have (many) money.

D Skills



Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة مقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about going out

كيفية الكتابة عن الخروج (للتنزه)

(1) When was your day out?

(2) Where did you go?

(3) What did you do on your day out?

(4) Who did you go with?

A day out

(5) What was the weather like?

(6) What was the highlight of your day?

(7) How did you feel at the end of the day?

Example

A day out

Last Saturday, I had a fantastic day out with my friends. We decided to explore the nearby town of El Gouna. It was sunny. We spent the morning walking along the beautiful port. After a delicious lunch at a restaurant, we took some boats and spent the afternoon on the water. The highlight of the day was the amazing sunset we watched. As the sun set, painting the sky with bright colors, we felt fascinated by such a wonderful experience. By the end of the day, we were tired but glad, with memories to remember.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"A trip you went on"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 8

Lessons
(5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Can you help me the tent for camping?
a) appear b) set up c) lie d) burn
- Pollution has a big on the community.
a) slide b) process c) swing d) impact

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Oh no, there isn't (many) time! Let's hurry!
- She made too (much) mistakes on the test.
- I don't have (many) energy to finish the task.
- There's too (many) noise in big cities.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

relaxing – space – yellow – green – perfect

Last weekend, I went to the park with my friends. We had enough (1) to play football and enjoy nature. There were many people (2) on the grass. The weather was (3), and the air was fresh. We stayed for hours, but I wish there were more (4) spaces like this in the city!

4 Complete the following dialog:

Habiba spent a day out at the park.

Basmala : How was your day yesterday?

Habiba : It was (1) I went to the park.

Basmala : Oh, nice! (2) did you do there?

Habiba : I played with my friends.

Basmala : Did you (3) anything?

Habiba : Sure! I bought ice cream and it was (4)

Basmala : Yum! Great.

Habiba : Thanks.



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I have (many) experience in this field. I am going to get the job.
- Eat some snacks, but not too (enough).
- We don't have much bread, but I think it will be (much).



Listening

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

Scan & listen



1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where did Adam and Amira live?
 - a) In a big house.
 - b) In a big city.
 - c) In a tall building.
 - d) In a small apartment.
2. What floor was their apartment on?
 - a) The ground floor.
 - b) The middle floor.
 - c) The top floor.
 - d) The bottom floor.
3. What sound did they hear outside?
 - a) Birds singing.
 - b) Wind blowing.
 - c) Cars and buses.
 - d) Rain falling.

(B) Listen and complete:

4. Adam and Amira lived in a building.
5. Despite the, Adam and Amira loved looking out of the window.
6. They often wished there were more parks and green nearby.



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We wanted to to the project. It's really important for our community.
 - a) nod
 - b) contribute
 - c) step back
 - d) reflect
2. The of the new school is almost finished.
 - a) leader
 - b) construction
 - c) solution
 - d) safety

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

of – back – community – wildlife – spaces

My grandma showed me old photos of our city. It was a small town (1)..... then. There were green fields and open (2)....., and she could walk to the sea. Now, the city is full (3)..... apartment blocks, leaving hardly any open land or trees. It makes me wonder where all the (4)..... is.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, I reflected on how my town has changed over the years. When I was young, there were many green fields and parks. People could walk to the river easily. Now, there are many buildings and roads. The population has grown, and many trees have been cut down. Birds and other animals have fewer places to live. The air feels less fresh because of **pollution** from cars and factories. I love my town, but I miss the peaceful green spaces. It makes me think about how important it is to protect the environment. We need to find ways to balance growth and nature to keep our town beautiful and healthy for future generations.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
 a) green spaces
 b) pollution
 c) town's changes
 d) population growth
- 2.** The word "pollution" means
 a) clean air
 b) dirty air
 c) buildings
 d) green spaces

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. What did the writer miss about his town?
5. Why does the writer believe it is important to protect the environment?
.....
6. In your opinion, how do cutting down trees and building more roads and buildings in a town affect the environment?
.....

C Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** When Waleed came home, his little son TV.
a) watches b) watching
c) watched d) was watching
- 2.** I don't have energy to continue. Let's have a rest.
a) enough b) many
c) too d) very

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What was he (do) the whole evening yesterday?
2. While playing with my cousins, I (break) my leg.
3. I have too (much) questions about the homework.
4. Omar spent so (many) time on that project. He worked really hard.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Abdullah spent a day out in the playground.

Aziz : How was your day yesterday?

Abdullah : It was (1)..... . I went out with my friends.

Aziz : That sounds fun. (2)..... did you go?

Abdullah : We went to the playground.

Aziz : What did you (3)..... at the playground?

Abdullah : We played (4)..... .

Aziz : Nice! I'll join you next time.

8 Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Mazin to tell him about a good day you had. Your name is Khaled and your email address is khaled10@gmail.com. Your friend's email is mazen@student.com.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Anwar is telling Ahmed about his last summer holiday.

Ahmed : How was your last summer holiday?

Anwar : It was (1).....!

- a) terrible b) bad c) great d) horrible

Ahmed : Wow, that's cool! (2)..... did you do there.

- a) Why b) When c) How d) What

Anwar : I helped feed the monkeys. They were very playful!

Ahmed : That sounds fun! Did you take any pictures?

Anwar : Yes, I (3)..... . Here's a photo I took of the monkeys.

- a) did b) didn't c) do d) does

Ahmed : They look so cute! Do you (4)..... anything else there?

- a) help b) feed c) do d) eat

Anwar : Yes, I helped clean the lions' enclosure.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. I (visit) my grandparents every summer when I was young.

- a) was visiting b) am visiting c) visiting d) visited

2. While they were watching a movie, I (reads) my favorite story.

- a) reading b) read c) was reading d) is reading

3. Eat (much) fruits and vegetables to be healthy.

- a) enough b) little c) any d) no

4. There is too (many) noise in the room. I can't sleep.

- a) many b) enough c) much d) few

5. There isn't (many) space in the car for all of us. I will take a taxi.

- a) few b) enough c) too many d) little

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Module 4 Question Bank

on Units **7&8**

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

eco-friendly – environment – learn – damage – protect

It's important to help our planet. When we study, it's important to think about the (1)..... . Everyone knows how important it is to (2)..... our planet. Here are some easy ideas to make your studying more (3)..... . The best part is that these tips are simple and can help take care of nature while you (4)..... .

B)

boring – natural – great – reduce – metal

Recycling is very important for protecting the environment. It helps (1)..... waste, saves energy, and keeps our planet clean. By recycling things like paper, plastic, and (2)....., we can reuse different materials and preserve them. Recycling also keeps (3)..... resources. It's a (4)..... way to help the Earth.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Traveling can give you many new
a) devices b) pollution c) experiences d) suggestions
- My grandmother always me to keep going and not to give up.
a) encouraged b) discouraged c) annoyed d) remembered
- Adam has a lot of in himself.
a) process b) entry c) patience d) confidence
- The new facilities in our town will help improve the of life for the people.
a) growth b) quality c) solution d) quantity
- is important for success in sports.
a) Teamwork b) Crowd c) Pollution d) Playground

Language

- Who you call last night?
a) do b) did c) will d) should
- The chef cooked our meal is very talented.
a) when b) which c) what d) who
- Khalid football when it started to rain.
a) is playing b) plays c) was playing d) played
- While I was talking on the phone, Doaa the door.
a) opened b) open c) opens d) opening
- Wow, there are so stars in the sky!
a) any b) enough c) much d) many

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Where (be) you born?
2. The artist (which) draws beautiful pictures is very famous.
3. The concert (who) we attended was amazing.
4. What (did) the biggest challenge you faced last year?
5. A library is a place (when) we read or borrow books.
6. When did your father (came) home yesterday?
7. I like to listen to music while (run) in the morning.
8. Marwa (clean) the house while Tamer was washing the car.
9. (While) Toka arrived, they were hanging the decorations.
10. How (did) your last vacation?

4 Complete the following dialog:

A) Malak suggests using digital textbooks, but Marwa suggests using tablets.

Malak : I'm thinking about ideas to make our learning eco-friendly.

Marwa : That sounds great. (1)..... could we do?

Malak : We could use digital textbooks.

Marwa : What is the benefit of using digital textbooks?

Malak : They could (2)..... a lot of paper.

Marwa : Great! It will save a lot of paper.

Malak : What else can we (3).....?

Marwa : We can use tablets.

Malak : I (4)..... that tablets can be helpful, too.

B) Sandra asks Mariam about her plans for the weekend.

Sandra : Do you have any plans for the weekend?

Mariam : Yes, I (1)..... . I'm thinking of doing some volunteer work.

Sandra : That's a great idea! (2)..... do you plan to volunteer?

Mariam : I plan to help out at the animal center.

Sandra : (3)..... do you choose that?

Mariam : Because I like animals. Would you like to join?

Sandra : Sure! When are we going to go?

Mariam : We are going to go (4)..... Sunday.

Sandra : Great!

5 MODULE

مقرر الشهور
مارس وإبريل



Unit

9

Plans with friends

Unit

10

The Online Generation

Module 5 Question Bank

A photograph of three children playing tug-of-war outdoors. In the foreground, a young boy with curly hair and a plaid shirt is smiling and pulling on the rope. Behind him, a girl with curly hair and a boy in a blue shirt are also pulling. They are in a grassy area with trees in the background.

Unit 9

PLANS WITH FRIENDS

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading Scanning a text message about making arrangements and a summary of a story about friendship

Listening A conversation about making arrangements

Speaking Planning activities with friends

Writing Tips on staying in touch with a friend: will and going to

Language Future forms: will and going to; present continuous for future arrangements

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

care (d) (v)	يهتم/يعتني	join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
conversation (n)	محادثة	notice (d) (v)	يلاحظ
entrance (n)	مدخل	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
fake (adj)	مزيف	promise (d) (v/n)	يعد/وعد
group chat (n)	دردشة جماعية	text (ed) (v)	يرسل رسالة نصية
international (adj)	دولي		
Adjectives of feelings صفات المشاعر			
afraid	خائف	left out	مستبعد/ منبوذ
angry	غاضب	pleased	مسرور
excited	متحمس	surprised	مندهش
nervous	متوتر/عصبى	upset	منزعج
included	متضمن/مشمول (جزء من مجموعة)	worried	قلق

المفردات الإضافية

Additional Vocabulary

a bit	قليلاً	named (adj)	يسمى/ يدعى
action movie (n)	فيلم أكشن	plan (ned) (v/n)	يخطط/ خطة
alone (adv)	بمفرده	post (ed) (v/n)	ينشر/ منشور
city center (n)	وسط البلد	prepare (d) (v)	يجهز
city park (n)	حديقة المدينة	probably (adv)	على الأرجح
dictionary entry (n)	الإدخال في القاموس	schoolwork (n)	العمل المدرسي
funny (adj)	مضحك	sounds good	يبدو جيداً
later (adv)	لاحقاً	storm (n)	عاصفة
mall (n)	مجمع تجارى (مول)	trip (n)	رحلة
movie theatre (n)	دار السينما	worry (y-ied) (v)	يقلق

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Choose and complete: **texts – pleased – angry – funny**

- 1 I was when my father gave me a present.
- 2 Karim usually his friends using his mobile phone.
- 3 The film was so that we couldn't stop laughing.

يهدف هذا التحريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

do > well/badly	يؤدي جيداً/سيئاً	take > photos for	يلتقط صوراً لـ
bake > cookies	يخبز الكعك	keep > a promise	يحافظ على الوعد
go > shopping	يذهب للتسوق	keep > a plan	يحافظ على الخطة
make > a plan for	يعد خطة لـ	have > free time	لديه وقت فراغ
		have > fun	يمرح

التعبيرات اللغوية

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at first	في البداية	chat with	يحدث مع
at the entrance	في مدخل	excited about	متشوق لـ
at the top of	في قمة	include ... in	يشترك/يضمن في
better/best for	أفضل لـ	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
bring يحضر	brought	brought	lose يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost
leave يغادر/يترك	left	left	meet يقابل	met	met

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
fake	مزيف	real	حقيقي
well	بشكل جيد	badly	بشكل سيئ
nervous/worried	متوتر/قلق	calm/quiet	هادئ
lose	يخسر	win	يفوز

Choose and complete:

keeps – includes – with – fake – bring

- 1 It's better to have a few real friends than many ones.
- 2 A good person always his promise.
- 3 I forgot to my English book with me.
- 4 Amir often chats his friends online.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

احرص الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 Prepositions on/in/at

حروف الجر (نستخدم حروف الجر المختلفة كالتالي):

- on + أيام الأسبوع
- on Saturday/on Saturday morning
- at + الوقت/الساعة
- at 2 o'clock/at 4 pm/at 3.00
- in/at + الأماكن

نستخدم in للمساحات الكبيرة والمحاطة مثل البلدان أو الغرف، ونستخدم at للمواقع المحددة.

- in Sunrise Mall/in the city center/in town
- at Cinema El Shorouk/at the entrance to/at a café

2 look/seem + adj

يبدو

- You look sad today! Why?

• Salma seems worried. I don't know why.

3 decide/plan/want + (to + inf.)

يقرر/يخطط/يريد أن

- I decided to meet my friend Heba at a café in town.
- We plan to visit our grandma this weekend.

4 start + (to + inf.)

يبدأ

- I'm starting to think she's not a real friend.

5 leave + obj. + (inf. + ing)

يترك

- Fake friends leave you feeling sad and alone.

6 International Words:

كلمات دولية

International words are usually English words that people also use in other languages.

الكلمات الدولية غالباً ما تكون كلمات إنجليزية يستخدمها الأشخاص أيضاً في لغات أخرى.

أمثلة على ذلك:

- الكلمات الخاصة بالتكنولوجيا مثل: (the internet, app, social media, online, ...)

- وبعض الكلمات الخاصة بالأماكن مثل: (hotel, restaurant, café, taxi, ...)

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We are going to have lunch the new café.
a) of b) at c) on d) with
- 2 My friends planned the weekend in their grandparents' village.
a) spent b) spending c) spend d) to spend
- 3 They are starting well after lots of practice.
a) to playing b) to play c) play d) a & b
- 4 Hala left her phone on the desk.
a) charged b) charging c) charges d) to charge

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

fake	مزيف	not real, but made to look or seem ⁽¹⁾ real
include	يشترك/يضمن	to make someone or something part of a larger group

(1) يبدو

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
join (v)	ينضم إلى	take part in	يشترك في
notice (v)	يلاحظ	observe	يلاحظ

Suffix

اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
act (v)	يتصرف	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		action (n)	حركة/تصرف/أداء

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- How do you usually feel about exams?

Lesson 1: How I spend my time

 **Read and listen to the text messages. What do Khaled and Karim decide to do?**

SB page 28

←  online



Hi Khaled! How are you? I'm a bit nervous about my presentation⁽¹⁾ on Thursday. I'm worried that I'll do badly. Do you want to do something on Saturday? We'll have free time! Maybe go to the mall?

Hi Karim! I'm OK, thanks. I'm excited about the presentation. You need to relax. You'll do well. Don't worry! I'm going to my grandparents' house on Saturday morning. What about Saturday afternoon? I'm surprised that you want to go to the mall. Do you like shopping now? 😊



OK, OK. Maybe going shopping isn't the best thing for us to do. 😊 What about going to the movie theater on Saturday? I want to see that new action movie.

Sure. We can see that film at 2 o'clock or 4:30 p.m. on Saturday at Cinema El Shorouk in Sunrise Mall. What do you think?



OK. 4.30 is better for me. I can meet you at the entrance⁽²⁾ to the mall at 3:00 p.m. if you like.

Sure. Sounds good. See you tomorrow. 😊




Post-reading questions:

(1) عرض تقديمي (2) مدخل

- 1 Why is Karim worried?
- 2 Where will Karim and Khaled meet?
- 3 Why do you think Khaled is surprised that Karim wants to go to the mall?

Pre-reading question:

- From your point of view, what should a good friend be like?

 **Read and listen to the story.**

Lesson 2: Real or fake friends

SB page 30

Two friends



- A) Last Saturday, Mom took me to meet my friend Heba at a café in town. We met when we were just six years old and she's my best friend. We always have fun and help each other with schoolwork. Heba told me, "I'm going to bring some photos from our last trip, Sara!" I was excited because we both love taking photos for social media, and I wanted to see them.
- B) I also have a friend named Jessica, but I don't think she is going to be a really good friend because sometimes she is kind and sometimes she isn't. We met online a few months ago. At first, she was really nice and liked my **posts**⁽¹⁾, but now I **notice**⁽²⁾ she doesn't really **care**⁽³⁾. Sometimes, she says, "I'll text you later," but she never does.
- C) Last week, she asked me to join her in a group chat. I thought it would be fun, but when I joined, she was chatting with other people and didn't **include**⁽⁴⁾ me in the **conversation**⁽⁵⁾. I felt **left out**⁽⁶⁾.
- D) Mom agreed to come with me to meet Heba next weekend. We're going to meet at the café and then take a taxi to the city park. I know she will be there and keep her **promise**⁽⁷⁾. We will probably post a funny video on social media from the park.
- E) Now I realize that real friends don't just make plans; they keep them. Real friends make you feel happy and included, while **fake**⁽⁸⁾ friends leave you feeling sad and alone. I am going to spend more time with Heba and real friends who care. I think that's important.

(1) منشورات

(2) يلاحظ

(3) تهتم

(4) يشمل/يضمن

(5) المحادثة

(6) مستبعد

(7) وعد

(8) مزيف/غير حقيقي

Comprehension Skills

"Giving a title to the passage" «إعطاء عنوان للفقرة»

1. Focus on the main idea. (ركز على الفكرة الرئيسية (يجب أن يعطى العنوان تلميحاً عليها).
2. Use descriptive words. (استخدام كلمات وصفية تصف الموضوع بشكل جيد.
3. Make it interesting. (اجعله شيقاً ليجذب القارئ.
4. Keep it short and simple. (اجعله قصيراً وبسيطاً).

Can you think of a title for the previous passage?

- Real Friends vs. Fake Friends.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering

Understanding

Applying

Analyzing

Evaluating

Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We spend lots of time in our online.
a) text message b) entrance c) plan d) group chat
2. Shams was when she lost her keys.
a) left out b) excited c) pleased d) angry
3. Rola felt because her little brother was sick.
a) excited b) pleased c) worried d) surprised
4. My cousins went on a school to the zoo.
a) trip b) movie c) building d) mall
5. We should more vegetables in our diet.
a) chat b) include c) join d) bring
6. Esraa didn't the mistake in her homework.
a) notice b) care c) bring d) chat
7. Mido shares funny pictures social media.
a) down b) with c) at d) on
8. You always feel happy and included with a/an friend.
a) untrue b) fake c) boring d) real
9. Aya wants to a plan for her sister's birthday party.
a) make b) give c) go d) take
10. Asser didn't study, so he was afraid that he'll badly.
a) spend b) make c) do d) take

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

meet – excited – entrance – join – planned

Sara and Dina were both feeling worried about their school project. To take a break, they decided to spend Friday afternoon at the park. They agreed to (1)..... at 3:00 at the park (2)..... . Dina thought it would be a great way to relax, while Sara was (3)..... to enjoy some fresh air. The two friends (4)..... to take a walk, have snacks, and talk, helping them feel refreshed and ready to finish their work.

1. I like adventure. I want to see an movie.
a) action b) entrance
c) international d) alone

2. Sara went to the in the city center to buy a new dress.
a) entrance b) shopping c) building d) mall

3. OK. 4.30 is better me. Let's meet then.
a) for b) at c) in d) of

4. My friends like my on social media.
a) malls b) posts
c) plans d) promises

5. Ahmed is a bit about his test next week. He can't sleep well.
a) nervous b) angry c) funny d) lazy

6. I feel worried when I'm the top of a tall building and I look down.
a) on b) at c) with d) for

7. I feel when I am with my classmates because they don't include me in the conversation.
a) included b) calm c) excited d) left out

8. Maged was sad because his team the match.
a) felt b) met c) lost d) brought

bring – fake – promises – real – care

Real friends make you feel happy and included. They keep their (1)....., include you in conversations, and care about your feelings. They stand by you in good and bad times. On the other hand, (2)..... friends often make excuses, break promises, or leave you out. They only (3)..... when it is useful for them. It's important to spend time with real friends who truly care and (4)..... joy to your life.

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Future Plans

الخطط المستقبلية

1 Will e.g. I think my parents **will** come late tonight.

Usage الاستخدام

We use will + inf.

- to talk about promises and quick decisions. - للتحدث عن الوعود والقرارات السريعة.
e.g. I **will** call you later. (وعد)
The door bell is ringing, I **will** open it. (قرار سريع)
- in a prediction when there is no present evidence. - مع التنبؤ بدون وجود دليل.
e.g. It **will** rain tomorrow. (لا يوجد سحب في السماء ولا أي دليل فهو مجرد تنبؤ)

Form التكوين

Affirmative

الإثبات

مصدر الفعل **will** ('ll) + **inf.** + الفاعل Subject

- e.g. Aunt Manal **will** come tomorrow. My father **will** buy me a present.

Negative

النفي

مصدر الفعل **will not** (won't) + **inf.** + الفاعل Subject

- e.g. Salma **will not** attend the next party. We **won't** go out next weekend.

Question

السؤال

السؤال بـ «هل» Yes/No question

مصدر الفعل **Will** + subject + الفاعل **inf.**

- e.g. A: **Will** you travel tomorrow? B: Yes, I **will**. / B: No, I **won't**.

السؤال بأداة استفهام Wh-question

مصدر الفعل **inf.** + subject + الفاعل **will** + أداة استفهام Q. Word

- e.g. A: Where **will** your sisters go next weekend? B: They **will** go to the cinema.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

يمكن أن تأتي مع كلمات مثل: أنا أعد I promise - أنا أعتقد I think - أنا متأكد I'm sure - ربما Perhaps



Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I think Eyad (buying) a new bike.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (will buy) لوجود I think.

2 Going to e.g. We are going to bake some cookies this afternoon.

Usage الاستخدام

We use **be + going to + inf.**

1. to talk about a plan we made or an intention we had before the moment of speaking. - للتحدث عن خطة قمنا بها أو نية كانت لدينا قبل لحظة التحدث.

e.g. I'm going to bring some photos from our last trip. (خطة)

I am going to spend more time with my family. (نية)

2. in prediction when there is evidence in the present that something will happen. - في التنبؤ مع وجود دليل.

e.g. Look at those black clouds. There is going to be a storm soon.

Form

التكوين

I	>	+	am (not)	
He/She/It/ اسم مفرد	>	+	is (not)	+ going to + (inf) مصدر الفعل
We/You/They/ اسم جمع	>	+	are (not)	

e.g. I am not going to travel to Alexandria next weekend.

You're late. You're going to miss your train!

1 Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ «هل»

Am	>	I	
Is	>	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	+ going to + (inf) مصدر الفعل ...?
Are	>	we / you / they / اسم جمع	

e.g. A: Are your brothers going to try diving?

B: Yes, they are. / B: No, they aren't.

Question

السؤال

2 Wh- question:

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word (أداة استفهام)	>	am	>	I	
	>	is	>	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	+ going to + (inf) مصدر الفعل ...?
	>	are	>	we / you / they / اسم جمع	

e.g. A: What are you going to do tomorrow afternoon?

B: I'm going to watch a football match on TV.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

يمكن أن تأتي مع كلمات مثل: intend - يخطط - plan - يقرر - decide

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Perhaps Amin us next Friday.
 a) visited b) visit c) has visited d) will visit
2. We go to the concert tomorrow. We are sure.
 a) aren't b) haven't c) won't d) not going to
3. My friends will hiking this weekend.
 a) went b) goes c) going d) go
4. join the basketball team?
 a) Is he b) He is c) Will he d) He will
5. Mona visit her aunt. She decided this with her family.
 a) is going b) going to c) is going to d) will
6. When are you going to to Aswan?
 a) traveling b) travels c) traveled d) travel
7. Our team the match because most of our players are bad.
 a) wasn't winning b) isn't going to win
 c) is going to win d) will win
8. Where are they spend next summer holiday?
 a) going to b) will c) go to d) go

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My uncle will (arriving) from France tomorrow at noon.
2. My father (buy) a new car next month as intended.
3. I think Adel (not) bring his guitar.
4. I promise I (call) you in the evening.
5. What (you are) going to do for your birthday?
6. (You will) watch TV tonight?
7. I (will) to bake a cake tomorrow. I'm buying the flour and eggs.
8. What (he will) do this afternoon?
9. I'm sure they (not) join us for dinner.
10. (Will) Celin going to bring the books to class tomorrow?

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Will you lend me 300 pounds? I promise I it back to you tomorrow.
a) give b) gave c) going to give d) 'll give
- We have a picnic tomorrow. It's all planned.
a) 're going to b) will c) are d) going to
- It's Maria's birthday next week, so we're going her some flowers.
a) buying b) to buying c) to buy d) buy
- Gamal the faculty الكلية he likes because he has got full marks.
a) may join b) will join c) is going to join d) joined
- I'm to go to the supermarket after work. What do we need?
a) will b) going c) go d) can
- What time finish work on Monday?
a) will you b) you will c) are you d) you are
- Shereen hopes she as an engineer when she grows up.
a) going to work b) to work c) working d) will work
- They are saving money. They buy a new car.
a) are going b) going c) going to d) are going to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I think she won't (calling) me this evening.
- A: Are you free tomorrow? B: Sorry. I'm (going) study for the exam tomorrow.
- When we are old, life (be) easier.
- Next week, we (go) to the Grand Egyptian Museum.
- I have bought a guitar and I (going/learn) to play it.
- How (are) houses be in the future?
- Sally (not) to eat now; she is not hungry.
- Sooner or later, I (buy) a new car.
- (Will they) going to go on a trip to the beach next weekend as decided?
- My father promises that he (going) help me with the project.

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Speaking

Making suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات

- Do you want to + inf. ...? هل تريد أن ...؟
- Do you want to **do** something on Saturday?
- What about + (n/inf. + ing) ...? ماذا عن ...؟
- What about **going** to the cinema on Saturday?
- We can + inf. يمكننا ...
- We can **see** that film at 2 o'clock.

وعند السؤال عن رأي الشخص في الاقتراح نقول:

- What do you think? ما رأيك؟
- Sure. Sounds good. وعند الموافقة نقول:
بالتأكيد، هذا يبدو جيدا.
- Maybe (going shopping) isn't the best thing for us to do. أما عند الرفض فنقول:
ربما (الذهاب للتسوق) ليس أفضل شيء نفعله.
- Sorry, I can't. عذرا، لا أستطيع.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

- Lara wants to go to the cinema with her friend Yasmine.
- Yasmine:** I am not busy today. Do you want to do something?
- Lara:** Yes, of course. (1)..... about going to the cinema?
- Yasmine:** Maybe going to the cinema isn't the best thing for us to do. Let's go to the mall.
- Lara:** Sure. (2)..... good. What can we do there?
- Yasmine:** We can (3)..... shopping. I want to buy a new dress.
- Lara:** Great! (4)..... are we going to meet?
- Yasmine:** We are going to meet at the entrance of the mall.
- Lara:** Great! See you then.



2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about types of friends.

كيفية الكتابة عن أنواع الأصدقاء.

(1) What is a real friend?

(2) How does a real friend make you feel?

(3) Why is a real friend considered a treasure كنزًا؟ يعتبر كنزًا؟

A real friend vs. a fake friend

(4) What is a fake friend?

(5) How do fake friends act?

(6) Why is it important to know the difference?

Example

"Types of friends"

A real friend is someone who is always there for you. They listen to you, help you, and make you feel good about yourself. They make you feel included. When it's hard, they always stand beside you. A fake friend, on the other hand, is someone who only cares about themselves. They are only interested in you when they like. They will talk about you behind your back and try to make you feel bad about yourself. It's important to be able to tell the difference between a real friend and a fake friend. A real friend is a treasure, and you must keep them.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"Your best friend"



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- How does Maria feel about her next test?
a) Confident. b) Nervous. c) Excited. d) Angry.
- What is Maria worried about?
a) Missing the test. b) Doing badly.
c) Forgetting her notes. d) Not studying enough.
- Where did Maria decide to go to relax?
a) The park. b) The beach. c) The mall. d) The cinema.

(B) Listen and complete:

- Maria hopes that going out will help her feel
- Maria's is to enjoy the day and forget about her worries.
- Maria decided to go out on to have some fun.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed felt when he didn't get the job.
a) funny b) pleased c) upset d) excited
- Nada will a presentation in class tomorrow.
a) go b) give c) play d) keep

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

join – left out – included – have – text

I'm excited about my future plans! I'm going to (1) a new club with my best friend. We're going to (2) fun and take photos. We're going to (3) each other every day. I can't wait for the new school year to start and walk through the entrance of the school to meet my friends who always make me feel (4)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Shaza to join us for the trip because she's busy.
a) will b) won't c) is going d) isn't going
- Don't worry, mum. I promise I good care of the plants.
a) 'll take b) 'm taking
c) going to take d) 'm going to take

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Who (they will) invite to the wedding?
2. We're sure that the next season (be) a great one for our team.
3. They (going/buy) a house, so they won't need your flat.
4. Suzy (not/clean) the house today. She is going to hang out with her friends.

6 Complete the following dialog:

Anas and Yassin are planning to go to the park.

Anas : Do you want to do something this weekend?

Yassin : Sure, Anas. What do you suggest?

Anas : I (1)..... going to the park.

Yassin : That sounds great! What time should we go?

Anas : (2)..... about 10 a.m.?

Yassin : OK. 10 a.m. is good for me. What else could we do?

Anas : We could (3)..... a picnic there.

Yassin : Great idea! (4)..... should I bring?

Anas : You should bring some drinks with you.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your future plan for next weekend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you think (will/they) like the presents we got for them?
2. I don't think I (won't) come tomorrow.
3. A: We don't have sugar. B: I know. I (buy) some.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	link (n)	رابط
appointment (n)	موعد	medicine (n)	دواء / طب
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	offer (ed) (v)	يعرض
college student (n)	طالب جامعي	promote (d) (v)	يروج
crowdfunding (n)	تمويل جماعي	solution (n)	حل
effort (n)	مجهود	spread (v)	ينتشر / ينشر / يبيع
good cause (n)	قضية جيدة / سبب وجيه	support (ed) (v)	يساند / يدعم
hashtag (n)	الهاشتاج	tool (n)	أداة
helping hand (n)	يد العون	worth (adj)	مستحق

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

amount (n)	كمية	local park (n)	حديقة محلية
dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان	perfect (adj)	تام / مثالي
practice (n)	تدريب	plant (ed) (v)	يزرع
greener (adj)	أكثر خضرة	project (n)	مشروع
list (n)	قائمة	rush (v) (ed)	يندفع / يتعجل
local business (n)	عمل تجاري محلي	store (n)	متجر

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: **support – offer – plant – efforts**

- Doctors make great to help sick people get better.
- We should each other during difficult times.
- It's important to more trees to protect the environment.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> hard work	يؤدي عملاً شاقاً	help	> a good cause	مساعدة قضية جيدة
deserve	> a treat	يستحق مكافأة	get	> ready	يستعد
	a page	ينشئ صفحة	get/have	> a haircut	يقص شعره
make	> a difference	يحدث اختلافاً	post	> a message	ينشر رسالة
	a promise	يعد/يقطع وعداً	raise	> money	يجمع مالاً
	sure	يتأكد	spread	> the word	ينشر الخبر

Prepositions

حروف الجر

bring together	يجمع معاً	on planting day	في يوم الزراعة
from all over	من جميع أنحاء	thank for	يشكر على
in/for a good cause	من أجل قضية جيدة	look forward to	يتطلع إلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
give يعطي	gave	given	spread ينتشر	spread	spread
grow ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown			

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
increase	يزيد	reduce/decrease	يقلل
large	كبير	small/tiny	صغير
glad/happy	سعيد	sad	حزين

Check Point

Choose and complete: **grow – for – of – large**

- The teacher thanks the students their hard work.
- Omar has a small flat, but he dreams of owning a house.
- Plants need water and sunlight to

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



مستحق

1 "be" + worth + (inf. + ing)

- You mean planting trees **is worth doing**.

2 enough + noun + (to + inf.)

- The city doesn't have **enough** money **to plant** more.

3 look forward to + noun/(inf + ing)

- I'm looking forward to **visiting** my grandma.

يتطلع إلى

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Harry Potter series is worth
a) read b) to read c) reading d) to reading
- My little sister is looking forward to pizza.
a) eat b) eating c) eats d) ate

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

in/for a good cause من أجل قضية جيدة	it is worth doing or giving to because it will help other people, for example by raising money for charity	(1) كمية
crowdfunding تمويل جماعي	to get a large number of people to give a small amount of money each to make a big amount ⁽¹⁾ , often for a good cause ⁽²⁾	(2) قضية/سبب
raise ينمو/ يجمع	to increase ⁽³⁾ or get bigger	(3) يزيد
offer يعرض	to make a promise and say you will do something	
spread the word ينشر الخبر	to reach ⁽⁴⁾ more places or people	(4) يصل إلى
support يدعم	to provide money and help for someone to pay for the things they need	
make a difference يحدث اختلافًا	to have an important effect on something or someone	

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
large (adj)	كبير	huge	ضخم
reach (v)	يصل إلى	get to	يصل إلى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think of social media?

 Read and listen to the story.

Lesson 3: For a good cause

SB page 32

Using social media for a good cause

Youssef is a **college**⁽¹⁾ student who loves planting trees. One day, he hears that a park near his house needs more trees. The city doesn't have enough money to plant more, and Youssef wants to help. He decides to use social media to **spread**⁽²⁾ the word.

Youssef posts a message on social media. He writes, "Let's make our city greener! The local park needs trees. Join me to **raise**⁽³⁾ money and help to plant them!" Youssef includes a link to a **crowdfunding**⁽⁴⁾ page he made for the project.

His friends see the post and share it with their friends too. Soon, people from all over the city are talking about it. Many people give money, and others offer to help plant the trees. Even a local business decides to **support**⁽⁵⁾ Youssef's project and give some money.

After a month, Youssef's project raises enough money to buy many trees. On planting day, Youssef and a large group of people go to the park to plant the new trees.

When the work is done, the park looks beautiful, with lots of young trees ready to grow. The city thanks Youssef for his hard work, and he feels proud because he made a difference. He learns that social media is a great tool to bring people together for a good cause. Youssef realizes that he can use it to help make the world a greener place.



(1) كلية

(2) ينشر

(3) يجمع

(4) تمويل جماعي

(5) يدعم

Comprehension Skills

"Give a title" «وضع عنوان»

When you give a title to something like a book, article, or story, you usually capitalize the important words. But, you don't need to capitalize small words like "the", "a" or "of" unless they are the first words of the title.

عندما تقوم بإعطاء عنوان لشيء مثل كتاب أو مقال أو قصة، عادة ما تكون الكلمات الرئيسية بحروف كبيرة، ولكن لا نضع للكلمات الصغيرة مثل **the/a/of** حروفاً كبيرة إلا إذا كانت هي الكلمات الأولى في العنوان.

For example:

- Give a title to the previous passage.

"Using Social Media for a Greener Community".



Pre-listening question:

- What are you going to do next Friday?



Listen to the dialog. Put the pictures in the correct order.

SB page 34



Ali Hi, Grandma! Are you going to your doctor's appointment⁽¹⁾ next week?

(1) موعد

(2) حل

Grandma Yes, I am, but I'm not sure how I'll get there. I don't drive anymore, so I need to find a solution⁽²⁾.

(3) صيدلية

(4) يستحق مكافأة

(5) يندفع/يتعجل

(6) يستعد

Ali Don't worry, Grandma. I'm coming with you, we can take the bus! I'm talking to mom later about leaving basketball practice early that day so I can help you.

(7) يتأكد

(8) مغامرة

Grandma That's so sweet of you! I'm not just going to the doctor, though. I'm stopping by the pharmacy⁽³⁾ for my new medicine, too. Are you okay with that?

Ali Of course! I'll go everywhere you need to. After the doctor, we're going to the pharmacy, and we're stopping for ice cream after that. I think we both deserve a treat⁽⁴⁾!

Grandma Ice cream sounds wonderful! I'm looking forward to it. I'm bringing my list with questions for the doctor, too. It's so easy to forget things when I'm there.

Ali Good idea, Grandma! And I'll remind you of anything you forget. We won't miss a thing. What time is your appointment?

Grandma It's at 2:30 in the afternoon, so I'm planning to be ready around 2:00. Are you coming over here first, or are we meeting there?

Ali I'm coming to your house around 1:45. We'll leave a bit early so we don't rush⁽⁵⁾. I'll help you get ready⁽⁶⁾ and make sure⁽⁷⁾ we're on time.

Grandma That's a perfect plan. I'm so glad you're coming with me. And after the pharmacy, I'm hoping to stop at the little store for some fruit. Would that be okay?

Ali Sure, we'll stop anywhere you need. I'm helping with your bags, too, so you don't have to carry anything heavy.

Grandma You're being so helpful, thank you! It makes everything easier to plan.

Ali No problem, Grandma. I like spending time with you. We'll have a nice little adventure⁽⁸⁾ together!

Grandma I agree! We're going to have a lovely day.

Post-listening question:

- What time do Ali and his grandma go to their appointment?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We played in the We had lots of fun there.
a) mall b) bookshop c) local park d) local library
2. My cousins need a large of water to plant all these trees.
a) amount b) change c) number d) effort
3. We need money, so we used to complete the project.
a) hashtag b) housework c) crowdfunding d) work
4. They raised money for a/an
a) effort b) good cause c) link d) hashtag
5. I have an important with my manager. We're meeting at 5 p.m tomorrow.
a) treat b) store c) medicine d) appointment
6. Khaled thanked his neighbor his help.
a) with b) to c) for d) on
7. My sister had to hard work to finish the project on time.
a) get b) make c) do d) give
8. Razan the event on social media to reach more people.
a) offered b) promoted c) loved d) included
9. The news quickly across the town.
a) spread b) supported c) planted d) laughed
10. I will sure the door is locked before we leave.
a) give b) do c) get d) make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

offer – cause – spread – raise – project

Noura loves visiting the beach near her home but feels sad seeing it covered in trash. She uses social media to (1).....the word, "Let's clean our beach! Join me to (2)..... money and volunteer!" Her friends share the message, and soon many people donate or (3)..... help. On cleanup day, Noura and a group of volunteers bring back the beach's beauty. Noura feels proud and realizes social media can help a good (4).....

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our teacher organized a group to more trees.
a) appear b) plant c) offer d) join
2. My older brother is a student. He studies engineering.
a) nursery b) primary c) college d) prep
3. stories help you learn new things about the world.
a) Adventure b) First c) Medicine d) Question
4. Many local gave money to the charity to help the poor.
a) businesses b) tasks c) tools d) amounts
5. Join me to money and help poor people in our community.
a) change b) buy c) grow d) raise
6. People all over the city are talking about our project.
a) from b) at c) about d) in
7. My parents are the people who me to achieve my goals.
a) offer b) support c) spread d) change
8. Click on this to watch the video.
a) amount b) housework c) link d) hashtag
9. This helps poor people and orphan أيتام girls.
a) link b) charity c) effort d) tool
10. A is a place where you can buy medicine.
a) cinema b) pharmacy c) supermarket d) bakery

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

made – message – had – spread – proud

Last weekend, I decided to help raise money for a good cause. I created a page online to (1) the word and made a list of ways people could help. I posted a (2) on social media, encouraging friends to join. Soon, many people shared the post and offered help. After doing hard work, I felt (3) Together, we (4) a real difference and helped support the cause.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

The present continuous for future arrangements

المضارع المستمر مع الترتيبات المستقبلية

e.g. • I **am meeting** my friends at 8 tomorrow.

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the present continuous to describe actions that are happening now.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

e.g. • My grandfather **is using** his laptop **now**.

2. We use the present continuous to talk about arrangements in the future, especially when we already know the time and place.

- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات في المستقبل (خاصة مع ذكر الوقت والمكان)

e.g. • I'm **visiting** my parents this weekend.

• He's **starting** his new job on Monday.

• They're **moving** to their new flat next Friday.

كيف تعرف أن الحدث مرتب له مسبقاً؟

- يذكر الترتيب الذي تم.

e.g. • Omar and I **are travelling** next week. (We have got the tickets.)

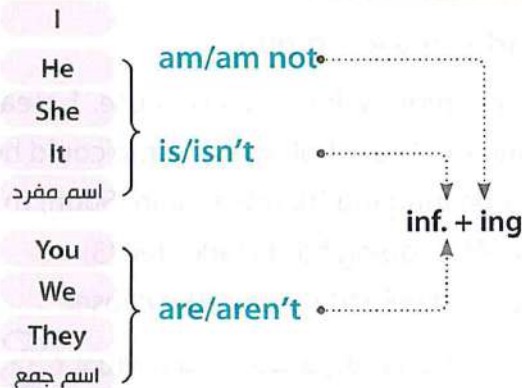
- يذكر كلمة دالة على الترتيب.

e.g. • Judy and Hadeer **are having** a party next Friday. (It's arranged.)

- يحدد موعد أو مكان الحدث.

e.g. • I **am meeting** my cousin at seven at the new restaurant.

Form التكوين



e.g. • I **am playing** football.

• I **am not playing** chess.

e.g. • He **is reading** a book.

• He **is not (isn't)** watching TV.

e.g. • They **are swimming**.

• They **are not (aren't)** diving.



- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing): (take - taking) - (come - coming)
- فى بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، غالباً ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing): (put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ونضيف (y) قبل إضافة الـ (ing): (die - dying) - (lie - lying)

Question السؤال

1 Yes/ No questions: السؤال بـ «هل»

Am	I	
Is	he, she, it, اسم مفرد	inf. + ing ...?
Are	we, they, you, اسم جمع	

e.g. A: Are you studying French?

B: Yes, I am/we are.

B: No, I am not/we aren't.

e.g. A: Is Sara visiting the doctor tomorrow?

B: Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.

2 Wh- questions: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q- Word
أداة الاستفهام

am	I	
is	he, she, it, اسم مفرد	inf. + ing ...?
are	we, they, you, اسم جمع	

e.g. A: What are you doing?

B: I'm helping my father.

e.g. A: When is Kareem traveling to Hurghada?

B: He is traveling to Hurghada next Friday.



Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Gamal (arrive) at noon tomorrow.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is arriving) لأنه مستقبل مرتب له (تم ذكر الوقت)، وهنا نستخدم المضارع المستمر.

2 They (go) to Alexandria next holiday. They've arranged everything.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are going) لوجود arranged التى تعنى أن كل شيء مرتب له مسبقاً.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I can't meet you as I my friend in the hospital.
a) visited b) going to visit c) am visiting d) visit
2. We tomorrow morning as arranged.
a) will meet b) met c) going to meet d) are meeting
3. A: your uncle's farm tomorrow? B: Yes, we've prepared everything.
a) Are you visiting b) Did you visit
c) Do you visit d) You're visiting
4. Next Friday, I a haircut at 2 o'clock.
a) got b) am getting c) going to get d) get
5. Sara to Paris at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
a) flew b) has flown c) is flying d) fly
6. A: What have you arranged to do tomorrow?
B: I a birthday party tomorrow.
a) had to give b) going to give c) will give d) am giving
7. Look! Fathi his room.
a) paints b) is painting c) will be painted d) was painting
8. I don't think Yasser is free; he for the trip now.
a) was preparing b) prepared c) is preparing d) preparing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I won't go to the club because I (get) ready for the exam.
2. My uncle is (travel) to Aswan during the midyear holiday.
3. Who (you meeting) this evening?
4. Nader (dig) a hole in the garden now.
5. I got everything ready; I (have) a party tonight.
6. I (visit) my grandma this afternoon.
7. They (stay) at home tonight. They have bought a lot of snacks.
8. Omar (not/ take) an English test tomorrow.
9. I'm (talk) to Mom tonight about leaving basketball practice early.
10. Hana (start) a new course next month.

D Skills



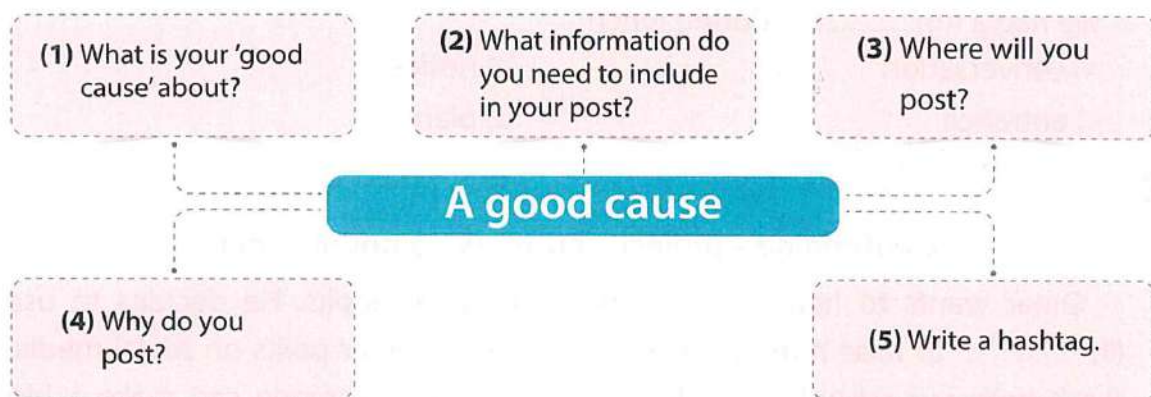
Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



Writing a short social media post to promote your good cause.

كتابة منشور قصير على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي للترويج لقضيتك النبيلة.



Example

"Helping our planet"

Hi, everyone! Let's come together to make our world greener. Our good cause is about planting trees, reducing waste, and protecting the environment. Here are some ways we can follow. Plant a tree and join our tree-planting events. Reduce waste and start recycling and reusing old things instead of throwing them away. Support local businesses. Stay with us for our next events and follow the tips on how to live a greener life! Together, we can make a difference. #GoGreen #SaveThePlanet

Check Point

Write a social media post on "Saving water".

d) plan

d) activities

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

4. What does the underlined word "gifts" mean?

5. How can we help our schools be greener?

6. What other ways do you think people can do to promote this project?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We are shopping after lunch tomorrow.

a) going to

b) go

c) went

d) going

2. I the doctor at 5 p.m. next Friday.

a) see

b) going to see

c) will see

d) am seeing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A: When is Laila (meet) Soha? B: At 5 tomorrow.

2. The school (organize) a trip next week. Everything is arranged.

3. We (not/ have) a party on Saturday. We aren't prepared.

4. Omar and Alia (visit) their grandparents this weekend.

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A project to help make the world a greener place"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Hatim (travel) to London as planned.

2. I hope (join) the first team next year.

3. Be careful, the young man (drive) his car carelessly!

A Vocabulary

SB pages 36-39

Key Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر (طباعة)
background (n)	خلفية	raft (n)	طوافة/قارب
biography (n)	سيرة شخصية	risk (ed) (v)	يعرض للخطر
bravery (n)	الشجاعة	riverboat pilot (n)	قبطان قارب نهري
escaped (adj)	هارب	safety (n)	أمان
friendship (n)	الصداقة	servant (n)	خادم
inventor (n)	مخترع	summary (n)	ملخص
journalist (n)	صحفي	tips (n)	نصائح
material (n)	مادة خام	trick (ed) (v)	يخدع
novel (n)	رواية	updates (n)	مستجدات
original (adj)	أصلي	writing career (n)	مهنة الكتابة
peace (n)	السلام		

المفردات الرئيسية

Adjectives of characters

adventurous	مغامر	friendly	ودود
brave	شجاع	funny	مضحك
clever	ماهر/ذكي	kind	عطوف/طيب
curious	فضول	shy	خجول

صفات الشخصية

Additional Vocabulary

beauty (n)	جمال	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	living conditions (n)	ظروف المعيشة
behavior (n)	سلوك	looks (n)	المظهر
close (adj)	مقرب	moment (n)	لحظة
die (d) (v)	يموت	personality (n)	شخصية
divide (d) (v)	يقسم	shared (adj)	مشترك
exciting (adj)	مثير	sign (n)	علامة/إشارة
experience (n)	تجربة/خبرة	simple (adj)	بسيط

المفردات الإضافية

Choose and complete: **friendship – personality – peace – published**

- 1 Jasmine her first novel last year.
- 2 Good makes life happier and more enjoyable.
- 3 Sara has a nice and everyone likes her.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

as time goes by	مع مرور الوقت	give	>	the material for	يزود بالمواد اللازمة لـ	
earn	> money	يربح مالاً		a sense of	يعطى إحساساً بـ	
face	> challenges	يواجه تحديات	make	>	a decision	يتخذ قراراً
follow	> his heart	يتبع قلبه	plan	>	a visit	يخطط لزيارة
risk	> his safety	يعرض أمانه للخطر	stay	>	connected	يبقى متواصلاً
keep	> in touch with	يبقى على تواصل مع	create	>	"memory" book	ينشئ كتاب ذكريات
show	> interest	يظهر الاهتمام	talk	>	face-to-face	تحدث وجهاً لوجه
			share	>	laughter	يتشارك الضحك

Prepositions

حروف الجر

along the way	على طول الطريق	move away	ينتقل بعيداً
at the age of	في سن/ في عمر	on a raft	على طوافة
at the start	في البداية	through a journey	من خلال رحلة
in the end	في النهاية	travel down the river	يسافر عبر النهر
search for	يبحث عن		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
become	يصبح	became	become	left	left
know	يعرف	knew	known	told	told
			leave	يترك/يفادر	
			tell	يخبر	

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different	مختلف	same/similar	مشابه
stronger	أقوى	weaker	أضعف

Choose and complete: **at – down – face – followed – tell**

- 1 When you a challenge, it is important to stay calm.
- 2 My uncle got married the age of twenty-two.
- 3 Aunt Laila loves to stories.
- 4 They spent the afternoon traveling the river by boat.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصرفات الأفعال.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 as

- My father works **as** a doctor.
- Where did he live **as** a child?

2 was/were + born

- My parents **were born** in a village.
- I **was born** in 1998.

3 during + noun

- **During the journey**, they share food, stories, and laughter.

4 Using adjectives to describe characters

استخدام الصفات لوصف الشخصيات

- Use simple adjectives like **brave, kind, funny, or curious** to show what a **character** is like.
- استخدم صفات بسيطة مثل شجاع، أو لطيف، أو مضحك، أو فضولي لإظهار شخصية ما.
- Adjectives help readers understand **feelings and actions**.
- تساعد الصفات القارئ على فهم المشاعر والأفعال.
- Describe **looks** (like **tall** or **young**) and **personality** (like **friendly** or **shy**) to give more information about how a character looks or behaves!
- وصف المظهر (مثل طويل أو شاب) والشخصية (مثل ودود أو خجول) لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الشخصية (كيف تبدو وكيف تتصرف)!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My grandpa in a small village.
a) were born b) was born c) born d) was bearing
- 2 a child, she dreamed of becoming a writer.
a) While b) Since c) As d) Because
- 3 the summer, we often go to the beach.
a) As b) When c) While d) During

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة
والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

adventurous	مغامر	happy to try new and exciting things
background	خلفية	your family, experiences ⁽¹⁾ , living conditions ⁽²⁾ , etc.
share	يشارك	to divide ⁽³⁾ something or do it at the same time
raft	طوافة / قارب	a flat kind of boat that floats on water
bring closer	يقرب من بعض	when a situation helps you get to know someone better
(be) at peace	يكون في سلام	feel relaxed

(1) تجارب

(2) ظروف

(3) يقسم

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
behave (v)	يتصرف	act	يتصرف

Suffix

اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
clever (adj)	ذكى	-ly		تحويل الصفة إلى حال		cleverly (adv)	بذكاء

B Reading & Listening Skills


What is a biography?

Lesson 5: Literature

A biography is the story of a person's life written by someone else. It includes important details about the person's experiences, achievements, and challenges. السيرة الذاتية هي قصة حياة شخص ما يكتبها شخص آخر. تتضمن تفاصيل مهمة عن تجارب هذا الشخص وإنجازاته وتحدياته.

Pre-reading question:

- How do life experiences affect people's lives?

 Read the short biography about Mark Twain.

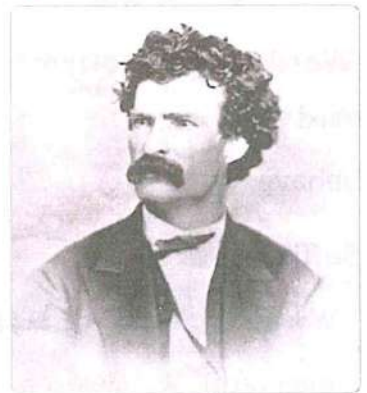
SB page 36

Mark Twain (1835 – 1910)

Mark Twain was born Samuel Clemens in Missouri, in the USA. When he was four, his family moved to Hannibal on the Mississippi River. It was an exciting place to live, and it gave Twain the **material**⁽¹⁾ for his books in later years.

After his father died, Twain left school at the age of 12 to work and earn money. He had many different jobs before he started his **writing career**⁽²⁾. He was a **riverboat pilot**⁽³⁾ on the great Mississippi River, a **journalist**⁽⁴⁾, a teacher and an **inventor**⁽⁵⁾. When he worked as a journalist in Virginia, he changed his name to Mark Twain.

He **published**⁽⁶⁾ his first **novel**⁽⁷⁾, *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* in 1876 and *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* soon after that.



- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| (1) مادة | (2) مهنة الكتابة |
| (3) قبطان قارب نهري | (4) صحفي |
| (5) مخترع | (6) ينشر |
| (7) رواية | |

Post-reading questions:

1 What was Mark Twain's original name?

.....

2 Where did he live as a child?


.....

3 What was his job when he changed his name?

.....

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of stories do you like reading?

 **Read and listen to the summary and check your ideas for Exercise 2.**

Lesson 5: Literature

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn

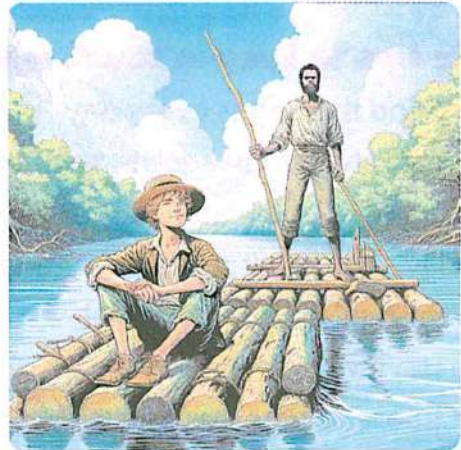
SB page 36

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn tells the story of a young boy, Huck, and his journey down the Mississippi River. Huck is clever and **adventurous**⁽¹⁾. He decides to leave home and travel down the river. Along the way he meets Jim, an escaped **servant**⁽²⁾. The two become close friends. They travel together on a small **raft**⁽³⁾ down the river. During the journey they share food, stories, and **laughter**⁽⁴⁾.

Huck and Jim's friendship grows stronger as they face many **challenges**⁽⁵⁾. They meet different people, some friendly and some not. They look to each other for help and support. Huck sees Jim as a true friend and someone he can understand. The two spend time fishing, exploring, and enjoying the beauty of nature. This shared experience brings them closer together which gives Huck a **sense**⁽⁶⁾ of **peace**⁽⁷⁾ he never felt before.

Huck often has to make difficult decisions and follow his heart. One day they meet a group of men searching for escaped servants. To protect Jim, Huck cleverly tricks the men, saying that there is a sick family on their raft and they should not come near. This moment shows Huck's bravery and his strong friendship with Jim, as he risks his own safety to help his friend.

Through this journey, Huck learns important lessons about friendship. At the start he often **behaved**⁽⁸⁾ badly, but as time goes by, he becomes a much better person. His friendship with Jim is at the heart of the story. It shows how two people from very different **backgrounds**⁽⁹⁾ can become good friends.



(1) مغامر

(2) خادم

(3) طوافة

(4) الضحك

(5) تحديات

(6) احساس

(7) السلام

(8) يتصرف

(9) خلفية

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Can you give another title to the passage?.....
- 2 How is the journey good for Huck?.....
- 3 What is the most important message of the story?.....

Pre-reading question:

- How will you feel if your friends move away?

 **Read the tips. Match the headings from the box with the tips.**

SB page 38

Six tips to keep in touch with a friend who moved away:

- **Send messages every day**

Write short messages to each other. It can be a simple "Hi, how are you?" or "Guess what I did today!" You don't need to write long messages; even small updates are nice!

- **Have video calls**

Choose a time each week or month to talk online. You can talk face-to-face and feel like you're spending time together.



- **Share photos**

Take pictures of things you see, like funny signs, your lunch, or places you go. Sharing pictures is a fun way to show what's going on in your life.

- **Play online games together**

Find games you both like and play together online. This way, you can laugh and have fun, even if you're not in the same place.

- **Try to visit**

Ask your parents if you can plan a visit. It can be something to look forward to together!

- **Show interest in your friend's new life**

Ask questions like "What's your new school like?" or "Have you made any new friends?" It helps you stay connected to their world.

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of these tips?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. I send my friend regular about my day.
a) decisions b) updates c) looks d) behaviors
2. It's important to in touch with family members.
a) share b) send c) talk d) keep
3. It's nice to show in what your friends are doing.
a) experience b) message c) updates d) interest
4. Thomas Edison was a famous who made the light bulb.
a) servant b) journalist c) inventor d) explorer
5. take readers to new places and ideas.
a) Novels b) Backgrounds
c) Living conditions d) Materials
6. Peter worked as a/an on the river.
a) riverboat pilot b) driver c) journalist d) inventor
7. Basmala feels when she meets new people.
a) adventurous b) kind c) brave d) shy
8. Exercising regularly helps you stronger.
a) leave b) give c) grow d) tell
9. I'm to know what's inside the box.
a) shy b) funny c) curious d) kind
10. I read the of Mohamed Salah. I knew a lot about his life and achievements.
a) goal b) match c) film d) biography

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

safety – adventure – laughter – friendship – challenges

Tom and Lily decided to travel through the mountains on a hiking trip. They met while studying at university and quickly became close friends. During their journey, they faced (1) like bad weather. They shared food, stories, and (2), which made their friendship stronger. As they walked through the mountains, they realized how important their (3) was. Their (4) taught them about trust, support, and the value of listening to each other.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The actor's helped him get the role in the movie.
a) summary b) material c) background d) condition
2. Hana started her writing at an early age.
a) discovery b) career c) nature d) condition
3. We traveled together on a small down the river.
a) plane b) bike c) race d) raft
4. We use social media to stay with our friends.
a) connected b) shy c) escaped d) adventurous
5. I want to a visit to my grandparents this weekend.
a) take b) connect c) sign d) plan
6. My teacher gave me helpful on how to prepare for the exam.
a) decisions b) behaviors c) updates d) tips
7. I like to visit parks to enjoy the of nature.
a) biography b) beauty c) background d) invention
8. Children shouldn't badly. They should always be polite.
a) behave b) believe c) explore d) divide
9. The wrote an article for the newspaper.
a) inventor b) baby c) journalist d) pilot
10. We need in our hearts to feel calm.
a) worries b) peace c) adventure d) material

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

journey – Along – connected – stories – escaped

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn tells the story of Huck, a young boy, and Jim, an (1)..... servant, and their journey down the Mississippi River. (2)..... the way, they face challenges and grow closer, sharing (3)..... and supporting each other. Huck learns the importance of friendship, freedom, and listening to others. Over time, he changes for the better, realizing that their (4)..... is not just about traveling, but about the lessons they learn together.

حلل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Skills



Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write a story about a true friend.

كيفية كتابة قصة عن صديقك الحقيقي.



• Example

"A short story about a true friend"

Emily was a true friend. She was kind, understanding, and always there to listen. One day, her best friend, Sarah, was feeling very sad. Sarah had failed a test and was worried about her future. Emily listened carefully to Sarah's worries and said kind, helpful words. She helped Sarah study for the next test and reminded her that everyone makes mistakes. With Emily's support, Sarah could face her fears and start to work again. This story teaches us the importance of true friendship and how a kind word or a helping hand can make a big difference.

• Example

How to write short notes about keeping in touch with friends.

كيفية كتابة ملاحظات عن التواصل مع الأصدقاء.

How to Stay in Touch with a Friend Who Moved Away

- Send short daily messages (e.g., "Hi, how are you?" or quick updates).
- Schedule regular video calls for face-to-face connection.
- Share photos of interesting things (e.g., lunch, places you visit).
- Play online games together for fun.
- Plan a visit, if possible, to spend time in person.
- Show interest in their new life (ask about school, friends, etc.).
- Maintain a strong friendship despite the distance.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The living in the village are very simple.
a) suggestions b) conditions c) materials d) problems
- My family often food and stories at dinner.
a) face b) give c) make d) share

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

as – novel – behaved – career – published

J.K. Rowling was born in the UK. She grew up in a small town and loved reading and writing. After school, she had many different jobs before starting her writing (1)..... . She worked (2)..... a teacher and a researcher. Her first (3)....., Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone, was (4)..... in 1997. Rowling's books became worldwide successes.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I (meet) Karim outside the movie theater in 5 minutes.
- We (going) visit the zoo tomorrow.
- (You will) finish your homework tonight?
- Mayar is going (bake) cookies for the party.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Alaa and Huda plan to go to the local park this evening.

Alaa : Hi Huda, how are you?

Huda : I'm (1)....., thanks! How about you?

Alaa : I'm great. (2)..... you have any plans for this evening?

Huda : No, I don't. Do you have any ideas?

Alaa : (3)..... about going to the park?

Huda : Sounds good. What time should we go?

Alaa : (4)..... meet at 6 pm.

Huda : OK, 6 pm is perfect.



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What (you/study) when you finish secondary school?
- Your room is messy. When (you will) tidy it?
- I promise (buy) you a present when you pass the final exam.

A

Listening

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.



1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is Dina's best friend like?

a) Quiet and shy.	b) Kind and funny.
c) Smart and serious.	d) Calm and lazy.
2. What do Dina and Ghada do together?

a) Play games.	b) Go shopping.
c) Watch TV.	d) a and b.
3. How does Dina feel about her friend?

a) Lucky.	b) Happy.
c) Sad.	d) Bored.

(B) Listen and complete:

4. Ghada is an person.
5. Ghada's jokes always make Dina
6. Ghada is always there to Dina and others with a big smile.

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Good in school helps everyone learn better.

a) behavior	b) biography
c) summary	d) looks
2. Nada was because she got a good grade.

a) relaxing	b) angry
c) pleased	d) worried

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

interest – regular – possible – online – tips

To keep in touch with a friend who moved away, you can send messages every day, like "How are you?" or "What's new?" Have (1)..... video calls to talk face-to-face. Share photos of your life and play (2)..... games together. If (3)....., try to visit each other. Finally, show (4)..... in their new life by asking about their school or friends.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Making good friends is like planting a garden. You need to follow it with care and attention. Start by being kind and friendly. Smile, say hello, and listen to others. Show interest in their lives by asking questions and sharing your own experiences.

Find shared experiences and hobbies. Whether it's playing sports, reading books, or watching movies, shared activities can make your friendship grow stronger. Remember, good friends are there for you in good and bad times. Be helpful and support your friends in return.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To make friends, you should always
a) care b) shout c) ignore d) frown
2. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to
a) friends b) questions
c) experiences d) good times

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is this text about?
.....

4. What does the underlined word "helpful" mean?
.....

5. What shared hobbies can help you make friends?
.....

6. What do you think are the most important qualities in a good friend?
.....



Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I think our team the next match.
a) will win b) going to win
c) is winning d) is going to win
2. My parents next week. They have bought the tickets.
a) will travel b) are going to travel c) are travelling d) travel

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I have a holiday tomorrow. I'm going (visit) my grandma.
2. Samar (be) sixteen next Thursday.
3. Are your cousins going to (helping) you with the school project?
4. Sara is (have) a party at the weekend. She has invited some of her friends.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Maria wants to go out, but Rosa is going to work on a project.

Maria : What are you going to do this evening?

Rosa : I'm (1)..... to work on a project.

Maria : Shall we go out?

Rosa : I am (2)..... today. I have to finish my work.

Maria : (3)..... do you think you'll be free?

Rosa : Maybe tomorrow evening?

Maria : Sorry. I'm seeing my dentist tomorrow. (4).....
Thursday OK?

Rosa : Yes, Thursday works for me.

8 Write a paragraph of Eighty (80) words on:

"Friendship"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Sara : What are you going to do this weekend?

Sama : I (1)..... to the park.

a) go

b) went

c) going

d) am going to go

Sara : Sounds good. Can I come with you?

Sama : Yes, (2).....! What time should we meet?

a) sure

b) sorry

c) free

d) course

Sara : (3)..... about 10 am on Saturday?

a) Let's

b) Where

c) How

d) When

Sama : 10 a.m. is OK. (4)..... should we meet?

a) Who

b) Where

c) When

d) What

Sara : Let's meet at the main gate of the park.

Sama : Perfect! I'll see you there.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. What (buy) when you go to the new mall?

a) will you buy

b) did you buy

c) you will buy

d) you are going to buy

2. Children (have) a maths test next Sunday.

a) are having

b) going to have

c) will have

d) are going to

3. What are you going (do) next weekend?

a) doing

b) to do

c) to doing

d) did

4. I don't think he (find) a job easily.

a) to find

b) finding

c) going to find

d) will find

5. My father (buy) a new house. He is talking with mum about that.

a) is going to buy

b) won't buy

c) should buy

d) bought

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)



Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What are your favorite free time activities?

Read the blog posts.

SB page 40



- (A) Last month, I joined a weekend volunteer program to clean up our local beach. Every Friday and Saturday, we spent a few hours picking up trash. We started early each morning. The team leaders gave us gloves, trash bags, and special grabbers to pick up the trash. Some volunteers were students like me, and others were families or local people. Each weekend, we cleaned the beach and along the shore. I couldn't believe how much trash we found. There were bottles, cans, old shoes, and lots of plastic! I felt very proud to be part of the volunteer team, and pleased that we were helping to keep our beach clean.



Nadia, Egypt

- (B) Last summer, a group of students from my class volunteered at a community garden. We volunteered three days a week for a month. We looked after the vegetables and fruit trees, and we tidied the garden to keep the plants healthy. It was a hot summer so we watered the garden to keep the soil wet. When the vegetables were ready to pick, we put them in boxes and took them to families and old people in the community. I really enjoyed helping people in this way. I learned a lot about gardening and how to grow vegetables without using harmful products. I can't wait to visit the garden again next year.



Ben, United States

- (C) Last week, I volunteered at a day care center for children where my aunt Mary works. I love children so I was excited. I arrived early in the morning and met the people who work there. First, I helped set up toys and games to play with the children. We built towers with bricks and we played in the toy kitchen. Then, we sang some songs and drew colorful pictures. At the end of the day, I read the children a story which they loved. Then, I helped clean up the playroom and I said goodbye. I was very tired, but I felt happy. I learned a lot about child care and I'm going to volunteer there again!



Maggie, UK



Pre-listening question: - What do you do on the weekend?

Listen to the dialog between Sherif and Magdy about a trip to Alexandria.

SB page 41

Sherif Hi, Magdy! Guess what? This weekend, my family and I are going to Alexandria!

Magdy Oh, that's great, Sherif! What are you going to do there?

Sherif We're visiting the famous library. You know, the **Bibliotheca Alexandrina**⁽¹⁾. I think we're going to spend a whole day there. My dad says we can see some ancient **manuscripts**⁽²⁾ and learn about Egypt's history.

Magdy That sounds amazing! I've always wanted to go there. Where are you staying?

Sherif We're staying in a small hotel near the Corniche which is near the sea. Dad says we'll have a great view of the sea from the hotel. I'm so excited.

Magdy That's perfect! How are you getting there?

Sherif We're driving. Uncle Youssef is coming with us, so we'll go in his car. It's bigger than ours and more comfortable.

Magdy Nice! How long does it take to get to Alexandria from here?

Sherif About three hours so we're leaving early on Saturday morning.

Magdy Are you planning to visit other places, too?

Sherif Yes! My mom wants to see the **Citadel of Qaitbay**⁽³⁾. It's an old **fort**⁽⁴⁾ by the sea which they built on the ruins of the ancient **Lighthouse**⁽⁵⁾.

Magdy That sounds amazing.

Sherif And we're going to have a picnic in the Montazah Gardens. My sister Nadine says there's a **palace**⁽⁶⁾ there which will be amazing to see.

Magdy Wow, you're going to be busy! What about food?

Sherif Oh, we're having dinner in a seafood restaurant on Saturday night. Mom says Alexandria has the best fish and seafood. I can't wait!

Magdy Now, you're making me hungry!

Sherif I'll take lots of photos to show you when I get back.

Magdy Have a great trip, Sherif.

Sherif Thanks, Magdy!

Post-listening question: - How is Sherif going to Alexandria?



- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| (1) مكتبة الإسكندرية | (2) مخطوطات |
| (3) قلعة قايتباي | (4) حصن |
| (5) منارة | (6) قصر |

Pre-reading question:

- How was your day yesterday?

 Read Nesma's reflective journal entry.

Writing

SB page 43



Today, I spent the afternoon with Donia. Donia is my older sister who loves sport. So today, she was teaching me how to play table tennis. I was really excited because it looks fun and I wanted to learn. First, Donia showed me how to hold the bat⁽¹⁾ in my right hand. Then, she showed me how to throw the ball into the air with my left hand and hit it with my bat. At first, I couldn't hit the ball. If I hit the ball, it went into the net. I was really upset⁽²⁾ but Donia told me to keep trying. She was very kind and she didn't get angry. She kept showing me what to do.



(1) مضرب

(2) منزعج

(3) مسرور

(4) يهيم

After a while, I actually hit the ball over the net! I was so pleased⁽³⁾! I practiced again and I got better. Then Donia said "OK, I'll hit the ball to you and now you hit it back to me." After a while, we were hitting the ball to each other. I missed the ball sometimes but it was fine. In the end, I could play a game. Donia won the game of course but that didn't matter⁽⁴⁾. Today was a great day!

Post-reading question:

- Write a reflective journal entry about a time when you learned to do something. Who helped you? How did you feel? Write 100–120 words.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 10

THE ONLINE GENERATION



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading Blog posts about screen time; an article about AI; a short story about girls with a disability

Writing A reflective journal about digital habits; Using adjectives to make writing more interesting; Using visual input as a prompt for writing

Listening Instructions for evaluating pros and cons

Speaking Talking about pros and cons

Language Using the zero and first conditionals, including common mistakes

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

advertisement (n)	إعلان	machine learning (n)	التعلم الآلي
adult (n)	بالغ	massive/huge (adj)	ضخم
algorithms (n)	الخوارزميات	personalize (d) (v)	يخصص
behavior (n)	سلوك	private (adj)	خاص
click (ed) (v)	ينقر	renewable (adj)	متجدد
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	science fiction (n)	الخيال العلمي
gaming (n)	اللعبة بالألعاب الإلكترونية	streaming platform (n)	منصة بث
generate (d) (v)	يولد / ينتج	system (n)	نظام
generation (n)	جيل	teenage (adj)	سن المراهقة
homepage (n)	الصفحة الرئيسية	teenager (n)	مراهق
human (n)	إنسان/بشر		

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

amount (n)	كمية	mix (ed) (v)	يخلط
artificial intelligence (AI) (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعي	New Zealand (n)	نيوزلندا
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	normal (adj)	عادي
cell phone (n)	هاتف محمول	opinion (n)	رأي
continuous (adj)	مستمر/متواصل	own (adj)	ملكه/خاص
improve (d) (v)	يحسن/يطور	particular (adj)	معين/محدد
include (d) (v)	يتضمن	screen (n)	شاشة
instructions (n)	تعليمات	texting (n)	إرسال رسائل

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: **personalize – encourage – behave – generation**

- 1 The online prefers learning through videos and apps.
- 2 Parents teach their children how to in different situations.
- 3 We need to each other during hard times.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

have	> an account	لديه حساب	get	> a message	يستلم رسالة
send	> friend requests	يرسل طلبات صداقة	make	> a decision	يتخذ قراراً
change	> settings	يغير الإعدادات	do	> tasks	يؤدي مهام
upload	> a video/photos	يرفع مقطع فيديو/صوراً على الإنترنت	enter	> data	يدخل البيانات
download	> an app	ينزل/يحمل تطبيقاً			

Prepositions

حروف الجر

put ... down	يضع ... جانباً	a set of	مجموعة من
smile at/back	يرد الابتسامة/يبتسم لـ	for short	باختصار
come for a walk	تأتي للنزهة	suitable for	مناسب لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
understand يفهم	understood	understood	hurt يؤذي	hurt	hurt

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different	مختلف	same/similar	نفس/مشابه	go online	يتصل بالإنترنت	go offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
better	أفضل	worse	أسوأ	turn on	يشغل (جهازاً)	turn off	يغلق (جهازاً)


Check Point

Choose and complete: **with – change – worse – for**

- 1 We say "USA" short instead of the United States of America.
- 2 Hatem decided to the settings of the game to make it easier.
- 3 You should eat more vegetables to stay better. "Better" is opposite in meaning to

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية. 

1 include

- The library **includes** books on many subjects.

يشمل/يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)

contain

- The box **contains** my old toys.


يحتوى على (شيء بداخله)

2 spend + time + inf. + ing

- I **spent** two hours **playing** video games.

يقضى

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ. 

Definitions

التعريفات

machine learning التعلم الآلي	the way computers/machines improve	(1) مجموعة من التعليمات
science fiction الخيال العلمي	stories about life in the future	
algorithms الخوارزميات	a set of instructions ⁽¹⁾ a computer uses to make decisions	(2) مناسب لـ
personalize يخصص	to make something suitable for ⁽²⁾ a particular person	(3) مستمر
streaming platform منصة بث	videos that are sent over the internet in a continuous ⁽³⁾ way	

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
massive (adj)	ضخم	huge/very big	ضخم
tiny (adj)	صغير جدا	very small	صغير جدا

Suffix


اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
renew (v)	يجدد	-able		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		renewable (adj)	متجدد
advertise (v)	يعلن	-ment		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		advertisement (n)	إعلان

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- How do you spend your time online?

 Read and listen to the blog posts. Who do you think wrote each one?

Lesson 1: Spending time online

SB page 45

Research⁽¹⁾ shows that some teenagers⁽²⁾ spend a massive⁽³⁾ 8.5 hours looking at a screen every day. This huge amount⁽⁴⁾ of time doesn't even include the time teenagers look at screens when they do their homework. About 95% of teenagers have cell phones, but this was a tiny 23% in 2011.



My teenage children have their own cell phones with their own accounts. I get a message every time they want to download an app or buy something from a game. I click and then they can do it.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| (1) البحث | (2) المراهقون |
| (3) هائل/ضخم | (4) كمية |
| (5) يلاحظ | (6) لحظات |

I notice⁽⁵⁾ that my children often find it difficult to put their phones down and do something else. I always ask them if they want to come for a walk with me in the afternoon — without their phones — so they can do something else instead. Looking at photos of other people's best moments⁽⁶⁾ can make teenagers feel like their normal lives are boring too.

My dad thinks I spend too much time gaming⁽¹⁾. He changed the settings⁽²⁾ on my laptop so that it turns itself off after one hour. I understand that gaming can be bad for you if you can't stop doing it, but that's not what I'm like. I still enjoy going out and playing sports with my friends and I'm not even on social media. Some of my friends spend all their time on social media.



- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| (1) اللعب بالألعاب الإلكترونية | (2) يغير الإعدادات |
| (3) خاص | (4) يرسل طلبات صداقة |
| (5) الأشخاص بالهاتف | (6) يرفع فيديوهات |

They think it's great. Their accounts aren't private⁽³⁾ and they're always sending friend requests⁽⁴⁾ to people they don't know. That's dangerous because these people could be adults⁽⁵⁾ and not teenagers at all.

There are also teenagers I know who spend so much time making and uploading videos⁽⁶⁾ where they just look at the camera and make funny faces. I think that's terrible and much worse than playing games where you learn how to do things.

Lesson 2: The effects of artificial intelligence

Pre-reading question: - What do you know about AI?

 Read and listen to the article.

SB page 46

The future is already here!

Artificial intelligence (or AI for short) is a type of technology that helps computer systems to **do tasks**⁽¹⁾ that usually only humans can do, such as making decisions or solving problems. If you use streaming **platforms**⁽²⁾ to watch movies or TV shows, you are using AI. The streaming platform uses **algorithms**⁽³⁾ to "learn" what types of movies or TV shows you like to watch. If you enter data by choosing movies, the algorithms learn what you like from that data. The platform then uses what it learned to **personalize**⁽⁴⁾ your homepage on the platform with suggestions for similar movies and TV shows. If you watch a lot of **science fiction**⁽⁵⁾ movies, the streaming platform shows you suggestions for other science fiction movies to watch. This is called "**machine learning**⁽⁶⁾" because it's a **process**⁽⁷⁾ where technology learns things and then uses what it learns to help people. The same thing happens with online shopping. If you shop online, AI learns and remembers what you like to buy. Then you see **advertisements**⁽⁸⁾ for similar clothes when you go online or use social media.

In New Zealand, some primary school children are learning about the environment and **renewable energy**⁽⁹⁾ from the world's first AI teacher called "Will". When teachers use technology in the classroom, students are usually more interested in learning. But Will is technology that looks and behaves like a real human. When students see him for the first time, they think he is real! If children ask Will a question, he gives an answer. He can also understand the expressions on students' faces. If students smile at Will, he smiles back. If students don't understand something, Will helps them.

Some people think that AI encourages us to spend more time online because of its suggestions for more things we can watch or listen to. But AI can also make learning fun and make our lives easier. Surely that isn't such a bad thing!



(1) يؤدي المهام (2) منصات بث

(3) الخوارزميات (4) يخصص

(5) التعلم الآلي (6) خيال علمي

(7) عملية (8) إعلانات

(9) طاقة متجددة

Post-reading question:

- Do you think all the schools will have AI teachers instead of real ones? Why/ Why not?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Some people have more than one on social media.
a) accountant b) account c) amount d) detail
2. My friend always exciting videos to TikTok.
a) downloads b) uploads c) writes d) reads
3. We have a/an garden around our new villa; it's huge with wonderful trees.
a) unknown b) small c) private d) public
4. The new mall is so that it takes hours to explore.
a) low b) tiny c) massive d) frightened
5. platform is a service that continuously sends videos over the internet.
a) Appearing b) Moving c) Streaming d) Hiding
6. "OK" to save your changes and close the settings window.
a) Notice b) Upload c) Click d) Include
7. You shouldn't spend too much time; you can study instead of playing video games.
a) growing b) going c) gaining d) gaming
8. To is to make something suitable for a particular person.
a) stand b) understand c) realize d) personalize
9. I accepted a new friend from one of my relatives.
a) request b) discovery c) order d) invention
10. I don't want to change the of my mobile phone; it's easy to use.
a) places b) lanes c) lines d) settings

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

real – platforms – advertisements – suggestions – decisions

Artificial intelligence (AI) helps computers do tasks that humans usually do, like making decisions. Streaming (1)..... use AI to suggest movies based on what you watch. It learns from the movies you choose and gives you similar (2)..... . AI also helps with online shopping by showing (3)..... for things you like. In New Zealand, AI teacher "Will" helps kids learn by acting like a (4)..... person. AI can make learning and life easier.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My English homework always writing a paragraph.
a) edits b) tracks c) contains d) includes
2. The app is for beginners who are learning to draw digitally.
a) renewable b) suitable c) similar d) different
3. Streaming platforms use to learn what types of movies or TV shows you like to watch.
a) symbols b) algebra c) math d) algorithms
4. Don't apps from websites that you don't trust.
a) upload b) download c) write d) appear
5. intelligence helps us carry out تنفيذ difficult tasks quickly.
a) Artificial b) Normal c) Industrial d) Cultural
6. Visit our for the latest updates, news, and offers.
a) homepage b) count c) message d) advertisement
7. Sandy wrote a science story about traveling to Mars.
a) homepage b) fiction c) algorithms d) platform
8. Machine is used by streaming platforms to suggest movies.
a) shows b) platform c) teaching d) learning
9. Many enjoy hanging out with their friends after school.
a) teenagers b) teachers c) parents d) instructors
10. Using energy reduces pollution and protects nature.
a) renewable b) sociable c) nonrenewable d) unsustainable

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

behavior – screen – upload – gaming – behaves

Many teenagers today spend a lot of time on social media platforms, using their cell phones to post photos and send messages. Some also enjoy (1)....., which is part of a huge online generation. Social media platforms encourage people to (2)..... videos and share their opinions. However, too much time online can affect (3)..... and decision-making. It's important to balance (4)..... time with real-life activities, like going for a walk or reading a book.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language



Remember

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	مصدر + (I, You, We, They, اسم جمع) مصدر + (s, es, ies) + (اسم مفرد, He, She, It)	- I learn English at school. - She learns English at school.
Negative النفي	مصدر + don't + (I, You, We, They, اسم جمع) مصدر + doesn't + (اسم مفرد, He, She, It)	- They don't like fish. - He doesn't like fish.
Yes/No questions	مصدر? + (I, you, we, they, اسم جمع) + Do مصدر? + (he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + Does	- Do you like English? - Does Nada live with her family?
Wh- questions	مصدر? + فاعل + do + Q. word مصدر? + فاعل + does + Q. word	- Where do you live? - How does he go to work?

The Zero Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Usage

الاستخدام

We use the zero conditional to talk about scientific facts or instructions to describe a link or cause and effect between two facts or events.

• نستخدم حالة الشرط الصفرية للحديث عن الحقائق العلمية أو التعليمات لوصف الرابط أو السبب والنتيجة بين حقيقتين أو حدثين.

- e.g. • If you **heat** water to 100 degrees Celsius, it **boils**.
- When you **plant** a seed, a **flower grows**.

Form

التكوين

مضارع بسيط + فاعل , مضارع بسيط + فاعل + If / When

- e.g. • If you **heat** ice, it **melts**.

مضارع بسيط + فاعل + if / when + مضارع بسيط + فاعل

- e.g. • Plants **die** when we **don't water** them.
- We use **if** or **when** to say how certain something is.

نستخدم **if** أو **when** للتأكيد على حدوث شيء ما.

لاحظ



- e.g. • When **it's** Eid, **we have** cookies.
- I **always** feel tired if I **don't sleep** well.



Got it ?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If it rains, the ground (get) wet.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (gets) لأن الفاعل (the ground) مفرد.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When the sun, it gets warm.
a) rising b) is rising c) rises d) rise
2. If I hard, I fail the test.
a) study b) don't study c) studies d) doesn't study
3. you feel sick when you eat too much?
a) Have b) Did c) Are d) Do
4. water freeze if the temperature drops below 0°C?
a) Is b) Has c) Does d) Was
5. What happens when you drink water?
a) isn't b) aren't c) don't d) doesn't
6. When I'm nervous, I always a short story to relax.
a) am reading b) reading c) reads d) read
7. When you add sugar to tea, it become sweet?
a) does b) do c) is d) was
8. If we heat ice, it
a) is going to melt b) melt c) melts d) will melt

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you play with fire, you (gets) burned.
2. If you (not/eat) breakfast, you don't have energy for the day.
3. If you mix red and blue, you (getting) purple.
4. When it (be) cold, I wear a coat.
5. If the car doesn't have fuel, it (not/start).
6. If you don't boil eggs long enough, (have) they cook properly?
7. We die if we (not/breathe).
8. If you don't exercise, you (not/stay) fit.
9. If you (threw) an egg into salty water, it floats.
10. If the sun shines, plants (grows).



Writing

How to write about the impact of AI in our daily life

كيفية الكتابة عن تأثير الذكاء الاصطناعي في حياتنا اليومية

(1) In what ways does AI affect our daily lives?

(2) How does AI personalize suggestions on streaming platforms?

(3) How is AI used in online shopping?

The impact of AI in our daily life

(4) Give some examples of how AI is used in gaming.

(5) How does AI improve systems and make life easier for humans?

Example

"The Impact of AI in our Daily Lives"

Artificial intelligence (AI) has a massive impact on daily life. Algorithms and machine learning help streaming platforms personalize your homepage with suggestions based on your behavior, like movies or shows you watch. AI is also used in online shopping to show advertisements for items you like. This generation of teenagers and adults notices AI in gaming, research, and renewable energy projects. AI encourages better decision-making and improves systems, making life easier for humans. As AI continues to grow, it will change how we work, communicate, and live, offering new possibilities for the future.

Write a paragraph on:

"The advantages and disadvantages of AI"



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Who changed the settings on the speaker's laptop?
a) Mum. b) Dad. c) Grandpa. d) Grandma.
- What do the speaker's friends spend a lot of time on?
a) Playing sports. b) Watching TV.
c) Social media. d) Sleeping.
- Why is sending friend requests to strangers dangerous?
a) They may ignore you. b) They might be adults.
c) They could block you. d) They may be rude.

(B) Listen and complete:

- The dad set the laptop to turn off after hour.
- The speaker enjoys playing with friends.
- Gaming can be if you play too much.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Streaming recommend movies based on what you watch.
a) screens b) learning c) platforms d) instructions
- Mariam is a responsible who always helps others in need. She is 20.
a) kid b) adult c) toddler d) infant

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

down – screens – fresh – polluted – download

In 2011, research showed that about 23% of teenagers had cell phones, but now 95% do. They spend about 8.5 hours a day on (1)..... I get messages when my children buy things or (2)..... apps. They find it hard to put their phones (3)....., so I sometimes ask them to go for a walk with me to get (4)..... air and time away from screens.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What you see when you look at the sky?
a) doing b) did c) does d) do
- If you study grammar, you make mistakes.
a) not b) don't c) no d) didn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When you (not/clean) your room, it gets messy.
2. If you drop an object, it (fall) to the ground.
3. If you read regularly, you (improving) your vocabulary.
4. What (happen) when you eat too much?

6 Complete the following dialog:

Ola is telling Nada some information about streaming platforms.

Ola : Do you like using streaming platforms, Nada?

Nada : Yes, I (1)..... watching movies on them.

Ola : Did you know that streaming platforms use AI to recommend shows?

Nada : Really? (2)..... does that work?

Ola : AI notices what you watch and then suggests similar shows or movies.

Nada : Wow! I didn't realize that. Does it only (3)..... with movies?

Ola : No, it also works with music and videos on streaming platforms.

Nada : That's (4).....!

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Spending too much time on social media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاوب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When someone (eating) spicy food, they drink lots of water.
2. When there (be) no time for my homework, my parents get nervous.
3. (How/you) feel if you get low grades?

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

activity (n)	نشاط	habit (n)	عادة
chart (n)	رسم بياني	manage (d) (v)	يدير
column (n)	عمود	interview (n)	حوار/مقابلة
cons (n)	عيوب	negative (adj)	سلبي
decisions (n)	قرارات	outweigh (ed) (v)	يفوق في الأهمية/ يتجاوز
effect (n)	تأثير	positive (adj)	إيجابي
evaluate (d) (v)	يقيم	pros (n)	مميزات
expert (n)	خبير	value (n)	قيمة

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

aspect (n)	جانب	flow chart (n)	مخطط انسيابي
brain (n)	مخ	information (n)	معلومات
conversation (n)	محادثة	organized (adj)	منظم
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	points (n)	نقاط
details (n)	تفاصيل	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
device (n)	جهاز	situation (n)	موقف
digital (adj)	رقمي	vertical (adj)	عمودي
expensive (adj)	غالٍ	well-being (n)	رفاهية/ صحة
findings (n)	نتائج/استنتاجات	whole (adj)	كل

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: **evaluate – interview – organized – device**

- 1 Maher had an interesting on TV about his new invention.
- 2 Amira keeps her desk with everything in its place.
- 3 Let's the pros and cons of each option.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

make	> decisions	يتخذ قرارات	make	> notes on	يحدثون ملاحظات
take	> photos	يلتقط صوراً	release	> chemicals	يطلق مواد كيميائية
	> an action	يتخذ إجراء	get	> sunburn	يتعرض لحروق الشمس

Prepositions

حروف الجر

focus on

يركز على

addicted to

مدمن لـ

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
difficult/hard	صعب	easy	سهل

Check Point

Choose and complete:

got - at - to - difficult

- 1 Salma is addicted social media. She checks it every few minutes.
- 2 My sisters sunburn after spending too much time at the beach.
- 3 The test was so hard. It was very

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف
الجر والكلمات
وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

evaluate	يقيم	to look at or think about something and use this information to decide what you think	(1) الجواب
pros and cons	المزايا والعيوب	the good and bad aspects ⁽¹⁾ of doing something	(2) عمودي
a value	قيمة	a number which shows how important or good something is	
a chart column	عمود في الرسم البياني	a drawing that shows information in an organized way on a vertical ⁽²⁾ part of a chart	
to outweigh something	يتفوق على شيء ما	to be more important than something	

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
con (n)	عيب	disadvantage	عيب
pro (n)	ميزة	advantage	ميزة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text



Lesson 3: Evaluating pros and cons

Pre-Listening question:

- What are the pros and cons of using mobile phones?

Listen to the whole conversation. Complete the chart with the information you hear. **SB page 48**



(1) قرار (2) رسم بياني
(3) قيمة (4) نقاط

Dad So, you want me to buy you this expensive, new phone for your birthday?

Teen boy That's right.

Dad Do you really think that's a good idea? I think we need to think about this carefully before I make a **decision** ⁽¹⁾.

Teen boy OK.

Dad Let's make a list of the pros and cons of buying this phone in a **chart** ⁽²⁾ ... We'll start with the pros.

Teen boy The new phone looks better than my old phone. That's the first pro. It's also the same phone that my two best friends have, and I want to have the same phone as them.

Dad Are there any other pros?

Teen boy Yes, the third pro is that I could take better photos with the new phone because it's got a better camera.

Dad OK, now for the cons of buying the new phone ... It's very expensive, so you wouldn't get any other presents from us at all this year.

Teen boy Urgh.

Dad Another con is that you'll spend more time looking at a screen if we buy you this phone. And breaking or losing the phone would be terrible because it's so special and expensive.

Teen boy OK, now we have three pros and three cons. What do we do next?

Dad We give each pro and con a **value** ⁽³⁾ from one to ten to show how important we think they are.

Teen boy OK. It looks good – 7 **points** ⁽⁴⁾. It's the same as my friends' phones – 5 points. It has a better camera – 8 points.

Dad Now, I'll do the cons. It's very expensive – 9 points. You'll spend more time looking at a screen – 8 points. It would be terrible to break or lose it – 5 points – because I don't think you'll break or lose it. So ... if you add all the values for the pros together, you get 20 points. If you add all the cons together, you get 22 points. 22 points is more than 20 points, so there are more cons than pros.

Teen boy So, you aren't going to buy me the new phone?

Dad That's right. Maybe when you're a bit older.

Pre-listening question:

- How much time do spend online daily?



Lesson 4: Bad habits

SB page 50

Listen to the interview. Check your answer from Exercise 2.

Presenter Today I'm talking to Dr Amal about a new study about internet use and its **effects** ⁽¹⁾ on the teenage brain. Could you give us some more **details** ⁽²⁾ about the study, Dr Amal?

Dr Amal Hello Soha. Yes, sure. Well, the study followed nearly 250 teenagers over 10 years to find out how much time they spent online and what effects that had on their brains.

Presenter And what were the main **findings** ⁽³⁾ of this study?

Dr Amal The study found that using the internet too much had become a bad habit for some of the teenagers.

Presenter What exactly do you mean by "it had become a bad habit"? Was using the internet having negative effects on them?

Dr Amal I mean that they were using the internet for hours every day and they couldn't stop doing it. They were **addicted** ⁽⁴⁾ to the internet.

Presenter That doesn't sound very good at all.

Dr Amal No, it isn't. If you are addicted to something, your brain **releases** ⁽⁵⁾ **chemicals** ⁽⁶⁾ that make you feel happy when you do it. That's why it's hard to stop doing it.

Presenter But then you might only feel good when you're doing that **activity** ⁽⁷⁾, like using the internet?

Dr Amal Exactly. The study shows that this addiction to the internet amongst teenagers has a negative effect on the part of the teenage brain that **manages** ⁽⁸⁾ decision-making and how you behave.

Presenter OK, so you might behave differently to **normal** ⁽⁹⁾ or make bad decisions.

Dr Amal Yes, teenagers who are addicted to the internet find it hard to talk to others and communicate with parents and other adults. Also, internet addiction can cause teenagers to have bad sleeping and eating habits. If you're not sleeping enough or eating healthy food, that also has a bad effect on your health and well-being.

Presenter Is it possible for students to "get back to normal" after becoming addicted to the internet?

Dr Amal The research tells us that that's possible, yes. If teenagers who are addicted to the internet use their devices less often, their sleep and health will improve.

Presenter So what advice would you give to teenagers who think they could be addicted to the internet?

Dr Amal If you only spend one or two hours online a day, you'll slowly become less addicted to the internet. You'll have more time to see your friends in real life and go outside and do something fun. That will make you feel better too.

Presenter Dr Amal. Thank you very much for talking to us.



- | | |
|-------------|-------------------|
| (1) تأثيرات | (2) تفاصيل |
| (3) نتائج | (4) مدمن |
| (5) يطلق | (6) مواد كيميائية |
| (7) نشاط | (8) يدير |
| (9) عادي | |

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's my to read a short story before bed every day.
a) sum b) problem c) habit d) chart
2. The scientists the results of their experiment. They were surprising.
a) solved b) evaluated c) decided d) passed
3. It is important to decisions carefully.
a) come b) do c) make d) decide
4. The news had a/an effect on her. She got upset.
a) easy b) simple c) sustainable d) negative
5. Old cars usually dangerous gases.
a) take b) release c) contain d) get
6. This course focuses improving decision-making skills.
a) in b) on c) at d) with
7. Apps for bring many positive changes to people's lives.
a) well-being b) cons c) value d) amount
8. Watching fun videos can have a relaxing on your mood.
a) habit b) decision c) conversation d) effect
9. Using digital devices in good ways can have a/an effect on learning.
a) negative b) helpless c) positive d) bored
10. learning platforms make studying easier for students.
a) Digital b) Manual c) Renewable d) Physical

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

outweigh – column – cans – cons – value

To make good decisions, we need to evaluate different options carefully. For example, when buying something, it's important to look at the pros and (1) of each choice. You should also think about the (2) of what you're buying and how it fits your needs. A chart (3) can be helpful to compare different options. In the end, one thing may (4) others, guiding your decision.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher used a to explain the lesson properly.
a) plane b) list c) charge d) chart
2. Nasser was nervous before his for the new job.
a) findings b) interview c) presenter d) habit
3. One of my best is to volunteer in a charity in my free time.
a) cons b) abilities c) addictions d) decisions
4. Reading is a useful We should read every day.
a) sport b) attention c) activity d) effect
5. Laughing can chemicals that make you happy.
a) release b) hide c) reduce d) stop
6. Being to video games can take time away from studies.
a) addicted b) excited c) careful d) tired
7. The of hard work is recognized in many cultures.
a) price b) value c) cost d) mistake
8. It is important to check your email for updates.
a) regularly b) slowly c) quietly d) loudly
9. One of the key of a healthy lifestyle is regular exercise.
a) aspects b) problems c) ideas d) mistakes
10. In basketball, our team scored 89, but the other team scored only 70.
a) goals b) paints c) points d) sheets

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

effects – teenagers – addicted – make – take

Spending too much time using the internet can affect teenagers' brains. An expert says being (1)..... to the internet can make it hard to focus and pay attention. But, the internet can also help (2)..... learn new things. To help, it's important to set limits and (3)..... breaks. Finding a balance between internet use and other activities can help avoid bad (4)..... .

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملف التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

The First Conditional with "If"

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

e.g. • If they leave now, they will catch the bus.

• Sara will pass the exam if she studies hard.

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use "If" to talk about things in the future which we think will probably happen.

- تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء نعتقد أنها من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

e.g. • If teenagers who are addicted to the internet use their devices less often, their sleep and health will improve.

• If he finishes his homework, he will watch a movie.

Form

التكوين

If | subject + present simple, | subject + will / won't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. • If you take the train, you will arrive on time.

• If he doesn't hurry, he will miss the flight.

• You won't keep fit if you don't exercise.

Question

السؤال

1. Yes/No question السؤال بـ "هل"

Will + subject + inf. | if | subject + present simple ...?

e.g. • A: Will Dina speak English well if her parents move to Canada?

B: Yes, she will.

B: No, she won't.

2. Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word أداة استفهام | will + subject + inf. | if | subject + present simple ...?

e.g. • A: What will you do if it is hot tomorrow?

B: If it is hot tomorrow, we will go to the beach.



Got it?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 What will happen if you (didn't) pass your exams?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (don't) لأن قبل (if) مستقبلاً (will) فيتبع إذا مضارع بسيط.

2 If she comes early, she (watch) the film.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (will watch) لأن بعد (if) مضارعاً بسيطاً، فالجملة الأخرى تكون في المستقبل.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. If we leave now, we be on time for the meeting.
 a) will b) would c) are d) have
2. We the party if we don't get the tickets.
 a) are attending b) would attend c) won't attend d) didn't attend
3. If I call Huda, she help me with my homework?
 a) will b) would c) does d) is
4. If Nehal doesn't hurry, she miss the bus.
 a) will b) would c) is d) won't
5. What if the mechanic doesn't check the car engine?
 a) happen b) will happen
 c) happening d) has happened
6. I you about the latest news if I attend the meeting.
 a) will tell b) would tell c) tells d) am told
7. If Tarek invites you, you go to the party?
 a) do b) will c) am d) have
8. If they me the job, I will accept it.
 a) are offering b) offered c) will offer d) offer

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

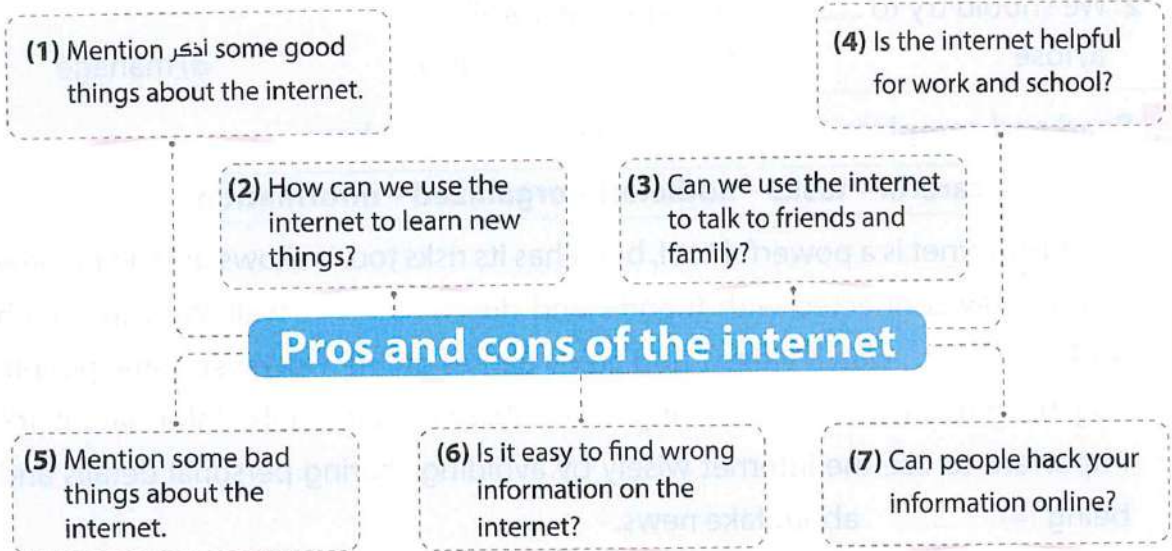
- ▶ 1. If it (rain) tomorrow, we will stay indoors.
2. If Noura (not/study) for the exam, she will fail.
3. If I (be) hungry, I won't have lunch in that bad restaurant.
4. Samir (don't) be pleased if he knows this bad news.
5. If you study every day, how will that (improving) your grades?
6. If we (not/arrive) on time, they won't wait for us.
7. I will (am) angry if Hatim breaks my mobile.
8. If they (be) at the party, why won't you join them?
9. If we (not/bring) enough money, we won't be able to buy the tickets.
10. If you (not/clean) your room, your mom will be upset.



Writing

How to write about the pros and cons of the internet

كيفية الكتابة عن مميزات وعيوب الإنترنت



Example

"The internet"

The internet can have advantages as well as disadvantages. On one hand, it helps us learn new things, talk to friends, and do our work. We can watch videos, and play games online. It also helps us get a lot of information when we do research for school or work. On the other hand, some people can be addicted to going online, and spend most of their time on social media. It also has a lot of wrong information so we should browse trusted websites. It's important to be careful and not share personal information because people can hack your information. We should also be aware of fake news and only trust reliable sources.

Write a paragraph on:

"Using the internet"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 10 Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The of living here is the beautiful scenery.
a) habit b) tool c) pro d) con
2. We should try to our time very well.
a) lose b) waste c) stay d) manage

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

careful – tasks – addicted – organized – information

The internet is a powerful tool, but it has its risks too. It allows us to learn new things, stay connected with friends, and do (1)..... well. We can search for (2)....., watch videos, and enjoy games online. However, some people may become (3)..... to using it, and there is a lot of false information. It's important to use the internet wisely by avoiding sharing personal details and being (4)..... about fake news.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Making a list of pros and cons is a **helpful** way to make decisions. A pro is a good thing, and a con is a bad thing. First, write down the decision you need to make. For example, "Should I buy a new video game?" Next, draw a line down the middle of your paper. On one side, write "Pros," and on the other side, write "Cons." Now, think about all the good things about buying the video game. Is it fun? Will it help you learn new things? Write **these** on the left side. Then, think about the bad things. Does it cost a lot of money? Will it take time away from your homework? Write these cons on the right side. After you've listed all the pros and cons, look at both sides. Which side has more? This can help you make a good decision.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When you list the cons, you write down the things.
a) good b) bad c) funny d) important
2. The word "**helpful**" in the passage means
a) harmful b) useless c) useful d) difficult

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
4. What are the two steps in making a list of pros and cons?
5. Why is it helpful to make a list of pros and cons before making a decision?
6. What does the underlined word "these" refer to?.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If Amin studies more, he pass the final exam?
a) will b) does c) did d) is
2. If it cold tomorrow, we won't go to the beach.
a) is b) will be c) was d) has

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Wael (practice) every day, he will become better at playing the guitar.
2. If Laila (not/apologize), they will not forgive her.
3. If you get a lot of money, will you (buying) a new house?
4. What will you do if it (rain) during the picnic?

6 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Teenagers"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Will follow) your father's advice if you want to make more success.
2. If you meet Adel, (not to) tell him about his father's accident.
3. What (you doing) if you face such a difficult problem?

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

against (prep)	ضد	profile (n)	الملف الشخصي
champion (n)	بطل	sickness/disease (n)	مرض
concise summary (n)	ملخص موجز/مختصر	surprised (adj)	مندعش
disability (n)	إعاقة	take place (v)	يحدث
event (n)	حدث	terrible (adj)	رهيب/فظيع
final (n)	مباراة نهائية	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
highlights (n)	أبرز الأحداث	winner (n)	فائز
Paralympics (n)	ألعاب أولمبياد المعاقين		

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

condition (n)	حالة/ظرف	cross (ed) (v)	يعبر
achievement (n)	إنجاز	wheelchair tennis (n)	تنس الكراسي المتحركة
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة	Wimbledon (n)	بطولة ويمبلدون للتنس

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: **achievement – against – disease – wheelchair**

- The game was exciting because we played a strong team.
- Manar uses a to get around. She can't walk.
- Asser went to hospital because he has a dangerous

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

give	> my eyes a rest	أعطى عيني راحة	the Egyptian Olympic Team	المنتخب الأولمبي المصري
overcome	> difficulties	يتغلب على الصعوبات	from now on	من الآن فصاعداً

التعبيرات اللغوية

Prepositions

compare ... to	يقارن ... بـ	reply to	يرد على
----------------	--------------	----------	---------

حروف الجر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
hit	يصطدم/ يضرب	hit	hit

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 with

ذو/ لديه

- These are sports for people **with** a disability.

2 watch + مفعول + inf.

يشاهد (الحدث كله)

- I **watched** you **win** your tennis game yesterday.

3 Exclamation with "what"

التعجب باستخدام (What)

What + (a/an) + (صفة) + اسم !

- **What** an achievement!
- **What** a wonderful achievement!

4 Obligation

الإلزام

will have to + inf.

سوف يكون مضطراً لفعل شيء في المستقبل

- You'll **have to** use a wheelchair.

had to + inf.

كان مضطراً لفعل شيء في الماضي

- She **had to** go to hospital for many weeks.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hany to get up early yesterday. It was necessary.
 - a) has
 - b) have
 - c) will have
 - d) had
- Dr. Yacoub helps children heart disease.
 - a) with
 - b) in
 - c) on
 - d) by
- We went to the stadium and watched my son the final.
 - a) plays
 - b) play
 - c) to play
 - d) played



Definitions

التعريفات

disability	إعاقة	something that makes it difficult for someone to do things the way most people do
event	حدث	something that happens or takes place
final	نهائي	the last game in a competition, which decides the winner
sickness	مرض	a disease or unhealthy condition
terrible	فظيع	very bad

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
take place (v)	يحدث	happen	يحدث
surprised (adj)	مندعش	amazed	متعجب/مندعش
sickness (n)	مرض	illness	مرض
amazing (adj)	رائع	wonderful	مدهش/رائع

Suffix

اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	الوظيفة	Function	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
achieve (v)	يحقق	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	achievement (n)	إنجاز
compete (v)	ينافس	-ition	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	competition (n)	منافسة
sick (adj)	مريض	-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	sickness (n)	مرض


Prefix

البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
dis-		تعطي عكس المعنى	تعطى عكس المعنى	ability (n)	قدرة	disability (n)	إعاقة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - Which sport do you like?

 **Read and listen to the story. Check your answers to Exercise 1.**

Lesson 5: Literature

SB page 52

Meeting Rana

Today, I watched a Paralympics⁽¹⁾ sports event⁽²⁾. These are sports for people with a disability⁽³⁾. There was the final of the wheelchair tennis and an Egyptian girl won. She was so fast!

The next day, I was very surprised because I saw the tennis player in the wheelchair⁽⁴⁾. I was with some friends in a café and she was at the next table.

"I watched you win your tennis game yesterday," I said to her. "What an achievement! You were amazing."

"Thank you," said Rana. She looked at me and said, "Do you play tennis, too?"

"No!" I laughed, because I, too, used a wheelchair. I couldn't walk after I had a sickness⁽⁵⁾ when I was a child.

"Don't laugh!" said Rana. "You can play tennis like me, if you want. I can help you."

Then, Rana told me her story. She was always good at sports, and she was very good at tennis. "Don't play tennis against Rana!" her older sister Malak always said. "If I play her, I lose every time! She's so good."

Rana liked to play tennis after school and on the weekends. "I think she'll play at Wimbledon one day!" said her father. "Or perhaps she'll join the Egyptian Olympic Team!" said her mother.

One day, something terrible happened. Rana was crossing the road when a car hit her. She had to go to hospital for many weeks.

"I'm sorry, but you won't walk again, Rana," said the doctor. "You'll have to use a wheelchair."

Rana was very sad. It took her a long time to understand that she although could not walk, she could do many things. Her father told her about wheelchair tennis, and soon she was playing the sport every week. A year later, she joined the Paralympic tennis team and now she was a champion. And that was when I saw her.

"If you want to play tennis, don't let your wheelchair stop you," Rana said.

Now, I'm playing wheelchair tennis every week too. Perhaps one day, I'll join a Paralympic tennis team, like Rana!

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Where did the writer meet Rana?.....
- 2 Why do you think the writer laughed?.....



(1) الألعاب الأولمبية

(2) حدث

(3) إعاقة

(4) كرسي متحرك

(5) مرض

Pre-reading question:

- How much time do you spend on your social media every day?

 Read and listen to Amany's reflective journal entry about her digital habits.

What does Amany think about the digital habit in the photograph? **SB page 54**

This week at school, we're talking about digital habits⁽¹⁾. I thought about how, when, and how often I use digital technology and I realized⁽²⁾ that my digital habits are quite good.

For example, I never watch videos or look at my phone for too long in the evening. I usually read a book in the hour before I go to bed instead to give my eyes a rest from looking at a screen.

I also don't spend too much time looking at a screen during the day either. It's usually 1.5 hours a day. That's enough time to reply to messages from friends when I relax after school, but it isn't too much time.

I have one bad digital habit though. I sometimes look at other people's photos on social media and compare myself to them. I know that you only see the highlights⁽³⁾ on people's social media profiles, but sometimes looking at these profiles⁽⁴⁾ makes me feel like I'm not good enough. I'm going to stop looking at other people's profiles and comparing myself to them from now on.



(1) عادات

(2) يدرك

(3) أبرز الأحداث

(4) ملف شخصي

Post-reading question:

- 1 What is the text about?
- 2 What does Amany not spend too much time doing?
- 3 What does she think she spends too much time doing and shouldn't do at all?
- 4 What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

"Critical Thinking Skill" «مهارة التفكير النقدي»

- What is critical thinking?

ما هي مهارة التفكير النقدي؟

- هي عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التي جمعت من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأي نقدي شخصي، ودائمًا ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة، ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

Example: What do you think of Amany?

Answer:

- She is clever and careful. She has good habits and wants to change her bad ones, like comparing herself to others.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Tamer stayed home because he had a serious
a) habit b) story c) sickness d) wheelchair
2. I was to win the story writing competition. I didn't expect that.
a) surprised b) common c) normal d) bored
3. A/An is the last game in a competition, which decides the winner.
a) event b) process c) condition d) final
4. Alaa worked hard to difficulties in his studies.
a) cross b) overcome c) laugh d) hit
5. Mazin walks to school every day. It's his
a) habit b) summary c) condition d) event
6. Climbing the mountain was an amazing for my brother.
a) achievement b) disability c) condition d) story
7. Rana is ready for the art She practiced two weeks ago.
a) winner b) player c) champion d) competition
8. My father has a meeting every Thursday. It at 2 p.m.
a) laughs b) takes part c) takes place d) overcomes
9. Maged uses a to move around. He can't walk at all.
a) mobile b) wheelchair c) sofa d) chair
10. Heba took a prize because she was the of the race.
a) loser b) event c) player d) winner

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

achievement – competition – wheelchair – winner – team

Omar loved basketball despite بالرغم من his disability. He practiced every day using his (1)..... . In the big game, Omar's (2)..... was losing, but he didn't give up. He made a fantastic shot and won the game. Everyone cheered. Omar became a champion and felt proud of his (3)..... . He showed everyone that with hard work, anyone can be a (4)..... .

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mo Salah is a/an player. All people like him.
a) terrible b) amazing c) surprised d) slow
2. Rana was the road when a car hit her.
a) laughing b) losing c) crossing d) winning
3. Nahla has a disability. She joined the tennis team.
a) wheelchair b) competition c) champion d) Paralympic
4. Something happened to Walaa. She had an accident.
a) healthy b) surprised c) amazing d) terrible
5. A concise helps in understanding the main ideas.
a) mistake b) summary c) dream d) condition
6. The road was terrible after the storm.
a) achievement b) story c) condition d) event
7. Paralympics are sports for people with a
a) disability b) disease c) condition d) summary
8. The meeting will in the new meeting room.
a) stay b) end c) take place d) have
9. Aya became the after winning the tennis competition.
a) loser b) customer c) waiter d) champion
10. Our national team will play Tunisia in the final.
a) against b) to c) for d) opposite

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

player – final – Paralympic – disability – surprised

I like tennis very much. Today, I watched the (1)..... of the wheelchair tennis match where an Egyptian girl won. The next day, I was (2)..... to see the same tennis (3)..... in a café. Her name was Rana, and she told me to play tennis although I use a wheelchair. I now play wheelchair tennis regularly, aiming to join a (4)..... tennis team.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Writing

How to write about someone with a disability.

كيفية الكتابة عن شخص من ذوي الهمم.



Example

"A talented tennis player"

Rana is a talented tennis player who uses a wheelchair. She was injured in an accident and couldn't walk anymore. But she didn't give up on her dream. She started playing wheelchair tennis and became very good at it. She even won a Paralympic gold medal. Rana is an inspiration to many people, showing that a disability doesn't stop you from doing what you love.

Write a paragraph on:

"A Paralympic champion"

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Enas got better from her because she followed her doctor's advice.
a) champion b) event c) sickness d) condition
- Amr won a medal in the Paralympic swimming
a) winner b) completion c) champion d) competition

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

relax – to – at – events – compare

You should use technology in a useful way. Don't (1)..... yourself to profiles on social media. Don't look at others' highlights only. Instead, (2)..... and have fun. Looking at a screen all day isn't good. Take time to play and be with friends. Before you reply (3)..... a message, think twice. Remember, living online isn't the same as living in the real world. Take part in everyday (4).....

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If you want to make tea, you (needing) hot water.
- Your teacher..... (be) very happy if you forget your notebook again. **SB**
- If people (not/sleep) enough, they get sick.
- (Is) he wear a jacket if he feels cold?

4 Complete the following dialog:

Judy is reading a story about an amazing girl named Rana.

Hams : What are you doing?

Judy : I'm reading a (1).....

Hams : (2)..... is the story about?

Judy : It's about an amazing girl named Rana.

Hams : (3)..... is Rana?

Judy : She is a wheelchair tennis player.

Hams : Why is she in a wheelchair?

Judy : She was in a (4)..... because she had an accident.



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I always (will go) to bed early if I have an exam.
- (Is) water change into ice when we put it in a freezer?
- What (will happen) if we leave iron in the open air?

A

Listening

30

Scan & Listen



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What kind of sports event did the speaker watch?
 - Olympics.
 - Paralympics.
 - World Cup.
 - Local tournament.
- What sport was the final match about?
 - Wheelchair basketball.
 - Wheelchair tennis.
 - Swimming.
 - Track and field.
- What was the nationality of the winner?
 - American.
 - British.
 - Egyptian.
 - French.

(B) Listen and complete:

- The speaker was to see the tennis player.
- The speaker saw the tennis player when he/she was with some friends in a
- The wheel chair tennis player was so

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Hana about the event she attended on her social media.
 - valued
 - posted
 - accessed
 - ignored
- Every job has its, so choose one that is suitable for your skills.
 - decisions
 - suggestions
 - lists
 - pros and cons

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

cut – feel – a way – screens – away

Teens get addicted to things quickly. This means they can't stop easily and might need help from family and friends to take time (1)..... from their screens. Too much time on (2)..... can be bad. If teens are always online, they (3)..... lonely. This isn't healthy. So, try to (4)..... your screen time and spend more time with real people.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In modern life, social media is developing fast. It is especially very popular among the teenagers. Addiction to social media has many dangerous effects, including poor study habits, living away from reality and bad health. First, addiction to social media makes the teenagers have bad grades in studies. Every day, students come to class, but they do not focus on studying. Moreover, at home these students do not do exercise or read the new lesson before going to school, because they are busy with social media. Secondly, these young people can live far away from reality. They will not have time for outdoor activities such as playing sports or camping. Finally, using social media too much will have a serious effect on health. Staying up late is really harmful to health, especially the brain.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is
a) technology b) social media c) computers d) friends
2. The young who are addicted to social media live away from life.
a) home b) school c) bad d) real

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why does social media have a serious effect on health?
4. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
5. What are the disadvantages of social media addiction?
6. Do you think that social media helps the youth? Why/Why not?



Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When mom is happy, she us delicious food.
a) is cooking b) cook c) cooks d) cooked
2. If I take the job offer, I to a new city.
a) am moving b) moved c) moves d) will move

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If Maha (not/feel) well, she goes to the doctor.
2. What (you/do) if you have a problem?
3. If they (having) a holiday, they will visit their grandma.
4. If we (be) thirsty, we drink water.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Rana and Alaa are talking about AI.

Rana : Do you use AI?

Alaa : Yes, I (1)..... But we should be careful when we use it.

Rana : (2)..... should we do?

Alaa : The first rule is not to rely on اعتمد على AI too much.

Rana : Not to rely on AI! What (3)..... we do?

Alaa : We shouldn't believe everything AI tells us.

Rana : What else shouldn't we do?

Alaa : We also shouldn't (4)..... personal information with AI.

8 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Using AI safely"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Hana and Noor are talking about the problems teens face.

Hana : What do you think is the most serious problem teens face?

Noor : I think they are always (1).....

- a) inside b) outside c) online d) offline

Hana : (2)..... do you mean?

- a) What b) How c) Why d) When

Noor : I mean they spend a lot of time on screens.

Hana : What do they (3)..... online?

- a) does b) did c) doing d) do

Noor : They play video games online.

Hana : What else do they do online?

Noor : They also (4)..... with their friends.

- a) join b) chat c) sleep d) share

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. If I find a treasure map, I (go) on an adventure.

- a) goes b) going c) will go d) went

2. If Nancy (call) me, I will be so happy.

- a) to call b) called c) will call d) calls

3. I usually feel nervous if I (had) a test.

- a) have b) has c) having d) to have

4. If you throw something away, you always (to feel) you need it soon after.

- a) will feel b) feel c) feeling d) felt

5. (While) I come late, my father is always angry.

- a) That b) Who c) When d) What

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

1 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A) Spending – digital – replied – addicted – exercise

Too much screen time isn't good for you. It can make you get (1)..... to digital media. (2)..... all day on social media isn't healthy. Instead, try to balance your screen time with (3)..... and other activities. Go outside, play, and have fun with friends. This way, your mind and body can relax. Remember, it's important to enjoy (4)..... media wisely and make time for other things in life too.

B) support – make – do – crowdfunding – hashtag

Social media is a great tool for doing good! You can use (1)..... to raise money for a good cause or (2)..... a local business. Offer your help and show others it's worth it. Use a (3)..... to spread the word and connect people. Social media can bring people together to (4)..... a difference in the world. It's powerful when used for the right reasons.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. We don't feel when others don't share many activities with us.

- a) international b) included c) nervous d) upset

2. Please us for dinner tonight. We'll wait for you.

- a) realize b) plan c) notice d) join

3. The company will a new product next month.

- a) change b) arrive c) promote d) plant

4. Most children feel when they meet strangers.

- a) shy b) funny c) kind d) original

5. The building is It isn't small.

- a) tiny b) massive c) personal d) sensible

Language

6. If I don't drink enough water, I a headache later.

- a) had b) will have c) having d) has

7. We to stay in a villa in France this summer.

- a) going b) 're going c) to go d) go

8. I'm thirsty. I think I'll some tea.

- a) making b) made c) makes d) make

9. If you add seven to three, you ten.
 a) gets b) are getting c) get d) got
10. She feels tired when she well.
 a) don't sleep b) doesn't sleep
 c) isn't sleeping d) wasn't sleeping

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'm going (see) Kamel tonight at the cinema.
2. You will (enjoying) the movie, it's really good.
3. How will schools be if there (be) robot teachers?
4. I (fly) to Canada next Monday at 4 p.m.
5. Is she (going) apply for that job?
6. If it (rain), the ground gets wet.
7. Sara saves money, she (buy) a new phone.
8. You will improve your skills if you (practiced) often.
9. If we (drink) water, we get thirsty.
10. If you (feeding) your pet, it feels happy.

5 Complete the following dialog:

A) Salama and Hamid are talking about their exams.

Salama : Are you ready for the science exam?

Hamid : Yes, I (1)..... . I'm studying hard.

Salama : How are you feeling about it?

Hamid : I'm feeling (2)..... about it. What about you?

Salama : I'm feeling nervous, too.

Hamid : What (3)..... the next exam?

Salama : The next exam is math.

Hamid : How (4)..... you think it will be?

Salama : I think it will be easy.

B) Samira and Walaa are talking about the pros and cons of the internet.

Samira : What do you think about the internet?

Walaa : I think it has both pros and cons.

Samira : What is the (1)..... of the internet?

Walaa : The pro of the internet is that it's easy to find information quickly.

Samira : Is there another pro?

Walaa : (2)....., there is. It helps us stay connected with friends.

Samira : What is the (3)..... of the internet?

Walaa : The con is that some information can be (4)..... .

6 MODULE

مقرر الشهور
إبريل ومايو



Unit 11

Clean transportation

Unit 12

Sustainable tourism

Module 6 Question Bank



Unit 11

CLEAN TRANSPORTATION

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading A text about clean transportation; a summary of *Around the World in Eighty Days*

Writing Tips about using clean transportation

Listening Announcements at train and bus stations

Speaking Giving directions

Language The present simple for timetables; prepositions of time, place, and movement

A Vocabulary

- قم بحراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتيان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

announcement (n)	تصريح/إعلان (لفظاً)	equipment (n)	معدات
bike lane (n)	حارة/طريق للدراجة	express service (n)	خدمة سريعة
carbon emissions (n)	انبعاثات الكربون	journey (n)	رحلة
carpooling (n)	مشاركة السيارة	motor (n)	محرك/موتور
charging station (n)	محطة شحن	platform (n)	رصيف محطة
clean fuel (n)	وقود نظيف (صديق للبيئة)	power (n)	طاقة
clean transportation (n)	وسائل النقل صديقة البيئة	produce (d) (v)	يُنتج
damage (d) (v)	يضر/يتلف	reduce (d) (v)	يقلل
electric vehicle (n)	مركبة كهربائية	relative (n)	قريب (أحد الأقارب)
electricity supply (n)	إمداد الكهرباء	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

airport (n)	مطار	piece (n)	قطعة
bus station (n)	محطة أتوبيس	possible (adj)	ممكّن
bus stop (n)	موقف أتوبيس	road works (n)	أعمال/أشغال الطرق
gentlemen (n)	السادة	road/route (n)	طريق
health problem (n)	مشكلة صحية	side (n)	جانب
ladies (n)	السيدات	type (n)	نوع
move (d) (v)	يتحرك	world (n)	عالم
oil (n)	زيت/ بترول		

Check Point

Choose and complete: airport – platform – fuel – type

- 1 The train leaves at seven p.m. from 5.
- 2 The car ran out of نفدت من in the middle of the highway.
- 3 We arrived at the two hours before our flight.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Expressions

burn	> fuel	يحرق الوقود	make	> gases	ينتج الغازات
ride	> a bike	يركب دراجة		emissions	يصدر انبعاثات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

come out of	يخرج من	due to	بسبب
get around	يتجول	on a night train	في قطار ليلي
instead of	بدلاً من		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
burn (ed) يحرق	burnt	burnt	mean يعني	meant	meant
get to يصل إلى	got to	got to	ride (دراجة) يركب	rode	ridden

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
arrive	يصل	leave	يترك/يفادر
normal	عادي	abnormal	غير عادي

Check Point

Choose and complete: of – ride – in – abnormal – burnt

- Amira learned to a bike when she was five years old.
- Let's eat pizza instead pasta tonight.
- Ola her hand on the hot stove.
- It's normal to feel nervous before a test. The opposite of "normal" is ".....".

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعبيرات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.

Places

أماكن

Akhmim	أخميم (في سوهاج)	Marsa Alam	مرسى علم
Nakuru	ناكورو (في كينيا)	Lake Oloidon	بحيرة أوليدون (في كينيا)
Nairobi	نيروبي	Kenya	كينيا

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
إما ... أو ...

1 either ... or

- Your vehicle needs to be **either** electric **or** use clean fuel.

2 much less ... than

أقل بكثير من

تُستخدم للمقارنة بين شيئين، لإظهار أن أحدهما لديه كمية أو مستوى أقل بكثير من الآخر

- We will use **much less** oil every day **than** we do now.

3 as much ... as possible

قدر الإمكان

- We should use **as much** clean transportation **as possible**.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions

التعريفات

bike lane	حارة/طريق للدراجة	an area on the side of the road that's only for people riding bikes
carbon emissions	انبعاثات الكربون	dangerous gases that cars make when they burn fuel
carpooling	مشاركة السيارة	when you travel in someone else's car or take someone with you in your car
charging station	محطة شحن	a place or piece of equipment for giving electric motors in cars more power
clean fuel	وقود نظيف	something you put in your car to give it power that doesn't damage the environment very much
electric vehicle	مركبة كهربائية	a car that gets all or most of its power from electricity


Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
equip (v) يعد/يجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	equipment (n) معدات
electric (adj) كهربائي	-ity	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	electricity (n) كهرباء

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: Lesson 1: How does clean transportation work?

- Why do you think cars cause problems to the environment?

 **Read and listen to the text about clean transportation. Match the sub-headings (a-d) with the correct paragraphs (1-4).**

SB page 56

Clean transportation

(1) c) The problem

Driving cars is very bad for the environment. About 23% of all the world's carbon **emissions**⁽¹⁾ come from cars. **Vehicles**⁽²⁾ that aren't **electric**⁽³⁾ and don't use clean **fuel**⁽⁴⁾ damage the environment and cause health problems.



(2) a) What if I can't buy a new car?

Use as much clean transportation as possible. Clean transportation is anything you use to get around that **produces**⁽⁵⁾ less carbon emissions than **normal**⁽⁶⁾ cars.

(3) d) Does this mean I can't drive a car?

You can still do that, but your vehicle needs to be either electric or use clean fuel. Electric vehicles are cars that you connect to the **electricity supply**⁽⁷⁾ at a **charging station**⁽⁸⁾ and that gives the car the **power**⁽⁹⁾ it needs to move. Using electricity means that no dangerous carbon emissions come out of the car when you drive it. By 2030, there will be so many electric vehicles that we will use much less oil every day than we do now.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| (1) انبعاثات | (2) مركبات |
| (3) كهربى | (4) وقود |
| (5) ينتج | (6) عادى |
| (7) إمداد الكهرباء | (8) محطة شحن |
| (9) قوة/طاقة | (10) مشاركة السيارة |

(4) b) The solution

You can still use clean transportation. Find out if you can travel by train, bus or bike instead of by car and do that if you can. More and more town and cities now have bike lanes to make it easier for people to ride their bikes. If you really need to travel by car, try **carpooling**⁽¹⁰⁾. Find a friend or relative who wants to go to the same place as you and ask if you can drive there with them. Carpooling can reduce the number of cars on the roads by about 20%, which help lower carbon emissions.

Comprehension Skills

Extract information:

استخراج المعلومات:

- عليك قراءة السؤال جيداً والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيداً ثم العودة للنص.

Example:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية (خاص بالقطعة السابقة)


What does carpooling help to reduce?

- Carpooling helps to reduce the number of cars on the roads by about 20%, so it reduces carbon emissions by 20% too.

Pre-reading question:

- How often do you travel by train or bus? Where do you travel to?

Lesson 2: The next bus

 Read the information about four journeys by bus or train. Write the numbers for the journeys with the statements.

SB page 58

(d) This is a journey on a night train.

① Cairo → Aswan train

Cairo, 19.35 →

Luxor 06.35 → Aswan 09.45

Platform 7

(a) This is the shortest bus journey.

② Bus from Sohag to
Akhmim 6 a.m., 6.30 a.m.,
and then every hour until
5.30 p.m.

Sohag bus station,
platform 2

Journey time: 15 minutes

(c) This is a journey from an
airport.

③ Hurghada airport to
Marsa Alam bus
5.10 a.m., 6.10 a.m.,
7.30 a.m., 9.00 a.m.,
and 11.15 a.m.

Journey time: 4
hours, 10 minutes.

Bus stop: 1A

(b) This train journey only
has one stop.

④ Alexandria → Cairo train
Alexandria 11 a.m. →
Cairo 1 p.m.
Alexandria 12 p.m. →
Cairo 2 p.m.
Alexandria 1 p.m. →
Cairo 3 p.m.
Platform 2

Post-reading questions:

① Which platform does the train from Alexandria to Cairo leave from?

② How long does the bus journey take from Hurghada airport to Marsa Alam?

Pre-listening question:

- What do you think of travelling by train?



Lesson 2: The next bus

Listen to announcements at train and bus stations about the four journeys in Exercise 2.

SB page 58

Man 1 Ladies⁽¹⁾ and Gentlemen⁽²⁾. The train on platform⁽³⁾ 5 is the train from Cairo to Aswan. This train leaves at 19:35 and arrives in Luxor at 6:35 and in Aswan at 9:45.



Woman 2 The next bus from Sohag to Akhmim leaves from platform 2 at 6:30 this morning. The next bus after that leaves at 7:30. The 6:30 bus arrives in Akhmim at 6:55 due to road works⁽⁴⁾ on the route⁽⁵⁾.

Man 2 The next bus from Hurghada Airport to Marsa Alam comes into the airport at 5 o'clock. Then it leaves the airport at 5:10. The bus doesn't leave from the bus stop 1A anymore, it leaves from bus stop 2B.



Woman 2 The next train on platform 2 is the 11 o'clock service from Alexandria to Cairo. This train is the express service⁽⁶⁾ and it takes two hours.

(1) السيدات

(2) السادة

(3) رصيف محطة

(4) أعمال الطرق

(5) طريق

(6) خدمة سريعة

Post-listening questions:

1 When does the bus from Sohag to Akhmim leave?

2 How long does the train from Alexandria to Cairo take?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. My mom wants to buy new for the kitchen.
a) power b) equipment c) motor d) vehicle
2. Reducing carbon is important for the environment.
a) emissions b) platforms c) lanes d) stations
3. There is a near the airport for electric vehicles.
a) clean transportation b) charging station
c) health problem d) carpooling
4. Fatma enjoys cycling in the bike to avoid traffic.
a) platform b) station c) lane d) airport
5. It's important to use clean for our cars to reduce pollution.
a) supply b) fuel c) electricity d) lanes
6. Omar took photos of the mountains on his train
a) flight b) cycling c) voyage d) journey
7. The electric car is a car that gets its from electricity.
a) power b) oil c) piece d) timetable
8. My dad loves to get and visit new places.
a) with b) around c) out of d) in
9. Some factories gases that pollute the air.
a) move b) do c) make d) ride
10. A/An is a message made to tell people about something.
a) journey b) station
c) supply d) announcement

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

resources – problems – electric – relatives – produce

Clean transportation is important for reducing carbon emissions and protecting the environment. Using an (1) car powered by a charging station is great, as it doesn't (2) harmful gases. Bike lanes on roads make cycling a safe and healthy choice, they help to avoid health (3) caused by pollution. Carpooling with (4) also reduces damage to the environment. These changes protect the planet.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Carbon emissions that come cars are dangerous.
a) away b) out of c) into d) in
2. Cars need fuel that gives them the power they need to
a) pour b) move c) drive d) burn
3. Kareem missed his bus because he arrived too late at the bus
a) vehicle b) platform c) stop d) equipment
4. Some people ride their bikes to work instead driving their cars.
a) of b) at c) from d) out
5. Cars fuel to move. This produces pollution to the environment.
a) pour b) reduce c) burn d) damage
6. Vehicles that don't use clean fuel the environment.
a) reduce b) produce c) help d) damage
7. They traveled to the city a night train.
a) on b) at c) in d) for
8. There was a problem with the electricity in the building.
a) supply b) vehicle c) type d) fuel
9. It is to make mistakes while learning. You should keep trying.
a) bad b) dangerous c) abnormal d) normal
10. Clean produces less carbon emissions than normal cars.
a) timetable b) platform c) transportation d) equipment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

electric – discover – platform – pavement – relax

The Cairo-Aswan night train offers a special journey for travelers. It leaves from the (1)..... at 19:35. The train travels through the night, powered by its (2)..... engine, and reaches Luxor in the early morning and Aswan by 09:45. This helps passengers (3)..... while enjoying the view of the Nile. It's a perfect service to (4)..... Egypt's history, connect modern Cairo to ancient wonders.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Present simple for timetables

المضارع البسيط مع جداول المواعيد

e.g. The train **leaves** at 9 am tomorrow.

Usage الاستخدام

The present simple is used to refer to events in the future when those events are facts because there is a clear timetable for them to happen in the future.

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للإشارة إلى الأحداث في المستقبل عندما تكون هذه الأحداث حقائق، لأن هناك جدولاً زمنياً واضحاً لحدوثها في المستقبل. وهذه المواعيد مثل: (المواصلات العامة - عروض التلفزيون والسينما والمسرح - فتح أو غلق الأماكن العامة - الخدمات العامة).

e.g. The school **starts** at 7:30 a.m.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. The school holidays **start** in June.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **(s, es, ies)** + مصدر الفعل **inf.**

e.g. The film **starts** at 8 p.m. tonight.

Negative النفي

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + **don't + inf.**

e.g. Banks **don't work** on public holidays.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **doesn't + inf.**

e.g. The museum **doesn't open** before 10 a.m.

Question السؤال

a) Yes/No question السؤال بـ «هل»

Do + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + **inf. ...?**

e.g. Do these shops **open** at nine tomorrow?

Does + he, she, it, اسم مفرد + **inf. ...?**

e.g. Does the bus to Luxor **stop** here?

b) Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. word أداة استفهام + **do** +
I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + **inf. ...?**

e.g. What time **do** the shows **start**?

Q. word أداة استفهام + **does** +
he, she, it, اسم مفرد + **inf. ...?**

e.g. When **does** the train **arrive** in Cairo?

- في حالة عدم وجود فعل نستخدم (am, is, are).

لاحظ أن:

e.g. A: What time **is** the next train?

B: The next train **is** at 7 p.m.



Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعومة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The shop (close) at 9:00 p.m. on Fridays.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (closes) لأن الفاعل مفرد والجملة تعبر عن مواعيد عامة للجمهور.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You still have enough time; the train at 9 a.m.
a) left b) leave c) leaves d) is leaving
2. School next Saturday. I am so excited.
a) starts b) is going to start
c) started d) start
3. The museum open on Mondays.
a) won't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) don't
4. What time does the first lesson.....?
a) finishes b) finish c) finished d) finishing
5. the plane fly at 9.45?
a) Does b) Do c) Are d) Is
6. The train to Alexandria at 1.30 p.m. You will wait for a few minutes.
a) gets b) got c) get d) don't get
7. When the next bus to Sohag?
a) is b) will c) does d) are
8. Look at the timetable. The concert at 7 o'clock.
a) start b) close c) is d) begin

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The course (begin) on July 10th.
2. When (do) the show end?
3. My sister's birthday (be) on Tuesday.
4. The train to Mansoura (is) at 2 p.m.; it leaves at 2.30 p.m.
5. What time does the library (closes)?
6. The music festival (end) on Monday.
7. The daily break (take) 30 minutes as usual.
8. (Is) the ship leave at 8 a.m. or 9 a.m.?
9. The buses (not/run) after midnight. We should travel by train.
10. When do the school buses (picks) up students in the morning?



1. Speaking

Asking about future timetables

السؤال عن جداول مواعيد في المستقبل

Situation

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

Response

جملة الرد

← online



When does the train to Sohag arrive?

متى سيصل القطار إلى سوهاج؟

The train to Sohag arrives at 10 a.m.

سيصل القطار إلى سوهاج في العاشرة صباحاً.



Which platform does the train leave from?

من أي رصيف سيغادر القطار؟

The train leaves from platform 5.

سيغادر القطار من الرصيف رقم ٥.



What time does the lesson end?

متى ستنتهي الحصة؟

The lesson ends at 2 p.m.

ستنتهي الحصة الساعة الثانية مساءً.



When is the next lesson?

ما موعد الحصة التالية؟

The next lesson is at eleven o'clock.

الحصة التالية في تمام الحادية عشرة.



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► **Nadia and her mom are going to travel to Tanta.**

Nadia : How are we going to travel to Tanta, Mom?

Mom : We are traveling by (1).....

Nadia : (2)..... time does the train leave?

Mom : The train to Tanta leaves at 11:30 a.m.

Nadia : When does it arrive?

Mom : It (3)..... at 1:00 p.m.

Nadia : Which (4)..... does it leave from?

Mom : It leaves from platform 3.



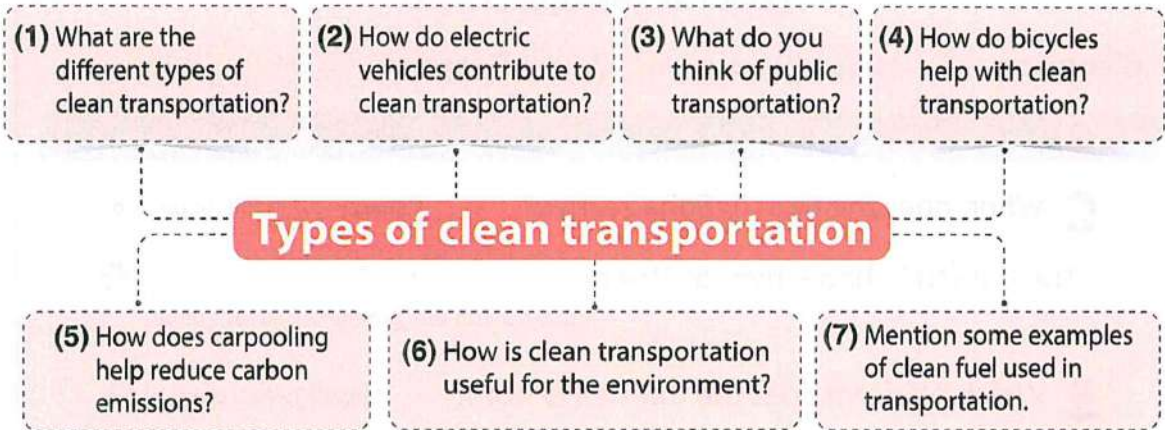
2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about clean transportation

كيفية الكتابة عن وسائل المواصلات النظيفة



Example

"Clean transportation"

Clean transportation can help the environment in many ways. Electric vehicles, such as cars and buses, help reduce pollution because they don't use the normal fuel. Public transportation like buses and trains can carry many people, which helps reduce the number of cars on the road. Bikes are also a great option for short trips and do not produce any emissions. Carpooling allows people to use the same car, which reduces the number of vehicles. Clean transportation helps improve air quality and reduce carbon emissions. All these ways help protect our planet and keep the air clean.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"Forms of clean transportation"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 11 Lessons (1 & 2)

Scan & listen



1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1. What percentage of carbon emissions come from cars?
a) 10%. b) 15%. c) 23%. d) 30%.
2. What type of vehicles damage the environment?
a) Electric. b) Gas.
c) Non-electric. d) Solar-powered.
3. What should be used instead of dirty fuel?
a) Water. b) Clean fuel. c) Coal. d) Gas.

(B) Listen and complete:

4. Driving cars is for the environment.
5. Clean fuel produces fewer and is better for the environment.
6. Carbon emissions the air.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Celia checked the bus before leaving to know the time of trips.
a) timetable b) platform c) fuel d) express
2. The government الحكومة is improving the systems to reduce traffic.
a) transportation b) platform c) emission d) station

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

reduces – produces – lanes – on – carpooling

To help protect the environment, you can use clean transportation like electric trains, buses, or bikes instead of cars. Many cities have bike (1) now. If you need to travel by car, try (2) with a friend or relative. It can reduce the number of cars (3) the roads. It also (4) carbon emissions by 20%.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Eid Al Fitr after Ramadan.
a) will come b) come c) coming d) comes
2. That isn't right; the train to Aswan from platform 3; let's move to platform 5.
a) leaving b) leaves
c) don't leave d) doesn't leave

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Our meeting (be) on Tuesdays.
2. The match (begin) at 4:00 pm tomorrow.
3. (Is) the plane arrive at the airport at 6:00 pm?
4. Which platform does the train to Luxor (leaves) from?

6 Complete the following dialog:

Nader and Anas are planning to visit the museum.

Nader : Hi Anas, would you like to visit the museum tomorrow?

Anas : Yes, it's a good idea. When (1)..... it open?

Nader : It (2)..... at 9:00. How about going there by metro?

Anas : That's a good idea.

Nader : What time does the first metro train leave?

Anas : The first metro train (3)..... at 8 am.

Nader : How (4)..... does it take to get to the station?

Anas : It takes half an hour to get to the station.

7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Clean transportation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't think the mall (open) tomorrow.
2. Why (not) the park open on 28th October?
3. The train to Aswan and the train to Luxor (leaving) at 6:23 am.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

across (adv)	عبر	green city (n)	مدينة خضراء (خالية من التلوث)
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	green energy (n)	طاقة نظيفة
charge (d) (v) (with)	يشحن (بـ)	green spaces (n)	مساحات خضراء
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	resources (n)	موارد
climate positive (n)	صديقة للمناخ	running path (n)	مسار الجري
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	planner (n)	مخطط المدينة

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

daily life (n)	الحياة اليومية	size (n)	حجم
rank (ed) (v)	يصنف/يرتب	the Earth (n)	الكرة الأرضية
sports center (n)	مركز رياضي	tunnel (n)	نفق
extra (adv)	إضافي	order (n)	طلب/أمر

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: extra – cross – special – expect

- 1 We to finish the project by the end of the month.
- 2 The teacher gave us homework today.
- 3 We should the bridge to get to the other side.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

ask for/give >	directions يطلب/يعطى الاتجاهات	turn >	right/ left	ينعطف يمينًا/يسارًا
be >	welcome (to) مُرحب به/مدعو (لـ)	have >	a look	يلقي نظرة
do >	exercise يقوم بتمارين رياضية	keep >	farm animals going	يربي حيوانات المزرعة يستمر في التقدم
go >	straight ahead يذهب للأمام مباشرة	take >	a right/left	يتجه يمينًا/يسارًا
	right/ left يذهب يمينًا/يسارًا		the first right/ left	يأخذ أول يمين/يسار

التعبيرات اللغوية

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at least	على الأقل	on the ring road	على الطريق الدائري
to the east of	إلى الشرق من	the rest of	الباقى من
along the road	على طول الطريق	according to	طبقاً لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.
cut down	يقطع	cut down

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
clear	واضح	unclear	غير واضح	loudly	بصوت عالٍ	quietly	بهدهوء
different	مختلف	similar	مشابه	polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب

Check Point

Choose and complete: cut – to – at – impolite – have

- Let's a look at this beautiful painting.
- They need to the trees down to clear the land for construction.
- It's important to be polite to everyone. You shouldn't be

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للتعريفات اللغوية
وحروف الجر
وتصريفات الأفعال
والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة
والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Definitions

التعريفات

across the street	عبر الشارع	on the other side of the street
cross the road	يعبر الطريق	walk from one side of the road to the other
keep going	يستمر في التقدم	continue walking or driving one way
straight ahead	للأمام مباشرة	in one direction – no left or right
take the first right/left	يأخذ أول يمين/يسار	to turn right/left the next time there is a street on your right/left

B Reading & Listening Skills



Lesson 3: Giving directions

Pre-listening question:

- What will you do if you want to go a new place?

Listen to three conversations where people ask for and give directions.

Match the conversations (1–3) with the sentences (a–c).

SB page 60

Narrator: Conversation 1

Woman Excuse me, do you know the way to the **museum**⁽¹⁾?

Man Hmm, I think so, but I'm not sure. It could be a good idea to cross the road here. No, wait a minute, don't do that. Stay on this **side**⁽²⁾ of the road. Take a left, then walk along the road and go right after that.

Woman Thank you.



(1) متحف

(2) جانب

(3) مستقيم

(4) مكان ما

(5) مبانى

Narrator: Conversation 2

Woman Excuse me, could you tell me the way to the museum?

Man Yes, sure. Keep going **straight**⁽³⁾ ahead along this road until you see a big supermarket on your left. Then cross the road there, keep going for about 200 metres and then take the first left. After that, keep going straight ahead for about 300 metres and you'll see the museum in front of you.

Woman Thank you very much.

Narrator: Conversation 3

Woman Hello, I'm looking for the museum. Do you know where it is?

Man Hmm, no, sorry. No idea.

Woman Oh, OK, I thought it was **somewhere**⁽⁴⁾ near to here, but I'm really not sure.

Man Cross the road and have a look over there. There are lots of **buildings**⁽⁵⁾ on that side of the street.


Woman OK.

Post-listening question:

- Summarise the description of conversation 2 in 3 sentences.

Pre-reading question:

- What can we do to make our city greener?

 Read and listen to the text. Complete the fact file.

Lesson 4: Green cities

SB page 62

New Egyptian cities for the future

People started planning green cities for the future in Egypt in the 2010s. Today, there are many plans to build new green cities in Egypt. In fact, we call these new places cities, but most of them are small places with an area of about 580 kilometers, for example. This means that they're more like villages than big cities like Cairo. The **planners**⁽¹⁾ want these new cities to be small because that makes it easier for people to travel around them without driving cars.

The streets of these new cities will be quiet and clean. No cars can go into the center of the cities, so you won't hear any noise from cars or breathe any dirty air. People can only drive their cars on the **ring road**⁽²⁾

that goes all around each city. Nobody can drive through the city. There will be charging stations at different places along the road for people to charge their **electric vehicles**⁽³⁾. The cities will also have **bike lanes**⁽⁴⁾ and **running paths**⁽⁵⁾, which will be up to 12 kilometers long, so that people can do exercise or travel around without producing any **carbon emissions**⁽⁶⁾.

The new green cities will also have many green spaces with grass, trees, and plants. Some of these green spaces will be community gardens. In a community garden, everyone in the city is welcome to come in, enjoy themselves, and grow things.

What will be extra special about these new cities is that the people and buildings in each city will only use green energy generated in that city. Each city will produce enough energy for up to 10,000 homes and around 35,000 people will be able to live in one of these green cities. Of course, there will be schools, hospitals, sports centers, and other facilities that people need, too.

The cities are also special because the people who live there will put new trees into the ground when they cut trees down. They will also make all their own food by growing fruit and vegetables in the city and keeping farm animals there. When a city only uses the green energy it makes, and the people in the city grow all their own food, we say that the city is "**climate positive**"⁽⁷⁾. This means that it isn't doing anything to damage the Earth.



- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| (1) المخططون | (2) طريق دائري |
| (3) مركبات كهربائية | (4) ممرات الدراجات |
| (5) مسارات الجري | (6) انبعاثات الكربون |
| (7) صديقة للمناخ | |

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar wanted to play football, so he went to the sports
a) space b) center c) museum d) tunnel
2. Sahar is a/an girl. She always helps and respects others.
a) impolite b) polite c) clear d) unclear
3. We should protect our natural They are very important.
a) museums b) buildings c) planners d) resources
4. If you want to get to the library, a left at the traffic light.
a) take b) turn c) go d) walk
5. The waiter took our and went to the kitchen.
a) road b) order c) resource d) energy
6. Many families in the countryside farm animals like cows and chickens.
a) charge b) feel c) expect d) keep
7. The teacher a look at the student's homework and evaluated it.
a) had b) did c) turned d) crossed
8. Nada didn't to see me at the party. It was a surprise.
a) build b) come c) expect d) turn
9. The doctor asked him to slowly and try to calm down.
a) breathe b) grow c) have d) need
10. Go ahead until you see the bank. Then, turn right.
a) there b) over c) extra d) straight

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

on – charging – positive – at – spaces

Nexgen, is a green city that will look very different to the rest of Cairo. Cars cannot go into the city center and will only drive (1)..... the ring road, with (2)..... stations located along the road. The city will have many green (3)....., powered by green energy, and the people will grow their food on the ground. It will be a truly climate (4)..... community.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our city has an exciting running for people who like to do sports.
a) path b) bath c) pass d) piece
2. the road, then take a left and you'll see the museum in front of you.
a) Go b) Keep c) Cross d) Turn
3. My uncle has an electric car and he usually it in the evening.
a) explains b) charges c) continues d) changes
4. Mona walked the street to get to the other side.
a) a long b) straight c) cross d) across
5. Walk along the road and right after that.
a) go b) take c) leave d) cross
6. In the new city, people can do exercise or travel around without producing any emissions.
a) carbon b) oxygen c) water d) sound
7. After that, going straight ahead for about 300 meters.
a) take b) walk c) cross d) keep
8. I directions to the tourist who couldn't find the museum.
a) took b) asked for c) kept d) gave
9. The metro goes through a long under the river.
a) center b) tunnel c) ground d) bridge
10. Everyone in the city is to come to the sports center and enjoy our activities.
a) helpful b) welcome c) polite d) clear

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

imagine – along – planners – eco-friendly – a long

One day, a family visited a green city famous for its green spaces and clean energy. They walked (1) a running path and admired how the city uses green energy to protect the Earth. The children were excited to (2) living in a world full of climate-positive cities. The mother explained that (3) used different material and resources to reduce pollution. They could make the city more (4)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Prepositions of time, place, and movement

حروف الجر الخاصة بالزمان والمكان والحركة

1 Prepositions of Time

حروف الجر الخاصة بالزمان

Prepositions	Usage	Examples
in	months الشهور / years السنوات	in January, in 2024
	centuries القرون / decades العقود	in the 20 th century, in the 1990s
	periods of the day فترات اليوم	in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening
	longer periods فترات طويلة	in summer, in the past, in the future
	future timeframes زمن مستقبل	in a few days, in a year, in two hours
on	specific days أيام محددة	on Monday, on New Year's Day, on the weekend
	dates التواريخ	on October 11 th , on 21 st May
	special occasions مناسبات خاصة	on Christmas Eve, on my wedding day
at	specific times الساعات/أوقات محددة	at 6:00 pm, at midnight, at night, at noon, at sunset
	festivals مهرجانات	at Christmas, at Easter
	expressions تعبيرات	at the moment, at present, at the weekend



Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعومة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My birthday is (in) October 1st, 1985.
- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (on) لأن بعدها تاريخاً كاملاً.
- I usually have my lunch (on) 4 p.m.
- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (at) لأن بعدها وقتاً محدداً (ساعة).

2 Prepositions of Place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Prepositions	Usage	Examples
in	enclosed spaces المساحات المغلقة	in a room, in a box, in a bag, in the car
	countries دول / cities مدن / regions مناطق	in Egypt, in London, in Mountain Region
	large areas مساحات كبيرة	in the park, in the mountains
	abstract locations المواقع المجردة	in a book, in a photograph, in the picture
on	surfaces الأسطح	on the table, on the wall, on the floor
	specific areas مناطق محددة	on the island, on the bus, on the corner
	streets and roads الشوارع والطرق	on Elm Street, on the highway, on Main Street
	media وسائل الإعلام / devices الأجهزة	on the internet, on TV, on my laptop

at	specific points نقاط محددة	at the bus stop, at the entrance
	buildings مباني / addresses العناوين	at the library, at 123 Ali Street, at the café
	events الأحداث / locations المواقع	at a concert, at school, at a meeting



Got it ?

تمتلك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 There is a lamp (in) the table.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (on) لأنها تأتي مع الأسطح.

2 My friend Basel lives (on) Luxor.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (in) لأنها تأتي مع المدن.

3

Prepositions of Movement

حروف الجر الخاصة بالحركة

Prepositions	Usage	Examples
across	الحركة من جهة إلى أخرى	- They swam across the river.
along	الحركة بطول خط أو مسار	- We walked along the beach.
around	الحركة في مسار دائري	- They walked around the park.
into	الحركة من الخارج إلى نقطة في الداخل	- He walked into the room.
off	الحركة بعيداً عن السطح	- He fell off the bike.
onto	الحركة نحو السطح	- The cat jumped onto the table.
out of	الحركة من الداخل إلى الخارج	- She ran out of the house.
over	الحركة فوق شيء ما، وغالباً ما تعبره	- The bird flew over the lake.
past	الحركة وراء شيء أو المرور بجانبه	- We walked past the old library.
through	الحركة في مكان محدود من طرف إلى آخر	- The car drove through the tunnel.
to	يشير إلى الاتجاه نحو جهة الوصول	- She is going to the market.
towards	الحركة في اتجاه شيء وليس بالضرورة الوصول إليه.	- She walked towards the hill.
under	الحركة أسفل شيء ما	- The dog walked under the fence.



Got it ?

تمتلك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 The cat tried to go (into) the window to chase the bird.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (out of) لأن الحركة يجب أن تكون من الداخل (المنزل) إلى الخارج.

2 Salma is traveling (over) Aswan next Monday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (to) لأنها تشير إلى جهة الوصول (أسوان).

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The next Club World Cup is in the USA 2025.
a) at b) on c) in d) by
2. Mariam goes to the gym the evening.
a) in b) on c) at d) for
3. Omar escaped a door in the back of the building.
a) through b) across c) over d) on
4. I'm going to meet you in the club seven p.m.
a) on b) at c) from d) in
5. We don't go to school Fridays.
a) of b) at c) in d) on
6. I walked the road to the company to look at the shop windows.
a) a way b) away c) along d) a long
7. What do you like to do the weekend?
a) in b) to c) up d) on
8. I never meet my father lunch time. He is always at work then.
a) at b) in c) on d) of

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. Your shoes are (over) the table. Pick them up.
2. Lara's birthday is (at) 6th June.
3. They are going to travel (at) three weeks.
4. Dalal was born (in) October 12th, 1990.
5. I live (in) Adly Street.
6. Do you like to live (in) a busy road?
7. I talk to my mother (at) the phone every day.
8. Don't make noise (out) the classroom.
9. A plane flew (under) the mountains, heading to the airport.
10. The students ran (into) the classroom when the bell rang.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We took a boat the river. We went to the other side.
a) across b) over c) under d) onto
- It wasn't dark when I drove Al Azhar tunnel.
a) through b) out c) away d) of
- There is a bridge the river in the small town.
a) under b) beside c) over d) behind
- The little boy fell the chair and started crying.
a) over b) to c) off d) on
- Don't drop rubbish the river.
a) from b) into c) out d) with
- I'm proud to know that this mobile is made Egypt.
a) in b) on c) at d) from
- There is some food this bag.
a) by b) at c) on d) in
- Amr and Fady went the shop to buy that shirt.
a) up b) into c) round d) out of

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The picture is (in) the wall.
- We study many subjects (in) school.
- I saw a good movie (in) TV last night.
- Do you have a shower (in) night?
- Everyone (on) the city is welcome to come in.
- Was there electricity (on) the 1800s?
- Hamza heard some bad news (in) the radio.
- We will meet (at) the middle of next month.
- Shaza swam (along) the lake to reach the other side.
- Manal walked (past) the bus stop, hoping to catch the next bus.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Speaking

Asking for and giving directions

السؤال عن وإعطاء الاتجاهات

1 Asking for directions:

السؤال عن الاتجاهات:

- **How do I go to/get to + (المكان) ?**

كيف أصل إلى + (المكان) ؟

e.g. How do I get to the Egyptian Museum, please?

- **Where is + (المكان) ?**

أين + (المكان) ؟

e.g. Where is the post office, please?

- **Can you tell me the way to + (المكان) ?**

هل يمكنك أن تخبرني الطريق إلى + (المكان) ؟

e.g. Can you tell me the way to the bank, please?

2 Giving directions:

إعطاء الاتجاهات:

- **Take** a left, then **walk** along the road and **go** right after that.

- اتخذ جهة اليسار، ثم امش بطول الطريق واذهب يميناً بعد ذلك.

- **Cross** the road and **have** a look over there.

- اعبّر الطريق وألق نظرة هناك.

- **Keep** going straight ahead for about 300 meters and you'll see the museum in front of you.

- استمر في التقدم للأمام لحوالي ٣٠٠ متر وسترى المتحف أمامك.

لاحظ



- عند إعطاء الاتجاهات نبدأ بمصدر الفعل (inf.)

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► **A man is asking Samy how to get to the bank.**

Man : Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the bank, please?

Samy : Yes, of (1)..... . It isn't far.

Man : (2)..... do I get there?

Samy : To go there, walk along the road and go right after that.

Man : Did you say go right?

Samy : Yes, I did. Go right! It's (3)..... the corner.

Man : OK ... right. (4)..... it near the bus stop?

Samy : Yes, it is. It's near the bus stop.



2. Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة
فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about a city for the future.

كيفية الكتابة عن مدينة للمستقبل



Example

"A future city"

A city for the future will have new technology and smart buildings to make life easier. People will travel in electric cars, buses, and bikes. There will be lots of green spaces, like parks and gardens, for people to enjoy. The buildings will be tall and use clean energy. The city will be good for the environment with less pollution. People will live in comfortable homes with modern facilities. Schools and hospitals will have the best technology. The future city will stay clean and safe with good planning. It will be a wonderful place to live in.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"Life in the future"

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should all use more green to keep the planet healthy.

a) size

b) path

c) energy

d) tunnel

2. Yasmin her laptop while she was working.

a) turned

b) charged

c) imagined

d) logged

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

climate – protect – paths – pass – energy

Imagine living in a green city where you can breathe fresh air and walk along green spaces every day. The city is powered by green (1), and all the buildings are (2) positive. There are no cars with loud noise. People cross the roads safely on running (3) Town planners have made this city a special place, using specific plans to (4) the environment.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is building new cities to prepare for the future. These cities are modern, clean, and designed to help people live better lives. One of the most famous projects is the New Administrative Capital, which will have smart technologies, wide streets, and green spaces. Another example is New Alamein City, located on the Mediterranean coast, offering beautiful views and modern facilities. These cities aim to reduce overcrowding in older cities and provide more jobs. They also include schools, hospitals, and entertainment areas. The government focuses on making them suitable for families. These cities are part of Egypt's vision to improve its economy and create a better life for its people.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. These cities aim to overcrowding in older cities.

a) design

b) increase

c) raise

d) reduce

2. The government focuses on making the new cities for families.

a) suitable

b) hurried

c) horrible

d) quickly

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?
4. Where is New Alamein City located?
5. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
6. Would you like to live in one of these cities? Why/ Why not?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They walk the desert to enjoy trekking.
a) through b) onto c) across d) over
2. I like to listen to music the morning.
a) on b) from c) at d) in

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We're going (along) the tunnel now. Everything will go dark. SB
2. I just saw Bassem dive (out) the pool. SB
3. My friends and I always go out (at) Friday nights.
4. There is a cup (in) the table.

6 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Cities in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.



Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What time did you arrive (in) the airport?
2. We had a picnic in the park (on last) Saturday.
3. He will wait (at) three o'clock to four.
4. I put my watch on (TV).

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	excerpt (n)	مقتطف/اقتباس
chapter (n)	فصل (من كتاب)	novel (n)	رواية
character (n)	شخصية	organize (d) (v)	ينظم
cheer (ed) (v)	يهتف	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
chess (n)	شطرنج	popular (adj)	شائع/محبوب
colonel (n)	عقيد (في الجيش)	railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد
council (n)	مجلس	tips (n)	نصائح
crash (ed) (v)	يتحطم/يصطدم	version (n)	إصدار/نسخة

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

bridge (n)	كوبرى/جسر	nearby (adj/adv)	مجاور/بالقرب من
describe (d) (v)	يصف	mile (n)	ميل
driver (n)	سائق	rail tracks (n)	مسارات السكك الحديدية
event (n)	حدث	seat (n)	مقعد
Frenchman (n)	رجل فرنسي	ship (n)	سفينة
happiness (n)	سعادة	summarize (d) (v)	يلخص

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: century – seats – ships – council

- When I got on the bus, I found all the busy.
- Ola is studying history from the 19th
- The city met to discuss the new project.

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

create > a page	ينشئ صفحة	shake > hands	يصافح
make > a journey	يقوم برحلة	take > a risk	يأخذ المخاطرة

التعبيرات اللغوية

Prepositions

agree to	يوافق على	behind	خلف
all around the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	shout with	يصيح بـ
angry with	غاضب مع	look back	ينظر إلى الوراء

حروف الجر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
fall into يقع في داخل	fell into	fallen into	shake يهز/يرج	shook	shaken

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
at first في البداية	at last في النهاية	get on يركب	get off ينزل
busy مزدحم/مشغول	free فارغ	strong قوى	weak ضعيف

Check Point

Choose and complete: free – weak – with – take

- 1 Fatma was angry her brother for breaking her toy.
- 2 She decided to a risk and start her own business.
- 3 The wind is very strong today. The opposite of "strong" is ".....".

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتمييزات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 stop + مفعول + from + (inf. + ing)

يمنع ... من

- The city council should stop cars from polluting the green cities.

2 six-hour walk

لاحظ عدم جمع كلمة hour لأنها هنا صفة للاسم walk

- This was a six-hour walk.

المشي لمدة 6 ساعات

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions

التعريفات

suddenly فجأة	something that happens quickly or isn't expected
railway line خط سكة حديد	two metal lines that a train travels on
passenger راكب/مسافر	a person who is traveling on a bus, train, ship, or plane
cross (a bridge) يعبر	to travel from one side to another
cheer يهتف	to shout with happiness
excerpt مقتطف/ اقتباس	a short piece of a story


Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
happy (adj) سعيد	-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	happiness (n) سعادة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

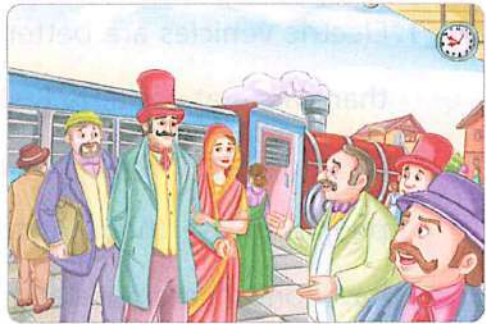
- Would you like to travel around the world? Why?

 Read and listen to an excerpt from *Around the World in Eighty Days*. What was the problem? What was the solution?

SB page 64

Chapter 9

The next day, Aouda saw Colonel⁽¹⁾ Stamp Proctor on the train. She was afraid that he might be angry with Phileas Fogg if they met because of the fight that the two men had in San Francisco. She told Fix and Passepartout. They knew they must stop Fogg and Colonel Proctor from meeting. Fix asked Phileas Fogg to play a game of chess⁽²⁾. He agreed and soon Fogg and Fix were playing chess all day.



Suddenly the train stopped. There were no stations nearby⁽³⁾ and at first no one knew why.

'It's the bridge at Medicine Bow a mile up the railway line⁽⁴⁾', the train driver said. 'It's not strong enough to take this train.'

(1) عقيد

(2) شطرنج

(3) مجاور / بالقرب من

(4) خط سكة حديد

(5) الركاب

(6) ينزل

(7) رجل فرنسي

(8) هتف

He said that the passengers⁽⁵⁾ could walk to Medicine Bow. This was a six-hour walk. The passengers were not happy.

At last the train driver decided to try to cross the bridge. 'If I drive the train as fast as possible, perhaps we will cross the bridge safely,' he said.

The passengers were very excited and they agreed to his plan. Passepartout was worried. He said that the passengers should get off⁽⁶⁾ the train before it tried to cross the bridge, but no one listened to the Frenchman⁽⁷⁾.


The train went very fast over the bridge. When they crossed it safely, all the passengers cheered⁽⁸⁾. When they looked back, they saw the bridge falling into the river behind them.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why did the train suddenly stop?
- 2 What happened to the bridge after they crossed?
- 3 What did the train driver decide to do to try to cross the bridge safely?

Pre-reading question:

- What should we do to help our planet?

 **Read and listen to the tips text. Make notes on the things that the writer wants more or less of in your notebook.**

SB page 66

Tips for reducing carbon emissions from transportation

1. Electric vehicles are better for the environment than cars that use **dirty fuel**⁽¹⁾, but we need more **charging stations**⁽²⁾ in our town so it's easier for people to use them. At the moment, we only have one charging station and it isn't in the town center. The town should have ten charging stations.



(1) وقود ملوث

(2) محطات الشحن

(3) مجلس المدينة

2. Traveling by bike is good for the environment, but it can be dangerous on the busy roads in our town. The town should have bike lanes on Rankin Street and School Road. When people feel safe enough to ride their bikes, they won't drive their cars so often.

3. The **town council**⁽³⁾ should help people to organize carpooling. It could create a page on its website for people to share information about when they have a free seat in their car for a journey. More carpooling means fewer cars.

Post-reading questions:

1 Why do we need more charging stations in our town?

2 What should the town do to encourage cycling?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The train runs on rail all the way to the city.
a) tricks b) bricks c) brakes d) tracks
2. Our teacher gave us some on how to study better.
a) taps b) tops c) types d) tips
3. The car was coming so fast and it into the tree.
a) shook b) created c) crashed d) crossed
4. I read an amazing by Naguib Mahfouz.
a) century b) song c) novel d) council
5. You have to cross the before you reach the village.
a) bike b) plane c) excerpt d) bridge
6. Layla wants to a page for her art project online.
a) do b) shake c) create d) take
7. My father agreed my opinion of going to Al-Azhar Park.
a) of b) to c) for d) about
8. A is a person who is traveling on a bus, train, ship, or plane.
a) messenger b) passenger c) character d) volunteer
9. I think the new of the game is better than the old one.
a) event b) excerpt c) version d) tip
10. This restaurant is with tourists. They always have their meals there.
a) popular b) nearby c) afraid d) excited

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cheered – take – characters – into – shared

Phileas Fogg and his friends were on a long journey across the railway line. At first, the (1) were excited, but after a while they felt worried. The train stopped near a bridge. The bridge wasn't strong enough. However, the driver decided to (2) a risk and cross the bridge quickly. The passengers (3) when the train safely crossed the bridge, and they looked back to see it fall (4) the river.

Time to Practice




1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Fix asked Phileas Fogg to play a game of
a) line b) ship c) chess d) boat
2. The bridge is not enough for the train to cross over.
a) weak b) strong c) free d) busy
3. The teacher asked us to the story in our own words.
a) summarize b) crash c) cheer d) shake
4. Liza organized the very well; everyone had a great time.
a) event b) excerpt c) chapter d) novel
5. I saw a car into the river because of the accident.
a) getting b) looking c) falling d) agreeing
6. Khalid finished reading the final of the novel last week.
a) event b) scene c) colonel d) chapter
7. A/An is a short piece of a story.
a) novel b) version c) chess d) excerpt
8. The passengers got the train when they came to their station.
a) off b) on c) into d) in
9. The main in the novel is very brave.
a) lesson b) character c) excerpt d) century
10. I went to the art show and saw a painting from the 18th
a) century b) event c) version d) council

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

organize – railway – tracks – popular – councils

In the 19th century, people traveled across the world on ships, exploring new places. Colonels helped protect (1) lines, and passengers used busy trains for long journeys. City (2) worked to build bridges and (3) events to help communities. Public transport became (4), with many people using it daily. This time was important for connecting places and improving lives.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 

C Language

استخدام ضمائر الفاعل لتجنب التكرار Using subject pronouns to avoid repetition

e.g. • Waleed is a doctor. **He** works in a hospital.

Usage الاستخدام

Subject pronouns (I - We - You - He - She - It - They) are words you can use instead of nouns that refer to people or things that you have already mentioned earlier in the sentence or in the sentence before.

ضمائر الفاعل هي كلمات يمكنك استخدامها بدلاً من أسماء الأشخاص أو الأشياء التي سبق أن ذكرتها في الجملة أو في الجملة السابقة.

e.g. • The children were tired, so **they** went to bed early.

Pronouns	Usage	Examples
I	للتعبير عن المتكلم المفرد	- This is my book, I will take it.
We	للتعبير عن المتكلم الجمع	- Nader and I will go. We are ready now.
You	للتعبير عن المخاطب المفرد والجمع	- Heba , come here. You came first in the exam. - Boys , stop talking. You will wake the baby up.
He	للتعبير عن المفرد المذكر الغائب	- My son is clever. He will be an engineer.
She	للتعبير عن المفرد المؤنث الغائب	- Huda is at home now. She went an hour ago.
It	للتعبير عن المفرد غير العاقل الغائب	- The cat is jumping from a high wall. It will hurt itself.
They	للتعبير عن الجمع الغائب بأنواعه	- Ali and Heba are my children. They are at school now. - The birds are in the tree. They are singing.



Got it ?

تتمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Mohamed is clever. (She) usually gets high marks.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (He) لأن الفاعل مفرد مذكر غائب.

2 My cousins are visiting the Pyramids next Friday. (We) are very excited.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (They) لأن الفاعل جمع غائب.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering

▲ Understanding

▲ Applying

▲ Analyzing

▲ Evaluating

▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Nader loves ice cream. usually eats it.
a) You b) I c) He d) We
2. Mera is a good student. studies hard.
a) She b) He c) We d) It
3. My parents are traveling. will come back next week.
a) She b) They c) He d) We
4. Girls, have to study hard for the exams.
a) he b) she c) they d) you
5. Waleed and Mohamed are best friends. always play together.
a) We b) They c) You d) He
6. Tamer and I are going to the cinema. will watch a movie.
a) I b) He c) We d) They
7. The flowers are growing. look beautiful.
a) They b) It c) She d) He
8. The movie is starting soon. is a comedy.
a) We b) He c) She d) It

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

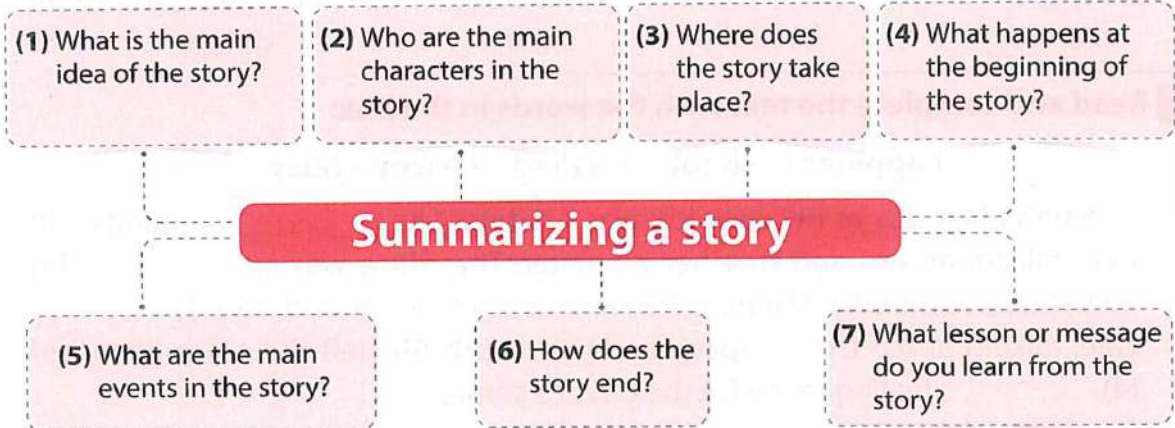
- ▶ 1. My neighbors are very friendly. (We) often invite me over for dinner.
2. My sister and I traveled to Spain. (They) had a fantastic time.
3. The weather was cold. (He) made everyone feel upset.
4. John and Sarah were late. (We) apologized to everyone.
5. Lisa went to the market. (He) bought some fruits.
6. My dog is very playful. (He) likes to run in the park.
7. Omar is very tall (I) plays basketball.
8. I think (he) should take a break and relax. You look very tired.
9. I hope (he) will achieve my dreams. I want to be a doctor.
10. The children went to the park. (We) played on the swings.



Writing

How to summarize a story.

كيفية تلخيص قصة.



Example

"Around the World in Eighty Days"

"Around the World in Eighty Days" is a story about a man named Phileas Fogg who makes a decision to travel around the world in just eighty days. He starts this adventure with his servant, Passepartout. Along the way, they face many challenges, including delays, storms, and even a policeman called Fix chasing them. Despite these difficulties, Fogg is sure that he will win the prize. They travel by train, ship, and even on an elephant! In the end, Fogg and Passepartout return to London just in time, winning the prize and proving that the journey around the world can be done in eighty days.

Check Point

Write a summary of:

"A short story you read"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 11 Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Everyone respectedThompson for his leadership قيادة.
 - Colonel
 - Council
 - Passenger
 - Character
- My grandparents followed the the doctor gave for a healthy lifestyle.
 - types
 - tubes
 - tips
 - taps

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

happiness – shook – crashed – nearby – busy

Sarah's first day at her new job was exciting. She (1)..... hands with her colleagues زملاء and met her manager. The office was (2)....., but everyone was friendly. At lunch, she went with her new friends to a (3)..... café, talking about the company and their work. She left the office filled with (4)....., feeling ready for the days to come.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Mazen is playing football. (She) is very good at it.
- Basmala and I are best friends. (They) share many secrets.
- Alice enjoys painting. (It) creates beautiful artwork.
- The sun is shining brightly today. (She) gives energy to the plants.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Dareen is asking Lamees about the story she told her about.

Dareen : Did you read the story I told you about?

Lamees : Yes, I (1)..... . It was very interesting.

Dareen : (2)..... do you think of the main character?

Lamees : I think the main character was very brave.

Dareen : (3)..... do you think that?

Lamees : I think she was brave because she didn't give up.

Dareen : What did you learn from the story?

Lamees : I (4)..... a lot about being brave and kind.



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The team worked till late at night. (We) wanted to finish on time.
- The police will come soon. (He) will catch the thief.
- Everyone is ready. (He) are very excited.

A

Listening

1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

Scan & listen



1. How many blocks do you walk straight?
 - a) One.
 - b) Two.
 - c) Three.
 - d) Four.
2. Where do you turn left?
 - a) At the bakery.
 - b) At the park.
 - c) At the library.
 - d) At the coffee shop.
3. Where is the park?
 - a) Next to the library.
 - b) Next to the bakery.
 - c) Next to the coffee shop.
 - d) Next to the train station.

B) Listen and complete:

4. You can find the library
5. The park is a great place to
6. There are a lot of green to enjoy in the park.

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. is a great way to save money on transportation.
 - a) Announcing
 - b) Carpooling
 - c) Electricity
 - d) Charging
2. The train travels along the rail through the countryside.
 - a) courts
 - b) airports
 - c) bridges
 - d) tracks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

green – dirty – positive – spaces – electric

Greenora is a future green city. It will be small, with lots of green (1)..... and no cars in the center. People will use (2)..... vehicles and bike lanes. The city will use (3)..... energy and grow its own food, making it climate (4)..... and environmentally friendly. Greenora will take a long time to build.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Planning a great community service project doesn't need a lot of work. There are many ways you can improve your community with groups, big or small. Collecting food is the main one. Encourage people to donate their favorite food items.

Starting a recycling programme is a big task. When you recycle, those items can be turned into amazing things. A community garden is a great way to communicate with your community and provide healthy food.

Think of making a garden just for children, so they can learn about the process of gardening. A community cleanup will improve the look of your neighborhood or park and encourage people to keep the space looking great. Donating blood can also help the community. It helps save many lives.

Giving new coats to kids in need is a great way to serve your community. Volunteering is a great experience that brings people of all ages together for a good cause.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is this passage about?
a) A recycling programme. b) Improving a community.
c) Volunteering. d) Donating blood.
2. is a good way to bring people together.
a) Volunteering b) Donating c) Recycling d) Planning

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How many ways do this text mention? Write them in brief.
4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
5. Why should we encourage people to donate their favorite food items?
6. How can we develop our communities in the future?

C Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The bus about an hour to get to Benha.
a) take b) taking
c) takes d) have taken
2. Eman is learning French. practices every day.
a) You b) It
c) He d) She

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The cookies are baking in the oven. (It) smell delicious.
2. They went to the airport (at) Sunday afternoon.
3. When (is) your flight take off?
4. Linda and I are friends. (They) often play together.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Nabil and Osama are talking about a book.

Nabil : Hello, Osama. Are you enjoying this book?

Osama : Hello, Nabil. No, I (1).....

Nabil : (2)..... aren't you enjoying it?

Osama : I'm not enjoying it because it is not my favorite kind.

Nabil : What do you (3).....?

Osama : I prefer reading adventure stories. Did you read this book?

Nabil : Yes, I did. I (4)..... it a year ago.

It's very interesting.

Osama : Well, you have encouraged me to finish it.

8 Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Esraa to tell her about the story you read. Your name is Sally.

[illegible]

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

A stranger is asking Ahmed about the way to the park.

Stranger: Excuse me. Can you help me?

Ahmed : (1).....

a) No, I can't

b) No, thanks

c) Yes, of course

d) Yes, please

Stranger: (2)..... do I get to the park?

a) How

b) When

c) What time

d) Why

Ahmed : Go straight ahead.

Stranger: You mean it's at the traffic lights.

Ahmed : No. From the traffic lights, take a left.

Stranger : Is it (3).....?

a) near

b) big

c) open

d) far

Ahmed : (4)..... Just 200 meters!

a) Yes, it is

b) No, it isn't

c) Sorry, no

d) Thanks

Stranger : It's very near. Thank you so much.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. When (does) the train at the station?

a) do

b) is

c) has

d) will

2. The library (close) at 5:00 p.m.

a) closing

b) closes

c) closing

d) is closing

3. The museum isn't open (in) Mondays.

a) on

b) at

c) for

d) with

4. The chair is broken. (He) needs to be fixed.

a) You

b) It

c) He

d) She

5. Emily is painting a picture. (He) is very talented.

a) You

b) It

c) He

d) She

ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Unit 12

SUSTAINABLE TOURISM



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

- Reading** Online reviews about vacations; An article about tourism and the planet; A report about rural homestays; A story about an unusual vacation
- Writing** Sustainability tips for tourists visiting your region
- Listening** A description of a young person's staycation
- Speaking** Discussing ways to make tourism better for the planet
- Language** Verbs followed by gerund or to + infinitive form with different meanings

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتيان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرس.

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

airline (n)	خط جوي/شركة طيران	resort (n)	منتجع
business (n)	شركة/عمل تجاري	shopping mall (n)	مركز تسوق
cable car (n)	عربة معلقة (تليفريك)	shuttlebus (n)	حافلة نقل
flight (n)	رحلة طيران	staycation (n)	عطلة منزلية
guide (n)	مرشد	water parks (n)	ملاهي مائية
historical site (n)	موقع تاريخي		
Feeling and Opinion Adjectives صفات المشاعر والرأي			
ancient	قديم/أثري	interesting	شيق
fantastic	رائع	modern	حديث
fascinating	مبهر/خلاب/ساحر	terrible	رهيب/فظيع
glad	سعيد	warm	دافئ

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

hot air balloon ride (n)	رحلة منطاد الهواء الساخن	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما
interest (n)	اهتمام	review (n)	مراجعة/نقد
mix (n)	خليط/مزيج	stay (ed) (v)	يقيم/يبقى
mountains (n)	جبال	store (n)	متجر
museum (n)	متحف	visitor (n)	زائر

Check Point

Choose and complete: **staycation – review – visitors – flight**

- 1 I spent my exploring local parks and enjoying quiet time at home.
- 2 The from London to Paris is usually about 2 hours.
- 3 They welcomed the warmly.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions

have > a staycation	لديه إجازة منزلية	go on > a walking tour	يذهب فى جولة مشى
---------------------	-------------------	------------------------	------------------

Prepositions

حروف الجر

close to	قريب من	on vacation	فى إجازة
go away	يذهب بعيداً	ride in	ركوب فى
on the staycation	فى الإجازة المنزلية		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
fly يطير	flew	flown	learn (ed) يتعلم	learnt	learnt

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح	get on	يركب	get off	ينزل

Check Point

Choose and complete:

fly – ugly – go – on

- 1 Dina decided to go a walking tour next Friday.
- 2 I saw a bird trying to for the first time.
- 3 The garden is beautiful. It isn't

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 Contrast

التناقض: للتعبير عن التناقض بين جملتين نستخدم:

A. However

ومع ذلك (تأتى فى وسط الجملة/بداية الجملة الثانية)

- He studied hard. **However**, he didn't pass his exams.

B. Although

بالرغم من (تأتى فى بداية أو وسط الجملة)

- He didn't pass his exams **although** he studied hard.

C. On the other hand

ومن ناحية أخرى (تأتى فى بداية الجملة الثانية)

- I like pizza. **On the other hand**, my sister likes pasta.

D. but

لكن (تأتى فى وسط الجملة)

- I play basketball, **but** my sister plays handball.

2 will have to + inf.

سوف تضطر إلى أن (تعبر على الإلزام بفعل شيء في المستقبل)

- Kady is feeling tired, but she **will have to finish** her project.

3 as well as + (اسم / inf. + ing)

بالإضافة إلى

- She is a writer **as well as** a painter.
- I enjoy reading books **as well as** watching movies.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** Lamees enjoys swimming playing tennis.
a) however b) as well as
c) although d) but
- 2** Hossam was tired, he did his work well.
a) As well as b) However
c) But d) Although
- 3** I'm very sick, but I will have to work tomorrow.
a) to going b) go
c) to go d) going

Vocabulary Builder



جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions


التعريفات

airline	خط جوى /شركة طيران	a business which organizes flights to many places
guide	مرشد	a person who gives information to visitors
resort	منتجع	a place where people stay and spend time on vacation
shuttlebus	حافلة نقل	a vehicle which takes tourists from the place they're staying in to the place they're visiting
staycation	إجازة محلية/منزلية	a vacation which you have close to the place where you live
tour	جولة	a trip where you visit places of interest

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question:

- What places would you like to visit in Egypt?

 **Read and listen to the reviews. Match the places to the reviews. SB page 69**

Beautiful beach resort ★★★★★

We visited Hurghada last year and we stayed in a fantastic resort⁽¹⁾ on the beach. The sea was clear and warm, and we went swimming every day.

We saw lots of beautiful fish! It was our first time there and everybody loved it, although my little brother didn't like some of the food. We really want to go again! The only problem is that I don't think the airline⁽²⁾ is going there next year, so we will have to fly with a different one.



- (1) منتجع (2) شركة طيران
(3) إجازة منزلية (4) جولة مشى
(5) ملاهى/منتزهات مائية
(6) سيارة معلقة (تليفريك)
(7) حافلة نقل

Amazing staycation ★★★★★

I live in Galala City, and it's beautiful! Last year we didn't want to go away, so we had a staycation⁽³⁾! We went on a walking tour⁽⁴⁾ and saw the historical sites. We saw the water parks⁽⁵⁾ and the boats, as well as new cable car⁽⁶⁾. It has views over the mountains and the Red Sea! I feel that I learned lots of things about my city that I didn't know before!



Taxi to the Pyramids ★★★★★

Last year we visited the Pyramids in Giza. A guide told us lots of fascinating things about when they were built and why, and what things were inside them. The only problem was the shuttlebus⁽⁷⁾ from the hotel. It was busy and we couldn't get on it! We took a taxi instead, which was quick and easy, so it wasn't a problem! It was an amazing experience.



"Understanding reference" فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

The only problem was the shuttlebus from the hotel. It was busy and we couldn't get on it!

What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

How to answer this question:

- Pronouns are words that refer to the closest specific noun right before them.

الضمائر عادة تشير لأقرب اسم يسبقها.

ثانياً: عليك قراءة الجملة التى تسبق الضمير جيداً وتحديد الاسم الذى تشير إليه، واتباع الخطوات نستنتج أن:

- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the shuttlebus.

كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال:

أولاً: عليك أن تعرف إلام تشير الضمائر:

Pre-listening question:

- What do you think of a staycation?



Lesson 2: Staycations

Listen to Wael talking about his staycation.

SB page 70



I live in Luxor, which is a very interesting city. It's very old, too – around 5,000 years, making it one of the oldest cities in the world! But the part I live in is **quite**⁽¹⁾ modern – there are lots of stores, and cafes, and there's a cinema near our home, too. This year, my parents were both really busy with work. We love to visit different places, but this year we couldn't go away on vacation. So, we decided to have a week's staycation instead – and I'm really **glad**⁽²⁾ we did. We really enjoyed going to places in the city which we don't often visit.

- (1) إلى حد ما
- (2) سعيد
- (3) قديم/أثري
- (4) خليط/مزيج
- (5) رحلة منطاد الهواء الساخن

We agreed to visit a different place every day for a week – but there are so many places to choose from! My parents wanted to see lots of the **ancient**⁽³⁾ places, but my sister Dalia and I felt like going to some modern places too. We visited a **mix**⁽⁴⁾ of old and new. We also went to Luxor Museum, which was fantastic – we all like looking around museums.

At the end of the week, my dad suggested trying a **hot air balloon ride**⁽⁵⁾! These balloon rides are famous, and many visitors to our city go on them. It was the first time we'd tried it, and it was so much fun! We could see the whole city and the river below us, and we could even see some famous ancient sites. It was really amazing!

Next year, we plan to stay in Egypt again and explore Cairo. There is so much to see there!

Post-listening questions:

- 1 How does Wael describe the part of Luxor where he lives?
- 2 What does he have near his home?
- 3 Why did they choose a staycation?


Pre-listening question:

- Where did you spend your last vacation?

Listening Text



Lesson 2: Staycations

 Choose the correct form of the verbs to complete the conversation, then listen and check your answers.

SB page 71



Farah Hi Dalia, how was your vacation?

Dalia Oh, hi Farah. Well, we didn't go. Our parents couldn't get time off work, so we **chose to stay** in Luxor and had lots of days out instead.

Farah A staycation – that sounds good!

Dalia Yes, it was. Our parents **suggested visiting** some places we don't go to very often, and some new ones.

Farah Did you go to the museum?

Dalia Yes, we did! It was fascinating.

Farah I **hope to go** there soon – it sounds interesting.

Dalia Yes, it is. We're **planning to go** back soon because we didn't see it all. You can come with us!

Post-listening questions:

1 How was the museum Dalia visited?

.....

2 Do you think Dalia enjoyed her staycation? Why/Why not?

.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Farida started her own selling handmade jewelry.
a) problem b) resort c) tour d) business
2. Ramy took many photos at the historical he visited last year.
a) tours b) guides c) sites d) trips
3. Rawda and Nahla enjoyed their to Paris and took many photos on the plane.
a) walk b) staycation c) voyage d) flight
4. The new shopping has many stores and restaurants.
a) male b) mall c) mile d) meal
5. We went to the which offers many activities like swimming and hiking.
a) resort b) cinema c) theatre d) zoo
6. Ali thinks life in the countryside is He likes it so much.
a) excited b) fascinating c) bad d) terrible
7. The takes tourists from the airport to their hotel inside Cairo.
a) plane b) rocket c) shuttlebus d) ship
8. You can see amazing views from a car in Galala City.
a) light b) cable c) connected d) switch
9. My father booked a ticket with a popular for his flight to London.
a) shuttlebus b) airline c) guide d) tour
10. My cousins on a walking tour to the city's historical sites.
a) organized b) stayed c) went d) took

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

buildings – visitors – historical – terrible – located

Giza is a famous city in Egypt. It is known for its ancient history and amazing museums. The Great Pyramids and the Sphinx are (1) there, attracting (2) from all over the world. Giza is near the Nile River and is close to Cairo, Egypt's capital. The city has fascinating (3) It has a lot of amazing wonders. People visit Giza to explore its rich culture and enjoy its (4) treasures.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- There are many places of near the hotel for tourists to explore.
a) resort b) interest c) sites d) review
- We visited the, and we learned a lot about our ancient history.
a) resort b) museum c) store d) shopping mall
- The parents took their little children to the beach and told them not to go
a) to b) away c) a way d) into
- My cousins decided to a staycation and enjoy their city.
a) fly b) learn c) go d) have
- I enjoyed my visit to Alexandria. It was a/an experience.
a) fantastic b) shy c) ancient d) terrible
- Our walking around the city lasted for two hours.
a) mall b) tour c) guide d) resort
- often ask tour guides questions about the history of the site.
a) Resorts b) Visitors c) Reviews d) Views
- A water is a great place to have fun with friends and family.
a) statue b) bark c) park d) glass
- A/An is a business which organizes flights to many places.
a) station b) airline c) platform d) railway line
- Adel is a famous food blogger. He gave a positive of that restaurant.
a) review b) view c) sight d) insight

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mountain – cable – water – hotels – flight

Galala City is a beautiful resort city in Egypt. It is located near the Red Sea. The city is famous for its beaches and clear blue (1)..... Visitors enjoy swimming and fishing. Galala City also has fantastic (2)....., restaurants, and shopping areas. The (3)..... car ride in the city offers amazing views of the (4)..... and the sea. The weather is warm all year round, making it perfect for vacations.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Common verbs followed by gerund or to + infinitive

- الأفعال التي يتبعها (inf. + ing) أو (to + inf.)
- e.g. • They **decided to travel** next week. • Talal **enjoyed visiting** ancient places.
- When we use one verb after another verb, the second verb is usually in the gerund form (-ing) or the **to infinitive form**.

- عندما نستخدم فعلاً بعد فعل آخر، يكون الفعل الثاني عادةً في صيغة (-ing) أو صيغة (to) ثم المصدر.

تم تجميع الأفعال الشائعة على مدار المنهج.

1 Common verbs followed by gerund (inf. + ing)

Verbs الأفعال	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	- I enjoy reading books in my spare time.
suggest	يقترح	- Hana suggested taking a break from work.
feel like	يشعر وكأنه/ يرغب في	- My friends feel like going for a walk.
dislike	يكره	- Sam dislikes waking up early.
consider	يعتبر/ يفكر في	- They consider moving to a new city.
go	يذهب	- Let's go swimming next weekend.
keep	يستمر	- Keep walking until you reach the traffic light.
spend	يقضي (وقتاً)	- I spend my free time reading stories.
avoid	يتجنب	- Kids should avoid using screens too much.
imagine	يتخيل	- I can't imagine living away from my family.
practice	يمارس	- Donia practices playing music every Friday.
finish	ينهي	- I can't finish doing my project on time.

2 Common verbs followed by (to + inf.)

Verbs الأفعال	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
decide	يقرر	- My parents decided to move to a new city.
plan	يخطط	- We plan to travel to Europe next year.
agree	يوافق	- Esraa agreed to go out for dinner.
want	يريد	- I want to learn a new language.
choose	يختار	- Eman chose to stay home instead of going out.
hope	يأمل	- Heba hopes to find a good job.

Verbs الأفعال	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
promise	يعِد	- Marwa and Amira promised to help each other.
learn	يتعلم	- Hamza learned to swim last week.
offer	يعرض	- Mazin offered to carry the books for me.
take ...	يستغرق (وقتاً)	- The visitors took two hours to reach the Pyramids.
ask ...	يطلب	- The teacher asked me to finish the task soon.
expect ...	يتوقع	- We didn't expect her to come early.
need	يحتاج	- We need to look after our planet.
would like	يود	- Sama would like to visit the zoo.
would love	يحب	- I'd love to meet new people.



Got it ?

تمتلك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My dad promised me (buy) a new bike next summer.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (to buy) لوجود الفعل (promise).

3

Common verbs followed by gerund or to + infinitive

هناك مجموعة من الأفعال يمكن أن يتبعها (to + inf./ inf. + ing) دون تغيير فى المعنى.

Verbs الأفعال	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
like	يحب	- I like playing/to play football on Fridays.
love	يحب	- Talia loves eating/to eat pizza very often.
continue	يستمر	- Children continued playing/to play although it was raining.
start	يبدأ	- I started learning/to learn a new language.
hate	يكره	- Ibrahim hates playing/to play in the rain.

لاحظ أن: عند النفي نستخدم (not + inf.) أو (not to + inf.).

e.g. • Boody **decided not to eat** sweets again.

• Mom **suggests not playing** in the rain.



Got it ?

تمتلك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I love (spend) time with my family.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (to spend/ spending) لأن الفعل (love) يتبعه فعل فى المصدر أو فعل مضاف إليه ing.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Kareem enjoys a rest in his bedroom.
 a) to having b) having c) have d) to have
2. Does Manal love video games?
 a) plays b) to playing c) play d) to play
3. I am learning English. I take a course every Sunday.
 a) to speak b) speak c) speaking d) to speaking
4. Mom finished Come and eat!
 a) cook b) cooking c) to cook d) to cooking
5. What did you decide when you faced that problem?
 a) doing b) done c) to do d) to doing
6. I would like to the party with you.
 a) to coming b) coming c) come d) to come
7. I dislike people late at night.
 a) calling b) to calling c) to call d) call
8. Sara asked to the cinema with us. She loves adventure films.
 a) to come b) to coming c) come d) coming

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We hope (visit) Paris next month.
2. Enas suggested (go) to the museum. She loves history.
3. They plan (start) the tour in the autumn.
4. I feel like (have) a cup of coffee.
5. I offered (help) Nada, but she didn't agree.
6. My father chose (work) in a nearby company.
7. Celia avoided (tell) Hadeer about her plans. She wants to surprise her.
8. I'm busy now, but I promise (help) you tomorrow.
9. Ahmed suggested (not/go) out now as it's raining.
10. I'd love (have) ice cream for dessert.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My uncle considered to Spain next year.
a) move b) moving c) to move d) to moving
2. They practiced a lot. They have a competition.
a) to run b) to running c) running d) run
3. Would you like to Marsa Matrouh by bus?
a) traveling b) to travel c) to traveling d) travel
4. I'd love for a walk. I want to breathe fresh air.
a) to going b) going c) to go d) go
5. Can you imagine without the internet?
a) live b) living c) to live d) to living
6. We expect at the mall about seven.
a) be b) being c) to be d) to being
7. Eslam needs his English. He has to take a summer course.
a) improves b) improve
c) to improve d) to improving
8. We chose to Luxor to enjoy the nice weather in winter.
a) to traveling b) to travel c) traveled d) travels

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sisters enjoy (cook) together.
2. Fatin keeps (call) to ask for help with her homework.
3. Ayman offered (drive) us home. He's really kind.
4. I promise (lending) you the money you need.
5. Batool agreed (help) with the project. She is friendly.
6. Omar avoided (run) in the rain not to have a cold.
7. They plan (start) a new business next month.
8. Karma suggested (have) a picnic. The weather is fine.
9. The teacher asked the new student (do) a project on sorting trash.
10. Would you prefer (staying) at home during vacations?

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

D Skills



1. Speaking

Expressing feelings and opinions

التعبير عن المشاعر والآراء

عند التعبير عن الشعور أو الرأي نستخدم الصفات التالية:

Positive إيجابي	Negative سلبي
fascinating, fantastic, amazing, interesting, nice, good	terrible, bad

Examples:

- The zoo was **fascinating**. I saw my favorite animals.
- The party was **fantastic**. We had so much fun.
- Her performance was **amazing**. Everyone clapped.
- The weather was **terrible**. It was raining all day.
- The book was **interesting**. I enjoyed reading it.
- Assala is a **good** singer. I like her songs.
- The weather is **nice** today. Let's go for a walk.
- The movie was **bad**. I didn't like it.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► **Fatma and Eman are talking about their feelings.**

Fatma : Hi, Eman! How are you feeling today?

Eman : Hi, Fatma! I'm (1)..... happy today.

Fatma : (2)..... you watch yesterday's movie?

Eman : Yes, I did.

Fatma : What do you think of it?

Eman : I think the movie was very (3)..... I liked it so much.

Fatma : What did you think of the main character?

Eman : He was brave. (4)..... did you feel by the end, Eman?

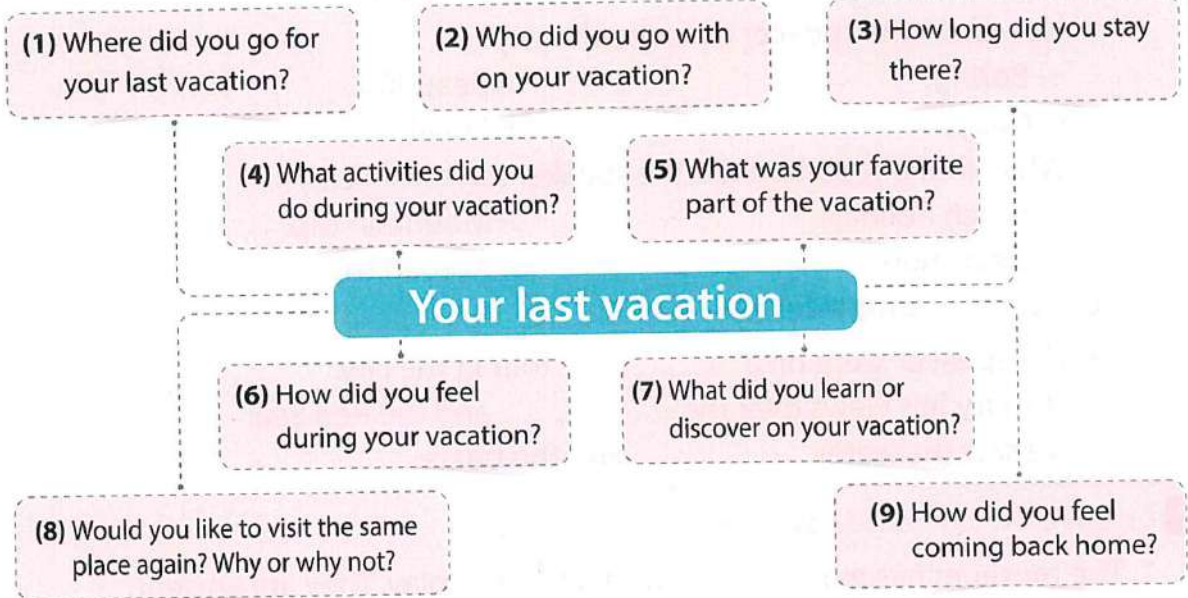
Fatma : I felt surprised by the ending. It was unexpected.



2. Writing

How to write about a vacation

كيفية الكتابة عن إجازة



Example

"My last summer vacation"

Last summer, I went on vacation to Marsa Matrouh with my family. We stayed for a week in a beautiful beach house. Every morning, we enjoyed a delicious breakfast together. During the day, we swam in the sea, built sandcastles, and collected seashells. One day, we went on a boat tour and saw dolphins jumping out of the water. In the evenings, we watched beautiful sunsets and had barbecues on the beach. My favorite part of the vacation was spending time with my family and relaxing by the sea. It was a wonderful vacation, and I hope to go to Marsa Matrouh again next year.

Write a paragraph on:

"Your holiday"



1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Where does the speaker live?
 - a) In Cairo.
 - b) In Alexandria.
 - c) In Galala City.
 - d) In Luxor.
2. How does the speaker describe the city?
 - a) Boring.
 - b) Beautiful.
 - c) Noisy.
 - d) Small.
3. What kind of vacation did the speaker have last year?
 - a) Beach holiday.
 - b) Mountain trip.
 - c) Staycation.
 - d) Abroad trip.

(B) Listen and complete:

4. The speaker went on a tour in the city.
5. The city has views over the and the Red Sea!
6. We saw the water and the boats.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The museum has many artifacts on display. They are ancient.
 - a) clear
 - b) warm
 - c) historical
 - d) modern
2. Wael wrote a positive about the new café.
 - a) interest
 - b) review
 - c) trip
 - d) guide

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

stayed – great – airline – resort – clear

I like Hurghada. We visited Hurghada last year and (1) in a fantastic hotel on the beach. The sea was (2) and warm, perfect for daily swimming. We saw beautiful fish and had a (3) time, although my brother disliked eating some food. We want to return, but the (4) might not fly there next year, so we may need a different one.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Wafaa loves a short story before bedtime.
 - a) to read
 - b) read
 - c) to reading
 - d) reads
2. Youmna needs harder to pass her exams.
 - a) to studying
 - b) to study
 - c) studying
 - d) study

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My friend started to (learning) a new language.
2. I learned (swim) when I was young.
3. My dad avoids (work) at weekends.
4. Our group chose (write) about the environment for our project.

6 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed asks Adam about his vacation.

Ahmed : Hi, Adam! How was your vacation?

Adam : Hi, Ahmed! It was (1)..... . What about you?

Ahmed : I had a great vacation, too.

Adam : (2)..... did you go?

Ahmed : I went to the mountains with my family.

Adam : That sounds fun! What (3)..... you do there?

Ahmed : We (4)..... hiking and enjoyed the beautiful views.

Adam : Great!

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your staycation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاوب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How about (go) for a walking tour?
2. We can't live well without (breathe) clean air.
3. It's important (keep) your teeth healthy.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	rent (ed) (v)	يؤجر
awareness (n)	وعى/توعية	single-use (adj)	ذات الاستخدام الواحد
case (n)	حالة	sustainable (adj)	مستدام/مستمر
culture (n)	ثقافة	tourism (n)	السياحة
eco-tourism (n)	سياحة بيئية	professional (n)	محترف/خبير
flexible (adj)	مرن	traveler (n)	مسافر
homestay (n)	إقامة منزلية	waste (n)	نفايات
local people (n)	السكان المحليون	bin (n)	سلة
natural resources (n)	موارد طبيعية	whole (adj/n)	جميع/كل
owner (n)	مالك/صاحب	tourist industry (n)	صناعة السياحة
payment (n)	الدفع	tourist site (n)	موقع سياحي
prepare (d) (v)	يعد/يجهز		

Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

choice (n)	اختيار	improve (d) (v)	يطور
completely (adv)	تمامًا/كليًا	let (v)	يسمح
cycle (d) (v)	يركب دراجة	material (n)	مادة خام
design (ed) (v)	يصمم	recent (adj)	حديث/جديد
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	solar energy (n)	الطاقة الشمسية
unlikely (adj)	غير محتمل	towel (n)	منشفة/فوطة
history (n)	تاريخ	wind energy (n)	طاقة الرياح

Choose and complete: Solar – cultures – owner – traveler

- 1 Ibn Battuta was a famous He visited a lot of countries.
- 2 energy is created from the sun.
- 3 Talia is interested in learning about different

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

do	> a homestay	يقيم إقامة منزلية	save	> water	يوفر الماء
plan	> vacations	يخطط للعطلات	solve/cause	> a problem	يحل/يسبب مشكلة

Prepositions

حروف الجر

go out	ينطفئ (الضوء)/ يخرج	problem with	مشكلة في
in exchange for	في مقابل/عوضا عن	reasons for	أسباب لـ
on a homestay	في إقامة منزلية	throw away	يرمي/يتخلص من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
begin	يبدأ	began	choose	يختار	chose
		begun			chosen

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – at – unlikely – plan – chose

- 1 We are going to a vacation to the beach.
- 2 My aunt worked overtime in exchange extra vacation days.
- 3 I the red dress to wear on my sister's wedding.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions

التعريفات

community مجتمع/منظمة/جالية	a group of people who live in the same place and share a way of life
natural resources موارد طبيعية	things from nature that people use
single-use ذات الاستخدام الواحد	something which people use once and then throw away
waste نفايات	all the things that people throw away
homestay إقامة منزلية	a trip where visitors stay in the home of another family, usually in exchange ⁽¹⁾ for payment ⁽²⁾

مقابل (1)

دفع المال (2)


اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
nature (n)	الطبيعة	-al		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		natural (adj)	طبيعي
own (v)	يملك	-er		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل		owner (n)	مالك/صاحب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: Lesson 3: Tourism that's good for the planet

- Why is tourism important?

 Read and listen to the article about tourism and the environment.

SB page 72

Tourism and the planet

Many people enjoy traveling to different cities and countries – there's a lot to see and do in our amazing world!



- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) وسائل النقل | (2) محترفون |
| (3) موارد طبيعية | (4) ذات الاستخدام الواحد |
| (5) مستدام | |

But when people travel, it can cause problems.

Tourists often want to visit the same place at the same time. This can make some famous places too busy, then stores, restaurants and **transportation**⁽¹⁾ can't work well. There can also be problems with waste, which is bad for the environment.

Of course people want to travel – but how can we do this as well as protecting the planet?

Many **professionals**⁽²⁾ in the tourist industry think about eco-tourism when they plan vacations. They do things like visiting places where tourism is good for the community, for example, where local people teach visitors about their food or history.

It's important to think about how visitors use **natural resources**⁽³⁾, too. Many resorts save water, or use wind or solar energy for electricity. And of course, everyone has to choose the right materials – **single-use**⁽⁴⁾ plastics are bad for the environment, so it's better to use things which can be used again and again.

When tourism is **sustainable**⁽⁵⁾, people can continue to visit all the beautiful and interesting places in our world.

Comprehension Skills

"Understanding reference" «فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير»

- Read the following sentence carefully and try to find what the pronoun "**they**" refers to.

اقرأ الجملة جيدا وحاول فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير.

Many tourism **professionals** think about this when **they** plan vacations.

Answer: The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to many tourism **professionals**.

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about homestay?

Lesson 4: Homestays

 Read and listen to the report about homestays?

SB page 74

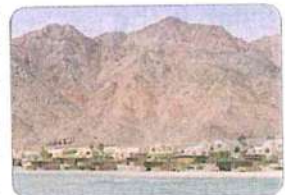
Why do a homestay?

- In recent years, more people are choosing not to stay in big hotels, but to try doing a **homestay**⁽¹⁾ instead. There are many reasons for this.



What you can learn and do

You often begin learning more about the culture of a place as soon as you arrive in a person's home. Very often, the owner of the homestays gives you information about the things you can do and see nearby. They might also help with transportation, or suggest places where you can stop to eat lunch when you are out. All of this is good for the local community, because it makes people try different things and visit new places in the area.



Where you stay

In some **cases**⁽²⁾, the owner of the home is still there, and you can use one or two rooms in the house. In other cases, you **rent**⁽³⁾ the whole house. In both cases, you see what a real home is like in the place you're visiting. This is often more interesting than a hotel, where the rooms look the same. Also, if you have a problem, the owner will try to help you solve it.

How long you can stay

You can often stay for a night, a week, or longer. Homestays can be more **flexible**⁽⁴⁾ than big resorts, which might not allow shorter breaks at busy times of year.

What you need to bring

• Usually, you don't have to bring anything with you; the homestay will have somewhere to cook, and everything you expect to find in a home. If you need to remember to bring things like towels, the owner tells you first.

Homestays are beginning to become a popular **choice**⁽⁵⁾ for **travelers**⁽⁶⁾, and it's easy to see why. It's good to read online reviews to find good places to stay. If someone remembers having a great homestay, they often want to share their experiences with others! It's unlikely that people will stop staying in hotels completely, but there's a lot more choice for travelers today.

(1) إقامة منزلية

(2) حالات

(3) يستأجر

(4) مرن

(5) اختيار

(6) مسافرون

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. tourism helps protect natural resources.
a) Single-use b) Sustainable c) Flexible d) Local
2. I had a problem the online order, so I had to call customer service.
a) at b) on c) with d) in
3. We should try to avoid using objects to help protect the environment.
a) flexible b) local c) single-use d) sustainable
4. Salah is the of this shop. He bought it 2 years ago.
a) owner b) traveler c) payment d) planet
5. My friends a car for their trip. They paid 1500 pounds.
a) prepared b) rented c) offered d) cycled
6. People travel to enjoy nature and protect the environment in
a) medical tourism b) beach tourism
c) sports tourism d) eco-tourism
7. The teacher asked Mazin to a presentation for the class.
a) save b) protect c) prepare d) rent
8. Hotels and restaurants are part of the tourist
a) industry b) factory c) culture d) drawer
9. Homestays have prices, especially in the off-season.
a) flexible b) sustainable c) natural d) local

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

experience – reviews – travelers – hotels – views

Homestays are becoming a popular choice for travelers. They read online (1) to find good places to stay. If someone has a great (2), they often share their experiences with others! It's unlikely that people will stop staying in (3) completely, but there's a lot more choice for (4) today.

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We can help visitors to walk or , not to use cars.
a) solve b) prepare c) rent d) cycle
- The street is clean because people use the waste
a) sites b) towels c) bins d) materials
- My father advised me to be kind and not to problems at school.
a) plan b) do c) take d) cause
- Our teachers advise us to water so that we won't experience water scarcity.
a) choose b) prepare c) save d) allow
- I made the for my order online.
a) awareness b) payment c) homestay d) materials
- It's important to think about how to use our natural wisely.
a) vacations b) resources c) homestays d) owners
- There are many reasons choosing not to stay in big hotels.
a) to b) for c) at d) in
- My parents me to go out with my friends on weekends.
a) allow b) expect c) prepare d) continue
- Many tourism try to protect the environment when they plan vacations.
a) materials b) sites c) professionals d) owners
- If you have a problem, your parents will help you it.
a) cycle b) protect c) suggest d) solve

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sustainable – reusable – environment – energy – single-use

It's important to consider how visitors use natural resources. Many resorts save water and use clean (1) like wind or solar power. It's important to avoid using (2) plastics to help the environment, so reusable materials are a better choice. (3) tourism ensures تضمن that people can continue to visit the world's beautiful and interesting places without damaging the (4)

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



C Language

Verbs followed by both gerund (inf. + ing) or (to + infinitive) with different meanings
أفعال يتبعها (inf. + ing) & (to + inf.) مع اختلاف المعنى

- When we use one verb after another, we can use either the gerund or the *to + infinitive* for the second verb, to express different meanings.

- عندما نستخدم فعلاً بعد فعل آخر، يمكننا استخدام إما *gerund* أو (to + inf.) للفعل الثاني، للتعبير عن معانٍ مختلفة.

Verbs الأفعال	(inf. + ing) (to + inf.)	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
stop يتوقف	(inf. + ing)	يتوقف عن فعل شيء ما (لا يفعله)	- My father stopped smoking .
	(to + inf.)	يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً ما (أي أنه توقف ليقوم بفعل شيء آخر)	- Dalia stopped to talk to her friend.
remember يتذكر	(inf. + ing)	يتذكر أنه فعل شيئاً من قبل (الحدث تم مسبقاً)	- I remember meeting you last year.
	(to + inf.)	يتذكر أن يقوم بفعل معين (سيقوم بفعل الشيء)	- Remember to lock the door.
try يجرب/يحاول	(inf. + ing)	(يجرب) تُستخدم للتجربة أو الاختبار لمعرفة إذا كان الشيء سينجح.	- Try adding some spices to the dish.
	(to + inf.)	(يحاول) تُستخدم لمحاولة القيام بشيء يتطلب جهداً أو يمثل تحدياً.	- I will try to learn a new language.
begin يبدأ	(inf. + ing)	عندما نتحدث عن نشاط مستمر أو عادة.	- Adel began reading the book.
	(to + inf.)	عندما نتحدث عن بداية حالة جديدة أو شعور جديد أو فعل يبدأ للتو.	- Samir began to read the book aloud.



Got it ?

تتمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- On our way to the farm, my dad stopped (buying) some water.
- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (to buy) لأنه توقف لشراء بعض الماء ولم يتوقف عن شراء الماء.
- Don't forget to turn off the lights before sleeping, remember (turn) it off.
- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (to turn) لأن المطلوب منه أن يتذكر فعل شيء (في المستقبل).

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Stop your time and start studying your lessons, Omar.
a) wastes b) to wasting c) wasting d) to waste
2. I remember this man last year.
a) meeting b) met c) to meeting d) to meet
3. We have to try some new hobbies – it might be fun! SB
a) to doing b) doing c) do d) to do
4. Taher began his daily homework an hour ago.
a) does b) to doing c) do d) doing
5. Remember your medicine. Don't forget it.
a) taking b) to taking c) take d) to take
6. Donia began tired after a long walk.
a) to feeling b) feel c) to feel d) feels
7. I stopped the dog. It was hungry.
a) to feed b) to feeding c) feed d) feeding
8. Basant to send the email. She will send it soon.
a) stopped b) remembered c) began d) tried

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Asser, remember (taking) your pen. Don't forget it.
2. When I travel to Port Said, I usually stop (have) a quick meal at a nice restaurant.
3. I remember (watch) that movie last year.
4. They began to (laughing) at his jokes at once.
5. Never give up, always try (to making) success.
6. Maher stopped (to watch) TV and started reading books.
7. Remember (drink) plenty of water.
8. Hala (tried) understand the problem although it was difficult.
9. People began (feel) worried when the lights went out. SB
10. Can you try (get) home early tonight, because Grandma is coming over. SB

D Skills



Writing

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



How to write about sustainable tourism/ doing a homestay

كيفية الكتابة عن السياحة المستدامة/ الإقامة المنزلية

Example

"Sustainable tourism"

Sustainable tourism is important because it helps protect nature and supports local people. It means traveling in ways that don't harm the environment and help the communities in tourist areas. For example, you can use eco-friendly transport, stay in green hotels, and respect the local culture. Sustainable tourism also helps save resources like water and forests. When travelers choose sustainable tourism, they reduce their impact on the planet, and local people get more job opportunities. This kind of tourism helps make sure that future generations can visit beautiful places, too. Everyone can help by making simple, smart choices when planning their trips.

Example

"Doing a homestay"

Doing a homestay is a wonderful way to learn about new cultures and improve language skills. When you stay with a local family, you get to experience their daily life. People choose homestays to feel more connected to the place they are visiting. You can try local foods, join traditional activities, and make new friends. You also have the chance to practice speaking the local language. Preparing for a homestay is easy—just bring an open mind and be ready to learn. Finally, it's a great way to explore and understand a new culture deeply.

Check Point

Write a paragraph on:

"Tourism"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons (3 & 4)

Sustainable tourism 253

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. Mention two problems caused by traditional tourism.
5. How can we make sure that future generations can also enjoy the wonders of the world?
6. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. On my way home, I stopped bread because we needed some for lunch.
a) buying b) to buy c) to buying d) buy
2. I tried the problem alone, but I couldn't.
a) to solve b) solving c) to solving d) solve

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I stopped (play) video games because this wastes my time.
2. Nouran began to (studying) hard for the upcoming test.
3. Remember (water) the plants before going out.
4. Let's try to (being) more patient with ourselves.

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A plan for a homestay"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I know it's difficult but try (think) about it too much.
2. You'll be OK. I remember (be) really nervous on my first day too!
3. Try (be) unkind to people.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

aquarium (n)	معرض أحياء مائية	landscape (n)	منظر طبيعي
airplane (n)	طائرة	print (ed) (v)	يطبع
city breaks (n)	رحلات قصيرة إلى المدينة	responsible (adj)	مسئول
city tour (n)	جولة في المدينة	stall (n)	كشك
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	trash can (n)	سلة المهملات
guidebook (n)	دليل إرشادي	travel guide (n)	دليل السفر
historic building (n)	مبنى تاريخي	type (d) (v)	يكتب (على جهاز)
incredible (adj)	لا يصدق/رائع	waste (d) (v)	يهدر

المفردات الرئيسية

Additional Vocabulary

advertisement (n)	إعلان	miss (ed) (v)	يفوت/يفتقد
airport (n)	مطار	spot (n)	مكان
beauty (n)	الجمال	square (n)	ميدان
Cape Town (n)	مدينة كيب تاون	Table Mountain (n)	جبل الطاولة
hard work (n)	عمل شاق/جاد	untouched (adj)	دون مساس (لم يتم لمسه)
list (n)	قائمة		

المفردات الإضافية

Check Point

Choose and complete: **explore – print – map – airport**

- I need to this report before the meeting.
- My friends went on a tour to the old town.
- You can see a lot of airplanes at the

يهدف هذا التدريب
لقياس فهمك
للمفردات الرئيسية
والإضافية.

Language Expressions

do > work	يؤدي عملاً	get > hungry	يشعر بالجوع
drop > trash	يسقط القمامة	busier	يصبح أكثر انشغالاً
take > a shuttlebus	يأخذ حافلة نقل	plan > a city break	يخطط لإجازة قصيرة في المدينة

التعبيرات اللغوية

Prepositions

a long way from	مسافة طويلة من	look at websites	يبحث في المواقع الإلكترونية
famous for	مشهور بـ	on a phone	في/على الهاتف

حروف الجر

go/walk past	يذهب/يمشي مازراً بـ	on the trip	في الرحلة
into an app	في التطبيق	put ... back	يضع ... مرة أخرى في

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
sell بيع	sold	sold	show يبين/يوضح	showed	shown

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها	Word الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) عكسها
heavy ثقيل	light خفيف	lovely/ beautiful جميل	ugly قبيح

Check Point

Choose and complete: **drop – get – sold – light**

- Please, don't trash on the ground.
- The box is too heavy for me to lift. It isn't
- The market always busier on the weekends.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 arrive in/at

● arrive in + دولة/مدينة/قرية

- When we **arrived in** Cape Town, we took a shuttlebus.

● arrive at + مكان داخل المدينة

- When we **arrived at** the airport, we took a shuttlebus.

يصل إلى

يصل إلى (مدينة أو دولة)

2 in case + فعل + فاعل

● Take an umbrella **in case** it rains.

في حالة

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
lovely (adj)	جميل	beautiful/pretty	جميل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
advertise (v)	يعلن	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	advertisement (n) إعلان

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5: Literature

 Read the description of an AI-generated city tour.

SB page 76

AI City Breaks

Are you planning to visit a new city? Don't spend time reading travel guides and looking at websites. It can take hours to plan what to do and how to travel. Just type the place you're visiting into our app, and let Artificial Intelligence do the hard work!

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever travelled to another country?

 Read and listen to the story.

Last year, my family and I decided to visit Cape Town in South Africa. It's famous for amazing landscape, beautiful buildings, and of course the **incredible**⁽¹⁾ Table Mountain. My mom bought some guidebooks.

"Why have you got those?" asked Dad.

"I want to learn about Cape Town," said Mom.

"That's the best way to see everything!"

"They're big and heavy," said Dad. "We can't carry them everywhere. We can use our phones to find maps and information online."

"It still takes time to find information online," said Mom.

"And the maps are very small!"

"You're right," said Dad.

My brother Mazen smiled at me. "I have an idea!" he said.

When we arrived in Cape Town, we took a **shuttlebus**⁽²⁾ from the airport to our hotel. It was lovely, with beautiful rooms, but we were all tired after the trip.

Mom and Dad put the books on the table. Mom looked at them and laughed.

"I don't think I do want to carry these now! Can we use your phone?"

Dad looked worried. "I used it too much on the trip," he said. "It isn't working."

"Oh no!" said Mom. "There's so much to see – I don't want to miss anything!"

Mazen laughed. "I can help!" he said.



(1) لا يصدق

(2) حافلة نقل

He showed us his phone, and some paper. "I asked AI to plan a city break for us in Cape Town. Here it is! There's a list of places we should see on my phone. I printed it too, in case our phones didn't work!"

"That's amazing!" said Dad. "Where are we going first?"

"It says we start at the museum which is near the hotel," Mazen said.

We had to hurry round the museum because Mazen wanted to go to a large street market next. "We can't miss that," he said. The market was great, but I was getting hungry. We walked past a stall selling hot food.

"Can I get something to eat?" I asked.

"We haven't got time – sorry!" said Mazen. "We're eating in one hour in Greenmarket Square⁽³⁾. We're going to a big aquarium first."

We hurried around the city, going past lots of interesting stores and beautiful streets, before we got to the aquarium.

"The aquarium is amazing, Mazen," said Mom. "But I think we're a long way from our hotel now."

Mazen looked at his map.

"Oh yes," he said. "I don't think I told AI where to finish the tour."

"Well – we've seen some amazing things. Thank you, Mazen – and thank you to your AI app! But maybe tomorrow we'll have a slower day!" said Mom.

Post-reading questions:

① Why does Mazen think that AI can help them?

.....

② What problems do they have as they go around the city?

.....

③ Do you think it helped to use AI, or not?

.....

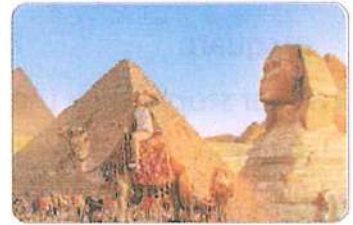
Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6: Writing

- What do you think 'responsible tourist' means?

 **Read and listen to the tips about being a responsible tourist.** *SB page 78*

It's great to visit different places around the world, but it's also important to be a responsible tourist. There are lots of things that you can do to help make your vacation more sustainable. This is good for the planet, so it's good for you!



1. This is simple: don't drop trash – ever. If you can't find a **trash can**⁽¹⁾, put things back in your bag until you find one. Remember to leave your favorite, untouched, beauty spot the way you found it.
2. Think about how you travel. Airplanes and cars use a lot of energy – can you walk, take a train, or cycle? You often see more that way too.
3. Think about visiting a quieter place. The most famous **tourist sites**⁽²⁾ can get too busy, but there are lots of things to see in other places. Don't be afraid to try visiting somewhere new.
4. Save energy when you're on vacation: turn off lights and don't waste water, just like you would at home.
5. Spend money in the local area. Tourism can be good for communities when people shop and eat locally, and **explore**⁽³⁾ the area they are staying in.

(1) سلة مهملات

(2) مواقع سياحية

(3) يستكشف

Remember: We live on a beautiful planet, and we want to keep it this way!

Post-reading questions:

1 How can tourists travel without harming the environment?

2 How can we save energy while we are on vacation?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I love watching the fish swim in the
a) square b) statue c) theatre d) aquarium
2. Peter stopped by the juice for a refreshing drink.
a) library b) stall c) bakery d) museum
3. Sam used the to find interesting places in the city.
a) stall b) mall c) guidebook d) square
4. Rawda an email and sent it to her friend.
a) missed b) shopped c) printed d) typed
5. Many people visit Table in Cape Town every year.
a) Garden b) Mountain c) Temple d) Statue
6. A group of volunteers are for keeping the park clean and safe.
a) tired b) worried c) responsible d) incredible
7. Rivers and lakes are part of the natural
a) street b) statue c) hospital d) landscape
8. She designed a colorful to promote her bakery.
a) email b) advertisement c) map d) stall
9. Nada her friend after she moved away.
a) missed b) explored c) wasted d) printed
10. We love going on during our weekends.
a) trash cans b) city breaks c) travel guides d) guidebooks

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

artificial – time – natural – websites – guides

Do you like traveling? When you plan to visit a new city, don't spend time reading travel (1) or looking at (2) It can take hours to decide what to do and how to get around. Simply enter your destination into our app, and let (3) intelligence handle everything for you. It will give you all the best recommendations, saving your (4) and effort!

Time to Practice



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When we arrived at the airport, we a shuttlebus to our hotel.
a) took b) dropped c) planned d) gave
2. Egypt is famous its historic buildings.
a) of b) on c) for d) to
3. There is an app that can a city break for us.
a) plan b) watch c) build d) give
4. Sherif is planning to visit a new city, so he is reading travel
a) sites b) breaks c) guides d) palaces
5. They walked the old library on their way to school.
a) away b) round c) past d) back
6. Use the AI and let it the hard work for you.
a) make b) do c) get d) feel
7. We are going to have lunch at a big restaurant in the main of the city.
a) square b) map c) site d) hotel
8. We should put our waste in a trash
a) menu b) list c) map d) can
9. This town busier with tourists in the summer.
a) drops b) gets c) takes d) plans
10. Mustafa a lot of time playing video games.
a) wasted b) saved c) went d) came

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

plant – sustainable – generations – responsible – planet

Traveling to different places around the world is exciting. However, it's important to be a (1)..... traveler. There are lots of things that you can do to help make your vacation more (2)..... . That will help protect the (3)..... which benefits everyone! Traveling in a responsible way helps future (4)..... enjoy these beautiful places too.

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Writing

How to write about sustainability tips for tourists who visit your region

كيفية كتابة نصائح الاستدامة للسياح الذين يزورون منطقتك



Example

"Tips for tourists"

When visiting our region, tourists can follow simple tips to be more sustainable. Choose eco-friendly transportation like bikes or public transportation to reduce pollution. Bring reusable bags, bottles, and containers to reduce waste. Save water and energy by taking short showers and turning off lights when not needed. Support local businesses by buying from local shops and eating at local restaurants. Stay in eco-friendly hotels. Respect nature by not dropping trash. By following these practices, tourists can help protect our beautiful region for future generations.

Write a paragraph on:

"How to be eco-friendly while visiting historical sites"

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 12 Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I love to photos from my travels and keep them at my photo album.
a) plan b) print c) drop d) waste
- The city included a visit to the museum.
a) stall b) list c) map d) tour

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

private – protect – public – save – local

Tourism is very important. To be more sustainable while visiting a region, tourists can choose eco-friendly transport like bikes or (1) transportation, use reusable items, and (2) water and energy. Supporting (3) businesses, staying in eco-friendly hotels, and respecting nature by avoiding litter are also important. These small changes can help (4) the region's beauty for future generations.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I would like (have) some tea, please.
- Ahmed suggested (visit) the museums while we're in London.
- Karma is learning (driving) at the moment.
- We hope (seeing) you again soon.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Khaled went to a desert for the first time.

Eslam : Hi, Khaled! How was your vacation?

Khaled : Hi, Eslam! It was (1) I went to the desert.

Eslam : Unusual! That sounds interesting. (2) did you do there?

Khaled : I rode a camel and slept in a tent under the stars.

Eslam : Amazing! (3) you see any animals?

Khaled : Yes, I saw some desert animals.

Eslam : Were you scared of them?

Khaled : (4) They were scary.



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My brother is starting (do) a course in English.
- They're interested in (learn) new things.
- She's looking forward to (travel) to England.



Listening

1 (A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

Scan & listen



1. What should visitors care about?
 - a) Their clothes.
 - b) Their cameras.
 - c) The weather.
 - d) Natural resources.
2. Why should tourists use reusable items?
 - a) To make their trips more expensive.
 - b) To help the environment.
 - c) To increase the use of single-use plastics.
 - d) To harm the environment.
3. What kind of energy do some resorts use?
 - a) Nuclear energy.
 - b) Solar energy.
 - c) Coal energy.
 - d) Steam energy.

(B) Listen and complete:

4. Everyone has to choose the right
5. Tourists should use reusable items instead of plastics.
6. Sustainable helps protect the planet for future generations.



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My to Paris was exciting. It was my first time to travel by plane.
 - a) voyage
 - b) flight
 - c) cycle
 - d) rail travel
2. Tourism help plan trips for travelers.
 - a) attractions
 - b) experiences
 - c) professionals
 - d) destinations

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

popular – flexible – Homestays – bad – reviews

I think people will not stop staying in hotels completely, but there's a lot more choice for travelers today. (1)..... are beginning to become a (2)..... choice for travelers. It's good to read online (3)..... to find good places to stay. Homestays can be more (4)..... than big resorts, which might not allow shorter breaks at busy times of year.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Karim didn't remember (lend) me his book. I reminded him of that.
2. Huda decided (not/talk) to him again.
3. I'd love (visit) France one day.
4. Hend tried to finish (do) her project on time.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Judy thinks tourism is important for our country.

Ahmed : What is the important thing for our country?

Judy : I think it's (1).....

Ahmed : (2)..... do you think that?

Judy : I think that because tourism helps (3)..... people to find jobs.

Ahmed : I think it damages historic places.

Judy : What can we (4)..... to prevent tourists from damaging our historic sites?

Ahmed : We can give tips for sustainable tourism.

8 Write an email of EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Celina to give her some sustainable travel tips. Your name is Razan.



.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialog:

Naira asks Anas about his vacation.

Naira : Hi, Anas! How was your vacation?

Anas : Hi, Naira! It was unusual and (1).....

- a) boring b) fun c) shy d) delicious

Naira : Great! (2)..... did you go?

- a) Where b) When c) How d) Who

Anas : I went to a village.

Naira : That sounds interesting! What (3)..... you do there?

- a) are b) will c) do d) did

Anas : I explored the fields and farms.

Naira : Wow, did you meet any local people?

Anas : (4)..... I spent a nice time with them.

- a) Yes, I did b) No, I didn't c) Sorry d) Not yet

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c, or d:

1. Maya agreed (join) us on our next trip.

- a) to join b) joined c) joining d) to joining

2. Hala dislikes (clean) the house.

- a) cleans b) cleaned c) to cleaning d) cleaning

3. They practiced (speak) English in the classroom.

- a) to speaking b) speaking c) to speak d) speaks

4. We tried (understand) the lesson, but it was too hard.

- a) understands b) understanding c) to understand d) understood

5. Ramy kept (to work) despite the noise.

- a) worked b) work c) to working d) working


ANSWER HERE

Q 1 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Q 2 1 (a) (b) (c) (d) 2 (a) (b) (c) (d) 3 (a) (b) (c) (d) 4 (a) (b) (c) (d) 5 (a) (b) (c) (d)

Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - How do you go to school?

 **Read the text quickly. Which type of green transportation in the text doesn't appear in the photos?**

SB page 80

Green transportation is a way of traveling that is better for the environment. It reduces carbon emissions, saves energy, and helps protect the planet.

Leg Power⁽¹⁾

Cycling and walking are the cleanest forms of transportation. They don't produce any carbon emissions and they're great for traveling short distances⁽²⁾. Traveling to work or school by bike or on foot helps reduce air pollution and traffic. Cycling instead of driving, even a few times a week, can make a big difference to the environment.



Public Transportation

Trains, streetcars⁽³⁾, and buses are much more eco-friendly than cars or planes, especially for longer distances. Streetcars, which run on electricity, are a green and efficient⁽⁴⁾ way to travel, especially in cities. Like buses and trains, streetcars can carry a lot of passengers at once, which greatly lowers⁽⁵⁾ the carbon emissions per person.



For example, a full bus can replace⁽⁶⁾ up to 50 cars on the road which helps reduce both pollution and traffic. Similarly, trains use less energy and produce fewer carbon emissions than planes or cars. Traveling by trains, streetcars, or buses is a great way to be sustainable and to help protect the environment.

Hybrid⁽⁷⁾ and Electric Cars

For people who have to drive, hybrid or electric cars are a greener alternative⁽⁸⁾ to traditional cars. Hybrid cars use both electricity and fuel. For shorter trips, hybrid cars often don't need to use fuel and can run on electricity alone. Electric cars are even cleaner but only if they're charged with renewable energy.



Making a Difference

How can you change the way you travel to help reduce carbon emissions and lower air pollution?

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What is the main goal of green transportation?
- 2 Why are cycling and walking good for the environment?

- (1) قوة (2) مسافات (3) الترام
(4) كفاء (5) يقلل (6) يستبدل
(7) سيارات هجين (تعمل بالبنزين والكهرباء)
(8) بديل



Pre-listening question:

- How would you like to travel?

Listen to three travel announcements and write the correct transportation.

SB page 81

Please listen to the following **announcement**⁽¹⁾ for the next train to leave Misr station, Alexandria.

The next train to leave from platform three is the Talgo Train Number 2022, to Cairo. The train leaves at 7 a.m. and arrives at Ramses II station Cairo at 9.30 a.m. The journey time is two hours and thirty minutes. Please go to platform three. The train leaves in 15 minutes.



The Blue Sky Bus Company services between Luxor and Hurghada on 22nd November.

The Blue Sky Bus Company offers three **services**⁽²⁾ a day between Luxor and Hurghada. Buses leave from Luxor Central Station from Monday to Thursday at 8 a.m., 9.30 a.m. and 2.30 p.m. The journey time takes four hours. From Friday to Sunday there are two services that leave at 12 p.m and 4 p.m. Please go to the website for more **details**⁽³⁾ and to **book**⁽⁴⁾ your tickets.



There is a new fast **ferry**⁽⁵⁾ service from Nuweiba to Aqaba in Jordan. The fast ferry leaves Aqaba every day - **except**⁽⁶⁾ Saturdays, at 12 p.m. The journey takes one hour. There is a return ferry from Nuweiba every day - except Saturdays, which leaves at 3.30 p.m. It arrives in Aqaba at 4.30 p.m.



Alternatively⁽⁷⁾, the slow ferry offers a chance to relax and enjoy the beautiful **scenery**⁽⁸⁾. The slow ferry from Aqaba to Nuweiba leaves every day at 12 a.m. and takes three hours. The slow ferry from Nuweiba to Aqaba leaves every day at 2 p.m.

Please check with the ferry company the day before your travel to know if there have been any changes to the timetable.

Post-listening questions:

- 1 What platform does the train to Cairo leave from?
- 2 Why should you check with the ferry company before you travel?
- 3 How many bus services are there from Friday to Sunday?

(1) إعلان

(2) خدمات

(3) تفاصيل

(4) يحجز

(5) عبارة

(6) باستثناء/ما عدا

(7) بدلا من ذلك

(8) منظر طبيعي

Listening Texts

Unit 7

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Last week, I learned a new word: "enormous". It means something very, very big! At first, I found it hard to say, but I decided to practice. I wrote it down many times and said it aloud slowly. My friend helped me and put it in a sentence. She said, "The elephant is enormous!" That made me laugh, and I remembered the word better. Learning new words is fun, and it helps me speak better.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 7

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Today, Mazen spent the afternoon learning to ride a bike. At first, he felt nervous because he was afraid of falling, but he didn't give up. His dad helped him practice pedaling, and Mazen kept trying until he could ride on his own. Mazen has always thought that riding bikes looks fun and exciting, and now he feels happy and proud of himself.

Unit 8

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I'm Karma. Last summer I volunteered at the zoo every weekend, through our school volunteer program. I was so excited because I love animals, but I was also nervous about meeting new people. I fed the animals, cleaned their enclosures, and guided visitors. As I got more comfortable, I enjoyed talking to the guests and learning about animal care. It was a great experience!

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 8

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

In the new city, twins Adam and Amira lived in a small apartment on the top floor of a tall building. Outside in the city, there were the sounds of cars, buses, and people talking. Despite the noise, they loved looking out of the window at the busy streets below. They often wished there were more parks and green spaces nearby.

Unit 9

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Maria feels nervous about her next test. She is worried about doing badly and wants to find a way to relax. Maria decided to go to the mall on Saturday to have some fun. She hopes this will help her feel better. The plan is to enjoy the day and forget about her worries for a while.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 9

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Dina's best friend, Ghada, is kind and funny. She is an amazing person. They enjoy spending time together by playing games and going shopping. Dina feels lucky to have such a great friend. Ghada is a funny person. Her jokes always make Dina laugh. She is also caring and is always there to support Dina and others with her big smile.

Unit 10

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

My dad thinks I spend too much time gaming, so he set my laptop to turn off after one hour. I know gaming can be bad if you play too much, but I still enjoy playing sports with friends. Some friends spend all their time on social media, sending friend requests to strangers, which can be dangerous because those people might be adults.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 10

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Today, I watched a Paralympics sports event. These are sports for people with a disability. There was the final of the wheelchair tennis and an Egyptian girl won. She was so fast! The next day, I was very surprised because I saw the tennis player in the wheelchair. I was with some friends in a café and she was at the next table.

Unit 11

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Driving cars is very bad for the environment. About 23% of all the world's carbon emissions come from cars. Vehicles that aren't electric and don't use clean fuel damage the environment and cause health problems. Instead of using dirty fuel, clean fuel should be used as it produces fewer gases and is better for the environment. Driving cars is harmful for the environment, and carbon emissions pollute the air.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 11

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

To reach the park, walk straight for two blocks. Then, turn left at the library. The park is next to the library, so you can easily find it. It's a great place to relax and enjoy the outdoors. There are many green spaces and trees to enjoy in the park, making it the perfect spot to take a break and feel calm.

Unit 12

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I live in Galala City, and it's beautiful! Last year we didn't want to go away, so we had a staycation! We went on a walking tour and saw the historical sites. We saw the water parks and the boats, as well as new cable car. It has views over the mountains and the Red Sea! I feel that I learned lots of things about my city that I didn't know before!

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 12

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

It's important to think about how visitors use natural resources, too. Many resorts save water or use wind and solar energy for electricity. Everyone has to choose the right materials, such as reusable items instead of single-use plastics, to help protect the environment. Sustainable tourism helps protect the natural resources for future generations.

1st

PREP

SECOND TERM



AL ADWAA

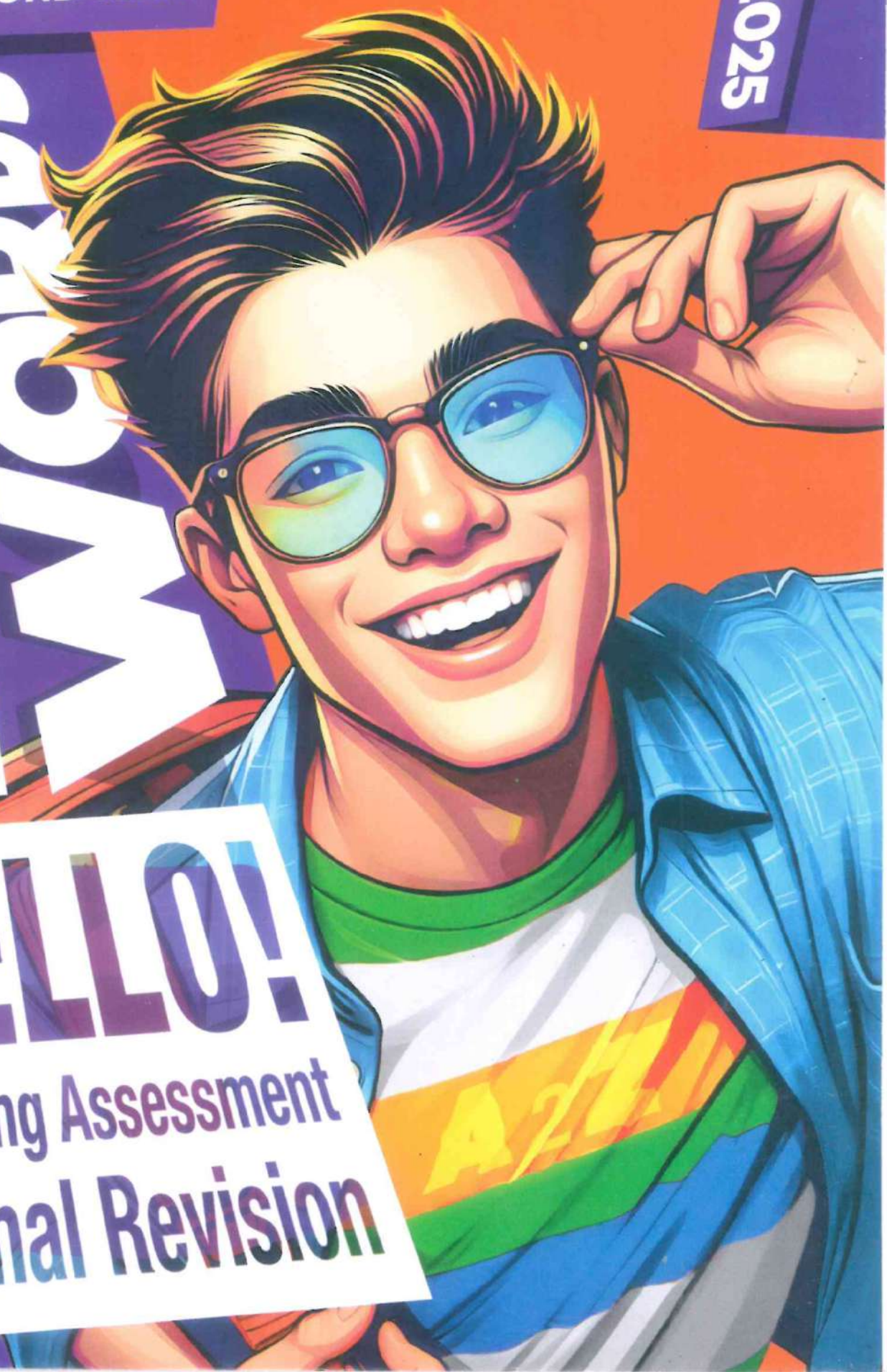
Gem

2025

**Beyond
Records**

HELLO!

**Ongoing Assessment
& Final Revision**



CONTENTS



Part (1): Ongoing Assessment.....3

1. Follow-up Worksheets

جزء خاص بالإملاء + اختبارات قصيرة لطلبة العام

2. Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheets

اختبارات قصيرة لطلبة الأزهر

3. Mini-Tests (General & Al-Azhar)

اختبارات قصيرة (عام + أزهر)

4. Monthly Models (General & Al-Azhar)

نماذج للتقييم الشهري (على كل وحدتين)

Part (2): Final Revision & Tests.....67

1. Vocabulary/Language/Writing Revision

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية (يُصاحبها تدريبات) ومهارة الكتابة الخاصة بكل وحدة

2. SB Exercises

التدريبات الخاصة بكتاب المدرسة مصنفة ومقسمة إلى وحدات.

3. Final Tests

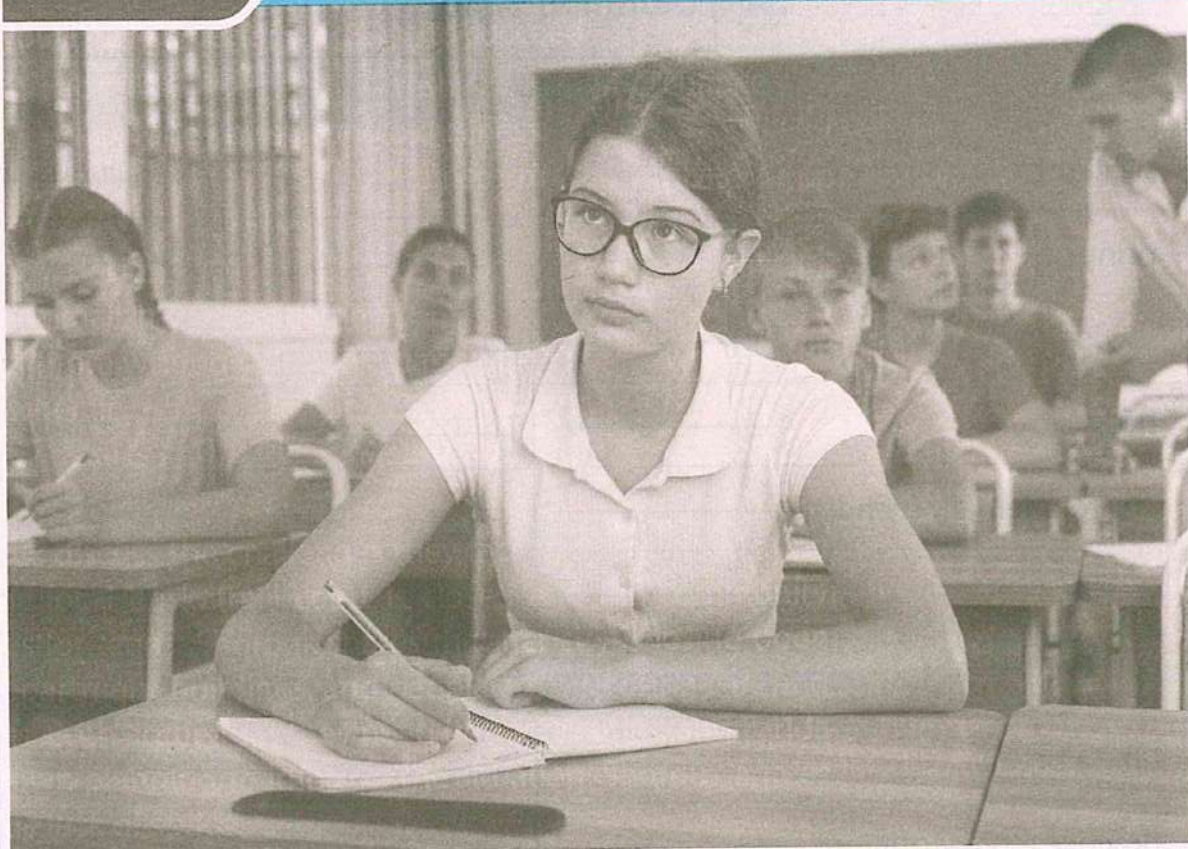
الامتحانات العامة على المنهج (١٧ امتحاناً عاماً)

4. Al-Azhar Tests

الامتحانات الخاصة بطلبة الأزهر (٥ امتحانات)

5. Listening Texts

نصوص استماع الامتحانات



1

Follow-up Worksheets

جزء خاص بالإملاء + اختبارات قصيرة لطلبة العام

2

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheets

اختبارات قصيرة لطلبة الأزهر

3

Mini-Tests (General & Al-Azhar)

اختبارات قصيرة (عام + أزهر)

4

Monthly Models (General & Al-Azhar)

نماذج للتقييم الشهري (على كل وحدتين)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
sunlight	مَدِيْقُ لِلْبِيئَةِ
print	مُعَاد تَدْوِيرِهِ
device	يَحْمِي
tricky	طَاقَةُ
environmentally friendly	نَصَائِحُ/تَلْمِيحَاتُ
waste	تَجْرِبَةُ (حَيَاتِيَّة)

Language Expressions & Prepositions

take a break	يَضَعُ خَطَأً تَحْتَ الْكَلِمَاتِ
practice a presentation	يَلْتَقِطُ
highlight words	يَتَحَوَّلُ إِلَى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يُعْطَى	
يَتَهَجَّى	

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
(يَفْتَحُ) جِهَاز	(يَغْلِقُ) جِهَاز
useful	useless

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

meaning – next – text – spell – highlight

Learning new words is not difficult. When you read a (1)....., it is useful to underline new words or (2)..... them. I find it easy to remember the (3)..... of the words, but I sometimes find it difficult to remember how to (4)..... them. I read online that you can put the important words into sentences to help you remember them.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Smart devices to make our lives easier.
a) exist b) suggest c) study d) spell
- I read an interesting about climate change.
a) film b) match c) note d) article
- How long does it take to the city center?
a) pick up b) get to c) come d) arrive

Language

- song do you like the most?
a) Who b) When c) Which d) Where
- Where your best friend last night?
a) was b) is c) were d) are
- Why you like this movie?
a) does b) do c) are d) were

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Whom did you (gave) the book to?
- How long (are) your daughter study every day?
- A: When (do) they travel to London? B: Last summer holiday.
- A: (When) did you go on vacation? B: To the zoo.
- Why (you are) late?



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Waleed is asking Mesbah about how to learn new words.

Waleed : How do you learn new words?

Mesbah : (1).....

Waleed : Flashcards! Are they helpful?

Mesbah : (2)..... I also watch English movies.

Waleed : (3).....?

Mesbah : I also underline new words to remember them.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When you a choice, think carefully before deciding.
a) get b) have c) make d) do
- I know from my that practice makes you better at anything.
a) meaning b) experience c) effect d) material
- Use a marker to words in your book.
a) repeat b) take c) make d) highlight
- Why you go to school yesterday?
a) didn't b) weren't c) don't d) aren't
- did you see at the party?
a) Why b) Whose c) Who d) Where

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How to be eco-friendly while studying"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
explain	رابط/يربط
check	العمل الشاق/الجاد
brain cell	بوضوح
truth	واقِع / حقيقة علمية
opinion	معتقد
research	مملكة
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
difficult for	يبقى نشطاً
interested in	لا يتفق مع
connect to	ينشئ اتصالاً
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
..... يحصل على	.....
..... يُعلم / يُدرس	.....
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
..... صبور	غير صبور
true	false

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clearly – active – quietly – technology – believed

New research has changed what we know about how the brain works. In the past, some people (1)..... that your brain was not active at all when you sleep, but new (2)..... helps us to see what is happening in the brain more (3)..... . Now we know that even when people sleep, some parts of the brain are still (4)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Adel reads a short story every night. It's his
a) sport b) habit c) cell d) link
2. A/An is the smallest part of a living thing.
a) cell b) brain c) topic d) opinion
3. I'm really of my grandfather. He did amazing things for us.
a) bored b) annoyed c) proud d) upset

Language

4. The kid fell off his bike is okay now.
a) who b) which c) whom d) what
5. The movie I watched was boring.
a) what b) which c) who d) why
6. This is Laila house is next to ours.
a) her b) when c) who d) whose

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I like to listen to the singer (which) sings beautifully.
2. That's the restaurant (when) I usually have my favorite pizza.
3. We ate the delicious cake (what) she baked.
4. I met the musician (who) music is really relaxing.
5. March is the month (who) we celebrate Mother's Day.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Most news on social media is not true. It's
a) right b) far c) active d) false
- I agree you. We should all be eco-friendly while studying.
a) of b) for c) at d) with
- Mr. Adly explained the grammar very well. I understood it well.
a) roll b) rule c) role d) reel
- The boy scored the goal is my brother.
a) who b) whom c) which d) where
- Do you remember the time we got lost in the park?
a) who b) which c) when d) whom

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The brain is a complex organ that controls everything we do, from thinking and feeling to moving and sensing. It processes information from our senses, such as sight, hearing, and touch. The brain is made of billions of cells. When we learn, new connections are formed between cells. New technology helps us see that the brain stays active even when we sleep. Research shows that sleep helps us learn and remember better. Hard work and focus can lead to better connections. Understanding the brain helps us learn and communicate better.

A) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main function of the brain?
.....
- How does new technology help us understand the brain?
.....
- What happens to the brain when we learn something new?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The best title for the passage is ".....".
a) The cell b) The brain c) The neuron d) The body
- Hard work and can lead to better connections in the brain.
a) focus b) relaxation c) habits d) energy

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

perfect	.....	الصبر
result	.....	القوة
society	.....	مزرع
entry	.....	يقدر
reflective journal	.....	إيقاع/وزن شعري
colored	.....	السلام

Language Expressions & Prepositions

make a mind map	.....	يشارك قصص
the back of	.....	ينفض
focus on	.....	يدع الأمور تسير

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	يشعر	.....
.....	يستسلم	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
different	same
.....
جميل	قبيح

Definitions

.....	: the ability to keep trying to do something and not give up
.....	: something that a group of people, or a society, started doing a long time ago and still do now
.....	: to talk or behave in a way that gives someone confidence

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

courage – necklace – encouraged – practiced – tradition

Today, I spent the afternoon with my grandmother. I was learning to make a (1) At first, it was difficult. My grandmother (2) me a lot to continue. I tried to be patient and I (3) hard. As I continued, I enjoyed the process; I always appreciate my family (4)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

1. It was a/an show. It made me feel angry.
a) exciting b) active c) annoying d) proud
2. Always work hard to achieve your dreams. Never
a) give away b) give back c) give up d) give out
3. Making pots and baskets is a traditional
a) craft b) plan c) entry d) result

Language

4. The baker makes the best bread is my neighbor.
a) that b) whose c) what d) which
5. My brother bought a bicycle is perfect for racing.
a) who b) whom c) what d) which
6. Where did you on vacation?
a) went b) go c) going d) goes

3 Complete the following dialog:

Reda is telling Solyman about his reflective journal entry.

Reda : I wrote in my reflective journal today.

Solyman : What did you write about?

Reda : I (1) about my trip to the zoo.

Solyman : (2) did you see there?

Reda : I saw many animals.

Solyman : Wow! Did you (3) any pictures?

Reda : Yes, I did. I took lots of pictures with my family.

Solyman : (4)! Show me the photos.

General

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Where (be) the remote control for the TV?
- What (do) you buy at the market last Sunday?
- Students (which) study hard get good grades.
- The house (which) roof is green belongs to my grandparents.

- 2 Complete the following dialog:

Zeinab learned how to cook Italian food, pizza.

Abeer : Did you learn anything new?

Zeinab : Yes, I (1) I started learning how to cook Italian food.

Abeer : That sounds delicious! What (2) you cook first?

Zeinab : I (3) pizza.

Abeer : Wow, I love pizza! (4) it difficult to cook?

Zeinab : No, it wasn't. It was easy to cook.

Abeer : Great! Can you teach me how to make it?

Zeinab : Sure!

- 3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to learn in an eco-friendly way"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

- 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hatem learned how to paint nature.

Hatem : Did you try learning something new?

Karam : No, I didn't. (1)

Hatem : I learned how to paint.

Karam : (2)

Hatem : I painted pictures of nature.

Karam : (3)

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I need to my homework before I hand it.

- a) research b) check c) explain d) receive

2. She was nervous to a presentation in front of everyone.

- a) give b) take c) do d) make

3. I share my toys my little sister.

- a) at b) in c) of d) with

4. The engineer designs buildings is wonderful.

- a) what b) whose c) who d) which

5. The computer game I play is fun.

- a) which b) whom c) who d) what

- 3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. This is the school which I learned to read and write. (.....)

2. What does he bring to the last party? (.....)

3. What is the main actor in the movie? (.....)

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

population	جودة
playful	خجول
facilities	بناء/عمران
confident	متوتر/عصبى
include	التعليم
growth	مخطط

Language Expressions & Prepositions

make displays	يكون صداقات
go on a vacation	يبقى على اتصال
pick up	يوفر ... لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تشرق		
يطعم		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
luckily	unluckily
آمن	خطر

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

improves – populations – facilities – leaders – realizes

City planning is very important, especially for small cities in Egypt. It helps (1)..... decide how to use land and build homes, schools, parks, and (2)..... like hospitals and shops. Planning protects the environment while creating safe homes and spaces for growing (3)..... . Good planning (4)..... life quality and respects nature, making cities better places to live.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- The museum has many ancient
a) populations b) artifacts c) leaders d) spaces
- My parents like to spend the weekends in the They like nature.
a) court b) construction
c) apartment block d) countryside
- Salwa felt before her exams. She studied well.
a) confident b) bad c) shy d) careful

Language

- I a new park near my house last week.
a) will discover b) discover
c) was discovering d) discovered
- I to music yesterday evening. I was doing my homework.
a) wasn't listening b) was listening c) listened d) listen
- Was Nancy a book at 7 p.m. yesterday?
a) reading b) read c) reads d) not read

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I (do) my homework for the whole evening yesterday.
- Basmala (not/see) her close friend last week.
- Children (sleep) at ten last evening.
- What (you/do) last week?
- It started to rain and I (decide) to go home.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Khaled is asking Adel about his weekend.

Khaled : How was your weekend?

Adel : (1).....!

Khaled : (2).....?

Adel : I volunteered at the museum.

Khaled : Did you enjoy it?

Adel : (3).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. City is very important for small cities in Egypt.

- a) hiking b) moving c) planning d) promising

2., it started to rain during our picnic.

- a) Unluckily b) Luckily c) Carefully d) Safely

3. We will vacation next summer.

- a) make b) think c) keep d) go on

4. My son some help with his homework yesterday.

- a) will need b) need c) needed d) were needing

5. Eman the piano at 4 pm yesterday.

- a) was playing b) played c) will play d) plays

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"An experience of helping out"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
frustrating	هدايا تذكارية
outdated	المواصلات
college	زبون
subway station	النمو السكاني
memory	كشف
bother	مبدع/مبتكر

Language Expressions & Prepositions

brainstorm ideas	يكسب مالا
on the sidewalk	يدون
make comments	يقوم بمحادثة

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
positive	negative
..... مشابه	..... مختلف

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

experience – experiment – feed – environment – importance

I recently volunteered at a local animal volunteer program. I helped clean the monkey enclosure, (1) the animals, and play with the cats and dogs. I helped make a cleaner and happier (2) for the animals. I learned the (3) of helping others and the joy of giving back to the community. It was a truly amazing (4)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

1. My friends at the park after school every Thursday.
a) laugh b) hang out c) run out d) aim
2. They decided to a conversation about their plans.
a) add b) put c) give d) have
3. My father his car in the garage near his work.
a) gave b) parked c) signed d) drew

Language

4. I the museum when I saw my friend.
a) visit b) am visiting c) visited d) was visiting
5. While I was sleeping, I about flying to space.
a) dream b) dreams c) was dreaming d) dreamed
6. Mahy her coffee while reading the newspaper.
a) was drinking b) drank c) drinks d) drink

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While I (walk) home, I saw a frightening dog.
2. My friends (arrive) while I was cooking dinner.
3. We were watching a movie when the power (go) out.
4. They (talk) while walking down the street.
5. What (you/do) when I called you?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If you work hard, you'll have a better to succeed.
a) cause b) local c) fresh d) chance
2. Maria wants to money by starting a business.
a) make b) put c) brainstorm d) give
3. My grandma loves to clothes.
a) shout b) design c) mention d) appear
4. While I an email, my friend came in.
a) write b) am writing c) was writing d) wrote
5. We were walking when it to rain.
a) start b) starts c) starting d) started

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Farida and Shorouk discuss the challenges they face in their cities. Farida is frustrated that the local basketball court is closed and the community center lacks activities for teens. Shorouk shares that her city is losing open spaces due to new apartment buildings, and people are overusing cars and parking on sidewalks. Both agree that they need better facilities, and Farida suggests studying town planning to improve the situation. Shorouk agrees but worries about the lack of space.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is Farida frustrated?

.....

2. What problem does Shorouk mention in her city?

.....

3. What is Farida's suggestion to improve the situation?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Farida wants to at the community center.
a) play basketball b) meet old friends
c) do activities d) volunteer
5. worries Shorouk a lot.
a) Lack of space b) Poor education
c) Traffic d) Pollution

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

nod	.....	.....	عملية
reflect on	.....	.....	مفتون
happiness	.....	.....	توعم
peaceful	.....	.....	تأثير
gate	.....	.....	ذكریات
contribute to	.....	.....	اكتشاف

Language Expressions & Prepositions

feel part of	.....	.....	يحدث تغيرات
try out	.....	.....	ييطئ
do a good job	.....	.....	بإشارة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	ينشئ/ يبنى	.....	.....
.....	يوضح/ يبين	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
giant	tiny
.....
.....	غامق

Definitions

.....: something you can sit on and move up and down by using your legs
.....: two children who are brothers and/or sisters born at the same time
.....: something that children can climb and have fun on

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nature – apartment – closed – open – areas

Today, my grandma showed me old photos of our city. Back then, there were green fields and (1)..... spaces, and she could walk to the sea. Now, the city has grown with (2)..... blocks everywhere, and there's hardly any open (3)..... left. I wish people could build without harming (4)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Your way of studying has a great on the environment.
a) invitation b) process c) discovery d) impact
- Waleed liked to on his day before going to sleep.
a) step b) reflect c) nod d) contribute
- My cousins had a great time at the party. They were
a) sad b) bored c) fascinated d) quiet

Language

- They won't finish on time with too tasks left to do.
a) very b) so c) much d) many
- We need so patience to deal with this problem.
a) much b) many c) enough d) too
- Samira doesn't have information about the topic.
a) many b) enough c) some d) an

3 Complete the following dialog:

Adel and Adham are talking about the changes in their town.

Adel : Did you notice the changes in our town?

Adham : (1)....., I did.

Adel : Tell me. (2)..... did you notice?

Adham : I noticed the construction of many buildings and roads.

Adel : Right! What do you (3)..... about it?

Adham : I think we lost many green spaces.

Adel : It's true. What about the air?

Adham : The air is polluted. That's (4)..... for our health.



Scan & listen



نص الاستماع
في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What did the people find when they reached the park?
 - A big crowd of people.
 - A small crowd of people.
 - No people at all.
 - A large construction site.
- Why did they go to the front of the crowd?
 - To avoid the crowd.
 - To see the park better.
 - To find out what was happening.
 - To help with the construction.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The room was without any lights on.
 - dark
 - bright
 - shiny
 - clear
- We should keeping the environment clean.
 - take part
 - take place
 - contribute to
 - hope to
- The scientist's helped cure يعالج a disease.
 - construction
 - discovery
 - invention
 - process
- Salma made too mistakes on the test.
 - a lot
 - enough
 - much
 - many
- I'm sorry I didn't bring snacks.
 - enough
 - much
 - a
 - some

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- My dad added too many salt to the soup, so it was too salty. (.....)
- I have so much tasks to finish before the weekend. (.....)
- There isn't many water left in the bottle. (.....)
- She spends too enough time on her phone. (.....)

Listening Text:

When they reached the park, they found a small crowd of people looking at the construction. They wanted to find out what was going on, so they went to the front.

General

Al-Azhar

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He (was reading) a book in the afternoon when he was young.
2. (While) the phone rang, I was watching TV.
3. She found so (much) errors in the report.
4. Ola doesn't have (not enough) confidence to speak up.

- 2 Complete the following dialog:

Said and Hadeer notice that there is a lot of traffic these days.

Said : What problems are there in our city?

Hadeer : There is too much (1)

Said : I agree. (2) you know another problem?

Hadeer : Sure. Another issue is the lack of green spaces.

Said : What does this (3)?

Hadeer : This causes air pollution.

Said : What should we do to stop air pollution?

Hadeer : We should use (4) transportation and plant more trees.

- 3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A day you spent out"

.....

.....

.....

.....

- 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Sayed is frustrated by the litter in the street.

Sayed : I think our city became very busy.

Nour : (1)?

Sayed : This is happening because more people are moving here.

Nour : (2)?

Sayed : There's more litter on the streets.

Nour : (3) We need more public trash bins.

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The kids are playing basketball on the

a) apartment block b) court

c) hiking path d) station

2. The teacher will the tasks for the new project.

a) assign b) add c) cause d) design

3. The garden was very and quiet.

a) tiny b) giant c) proud d) peaceful

4. Samir the cold weather when he was young.

a) hating b) hates c) hated d) was hating

5. My sister a book when the phone rang.

a) reads b) is reading c) read d) was reading

- 3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Eman ate too many cake and felt sick.

2. There are so enough books on the shelf.

3. Last Sunday, we plant a tree in our garden.

Monthly Model (1) on Units 7 & 8

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

patience – makes – necklace – changes – beads

Malak spent a fun afternoon with her grandmother, learning to make a (1)..... . She was glad to try, but soon found it difficult. The small (2)..... kept falling, making her annoyed. However, her grandmother had lots of (3)..... and reminded her that beautiful things take time and effort. Practice (4)..... perfect.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Esraa will her lunch with her friends. She's so kind.
a) chat b) give c) share d) communicate
- The park is home to many types of
a) population b) wildlife c) quality d) experience
- I want to this new recipe. It has good reviews.
a) try out b) find out c) put out d) go out
- Amany went to Hurghada and in the beach.
a) swim b) swims c) swam d) swimming
- While Eman, Fatma was chatting on the phone.
a) cook b) cooks c) cooked d) was cooking
- The book I am reading is very interesting.
a) who b) which c) where d) what

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- A:** When (are) you usually study English? **B:** Every day.
- You are the person (which) can help me the most because you're patient.
- While we (wait) for the bus, it rained.
- Last year, I (go) to our local zoo every weekend.
- We were playing in the tournament (while) I broke my ankle.

Monthly Model (2) on Units 7 & 8

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dangerous – proud – volunteer – look after – look like

My great grandfather used to live in the countryside. He worked as a (1)..... doctor when there was a health emergency طوارئ صحية and when the work was difficult and sometimes (2)..... . He also used to (3)..... people who didn't have much money. I feel very (4)..... of him.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. A: How often (are) you go to the gym? B: Twice a week.
2. The house (which) we lived was very old.
3. I saw the man (which) took my money.
4. Retal (not/sleep) when I arrived.
5. We (hear) a strange noise while we were cleaning the house.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ziad is helping a tourist to get to the Pyramids.

Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?

Ziad : Yes, of (1).....

Tourist : (2)..... are the Pyramids?

Ziad : The Pyramids are in Giza.

Tourist : (3)..... they far from here?

Ziad : Yes, they are far from here.

Tourist : How can I go there?

Ziad : You can take a (4).....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
pleased	منزعج
included	يلاحظ
group chat	يرسل رسالة نصية
entrance	يهتم/يعتني
left out	متوتر/عصبى
international	عرض تقديمي

Language Expressions & Prepositions

keep a promise	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
chat with	يعد خطة لـ
excited about	يذهب للتسوق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يفقد/يخسر		
يُحضر		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
fake	real
بشكل جيد	بشكل سيئ

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

center – fun – plane – plan – have

My name is Yara. I'm really excited! I (1)..... to meet my friend Mariam on Saturday at 10 o'clock in the city (2)..... . We want to go to a café and have some coffee. After that, we might walk around the park or go shopping if we (3)..... free time. I'm sure we'll have so much (4)..... together!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

- There is a beautiful statue at the of the museum.
a) entrance b) start c) building d) importance
- My mum promises to cookies for us tonight.
a) bake b) do c) go d) take
- Adam spent all night working on his for the meeting.
a) conversation b) chat c) presentation d) promise

Language

- you visit your friend tomorrow?
a) Are b) Did c) Have d) Will
- Who do you think the next World Cup?
a) win b) winning c) will win d) is going to
- I to travel around for a few months before starting university.
a) has b) will c) am going d) can

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I promise I (not/ tell) your secret to anyone.
- Are you (will) to clean the fridge?
- When (she will) arrive?
- I hope Hana (invite) me to her party.
- Mary (not/ get) a good mark because she hasn't studied hard.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Riham is suggesting watching a comedy movie.

Hanan : It's so boring! What should we do?

Riham : (1).....?

Hanan : Sounds good! What movie could we watch?

Riham : (2).....

Hanan : That sounds funny! I like comedies.

Riham : (3).....!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My cousin felt when he saw the lion at the zoo.

- a) pleased b) excited c) surprised d) afraid

2. Omar likes to fun with his friends.

- a) take b) have c) play d) do

3. He felt left when his friends didn't invite him.

- a) down b) in c) out d) at

4. I think they arrive early in the morning.

- a) will b) going to c) are going d) are

5. My parents travel to Canada next month.

- a) go to b) are going c) going to d) are going to

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A real friend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

worth	.....	.....	يروج
crowdfunding	.....	.....	موجد
effort	.....	.....	طالب جامعي
charity	.....	.....	يد العون
greener	.....	.....	عمل تجاري محلي
amount	.....	.....	صيدلية

Language Expressions & Prepositions

help a good cause	.....	.....	يقص شعره
raise money	.....	.....	ينشر رسالة
bring together	.....	.....	يستحق مكافأة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

.....	ينمو/يزرع	.....	.....
.....	يعطي	.....	.....

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
.....
.....
increase	reduce

Definitions

.....	: to make a promise and say you will do something
.....	: to have an important effect on something or someone
.....	: to reach more places or people

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

together – bad – good – support – worth

A good friend likes you for who you are and doesn't try to change you. They (1)..... you when you're in need. A (2)..... friend listens carefully and gives advice when necessary. They bring people (3)..... for a good cause and always make you feel (4)..... their time. Spending time with them feels natural and joyful.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- The science the teacher gave us was fun.
a) project b) advice c) amount d) tool
- The local sells handmade crafts.
a) advice b) business c) tool d) amount
- My neighbor offered me a when I was moving furniture أثاث.
a) good cause b) hashtag c) helping hand d) difference.

Language

- The children at home tonight. They've bought a lot of snacks.
a) stay b) going to stay c) are staying d) will stay
- Shahenda decorating her house on Sunday?
a) Will b) Is c) Has d) Does
- What to the party tonight?
a) he will bring b) is he bringing
c) he is bringing d) he's going to bring

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I (fly) to Spain for a holiday. I've got the plane tickets!
- (Will) they meeting at the park at 5 tomorrow?
- My dad (not/ leave) tomorrow. He booked the tickets for next Friday.
- How many people are you (invite) to the party?
- My cousins (have) a barbecue at the weekend. They've invited lots of people.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We all can a difference in the world.
a) spread b) make c) take d) get
2. He will a message on social media.
a) post b) raise c) do d) offer
3. Marwa decided to a haircut before the party.
a) do b) get c) reach d) arrive
4. My friends cards this evening. They've arranged everything.
a) will play b) are going to play
c) play d) are playing
5. Is Sally you to the airport on Wednesday?
a) will drive b) driving c) drive d) drove

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Omar cares deeply about helping poor people in his community. One day, he learns about a local charity that doesn't have enough food and clothes to give to people who are in need. As a college student, Omar doesn't have much money, but he wants to make an effort to help. He decides to use social media as a tool to promote the cause. Omar creates a hashtag and writes a post about the situation, including a link for people to give money. His message spreads quickly, and many people offer help. A supermarket even supports the project by giving extra food. Omar feels proud when the charity gets enough help to support more families. He learns that small actions can make a big difference for a good cause.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How does Omar use social media to help poor people in his community?
.....
2. When does Omar feel proud?
3. What does Omar learn from his experience?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Omar learned that small actions can
a) take a lot of time b) make a big difference
c) cause many problems d) require lots of money
5. Omar created a to spread the message.
a) campaign b) flyer c) hashtag d) website

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary			
riverboat pilot	.....	.....	خادم
publish	.....	.....	أصلى
biography	.....	.....	صحفى
adventure	.....	.....	رواية
friendship	.....	.....	خجول
tips	.....	.....	يخدع
Language Expressions & Prepositions			
face challenges	.....	.....	يبقى على تواصل مع
earn money	.....	.....	على طوافة
at the age of	.....	.....	يعرض أمانه للخطر
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs			
.....	يخبر	.....	.....
.....	يصبح	.....	.....
Words and Opposites			
Words		Opposites	
.....	مختلف	.....	مشابه
Definitions			
.....	: to divide something or do it at the same time		
.....	: happy to try new and exciting things		
.....	: your family, experiences, living conditions, etc.		
.....	: when a situation helps you get to know someone better		

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

inventor – career – invention – riverboat – published

Mark Twain was born in Missouri, in the USA. He left school at the age of 12. He had many different jobs before he started his writing (1)..... . He was a (2)..... pilot on the great Mississippi River, a journalist, a teacher, and an (3)..... . He (4)..... his first novel, *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* in 1876.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- The factory needs more to make the toys.
a) materials b) conditions c) suggestions d) plans
- The firefighter's saved many people from the burning building.
a) safety b) bravery c) friendship d) money
- Samy the thieves by pretending to be a poor traveler.
a) behaved b) shared c) tricked d) divided

Language

- I the art class at 1 p.m. this afternoon.
a) going to join b) will join
c) am joining d) am going to join
- I think the next exam be simple. It needs much effort.
a) will b) won't c) isn't going d) is going
- We travel to Alex next week. I have a holiday.
a) are going to b) going to c) are going d) go to

3 Complete the following dialog:

Kareem is suggesting watching an action movie.

Kareem : Do you want to spend time together tonight?

Khaled : (1)....., I'd love to.

Kareem : What about (2)..... to the cinema?

Khaled : That sounds good. (3)..... kind of movie could we watch?

Kareem : We could watch an action movie.

Khaled : An action movie? That's great!

Kareem : What time does it start?

Kareem : It (4)..... at 9 p.m.



Scan & listen



نص الاستماع
في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- How did Anas change during his journey?
- He became
a) worse b) better c) older d) younger
- What was Anas like at the beginning of the journey?
a) Good. b) Funny. c) Smart. d) Bad.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A true friend is someone who always you.
a) divides b) offers
c) supports d) shares
- After a long walk in nature, she felt a sense of
a) worry b) behavior
c) peace d) fear
- We must challenges to succeed.
a) face b) share
c) make d) feel
- We his birthday next Saturday. Everything is arranged.
a) will celebrate b) are celebrating
c) going to celebrate d) celebrate
- They have decided that they a new house next week.
a) builds b) are building
c) are going to build d) will build

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- I will trying a new recipe tomorrow for a change. (.....)
- My brothers are going to visiting the museum this weekend. (.....)
- We going the museum tomorrow because it's a special event. (.....)
- I think the exam will be difficult. It will be easy. (.....)

Listening Text:

Through this journey, Anas changes a lot. At the start, he often behaved badly, but as time went by, he became a much better person.

General

AL-Azhar

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will she (going) to the concert?
2. We (leave) for the airport in about an hour.
3. My friends (play) video games tomorrow as planned.
4. I hope we (finish) the project by next week.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Arwa wants to go to the new café.

Arwa : Do you have any plans for the weekend?

Dalia : No, I don't. (1) you like to do something together?

Arwa : Yes, I'd love to go to the new (2)!

Dalia : That sounds great! (3) should we meet?

Arwa : We could (4) at 10.

Dalia : OK! Let's meet then.

3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:
"How social media can be used to promote good causes"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nora wants to go to the cinema.

Nora : Are you free this Friday evening?

Walaa : (1) Do you have any plans?

Nora : (2)?

Walaa : That sounds fun! What time should we meet?

Nora : (3)

Walaa : Perfect! I'll see you there at 6 p.m.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They were when their team lost the game.
a) excited b) upset c) surprised d) happy
2. The balloon will bigger when you blow it up.
a) make b) get c) give d) take
3. We need to write a/an of the story.
a) adventure b) material c) summer d) summary
4. I think it be sunny tomorrow.
a) has b) going to c) will d) is going to
5. Susan her bedroom as planned.
a) is painting b) will paint c) is going to paint d) paint

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I'm sure it rain tomorrow. (.....)
2. My parents going to travel next weekend. (.....)
3. Sherif is help his parents with the garden this weekend as arranged. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
adult	منصة بث
generation	إعلان
science fiction	نظام
personalize	مراهق
generate	التعلم الآلي
homepage	اقتراح

Language Expressions & Prepositions

send friend requests	يغير الإعدادات
for short	يؤدي مهام
upload a video/photo	مناسب لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يفهم		
يؤدي		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
go online	go offline
أفضل	أسوأ

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

online – streaming – learning – process – download

When you make videos, you can upload them to a (1)..... platform to share with others. You might also (2)..... apps or music to your phone for easy access. The (3)..... of uploading or downloading files helps us manage our digital content and stay connected with others (4)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- My grandparents belong to a very different
a) advertisement b) homepage
c) machine learning d) generation
- Please, on the link to open the website.
a) notice b) click c) cause d) personalize
- During his years, he learned how to play the guitar.
a) generation b) death c) teenage d) birth

Language

- If people regularly, they don't stay healthy.
a) exercise b) exercises
c) don't exercise d) doesn't exercise
- I feel good the next day when I to bed early.
a) will go b) was going c) went d) go
- Noha always expensive clothes when she goes shopping.
a) buy b) buys c) bought d) was buying

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The river freezes if it (be) very cold.
- I usually (cycles) to work if the weather is fine.
- If you open the fridge, the light (turn) on.
- Babies (cries) when they are hungry.
- When you (adding) sugar, the sauce tastes sweet.

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Remas wants to use AI to help her with her essay.

Remas : Hi Logy, I want to use AI.

Logy : (1)

Remas : I want to use it to help me with my essay. Is that a good idea?

Logy : (2)..... But remember, it's just a tool.

Remas : Should I depend on it completely?

Logy : (3)..... . Use it to brainstorm ideas or research information.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Social media platforms have special to recommend posts and videos.
a) algorithms b) machine learning
c) research d) homepage
- Companies use machine learning to advertisements for users.
a) notice b) encourage c) personalize d) cause
- Reda is interested science and wants to become a doctor.
a) on b) at c) of d) in
- If you put water in the freezer, it ice.
a) is becoming b) becoming c) become d) becomes
- If you mix red and green, you brown.
a) getting b) have got c) get d) got

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

“Rules of using AI”

[illegible]

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
cons	رقمى
habit	حوار/مقابلة
expert	سلبى
aspect	جهاز
situation	رفاهية/ صحة
positive	مميزات
information	منظم
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
take photos	يتخذ إجراء
make notes on	يتعرض لحروق الشمس
focus on	يطلق مواد كيميائية
make decisions	مدمن لـ
Definitions	
.....: a number which shows how important or good something is	
.....: to be more important than something	
.....: a drawing that shows information in an organized way on a vertical part of a chart	
.....: to look at or think about something and use this information to decide what you think	

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

outweigh – organized – bring – well-being – waste

Digital devices have both positive and negative effects. While they help us stay connected and (1), overuse can (2) our time. Spending the whole day on devices can create stress, but taking breaks and enjoying (3) improves your health. Remember, habits like taking time outdoors (4) the cons of spending too much time online.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- The teacher will the students' projects next week.
a) evaluate b) fix c) release d) outweigh
- My father is angry because he thinks I'm to video games.
a) fond b) addicted c) affected d) organized
- That's a/an question. I can't answer it.
a) easy b) complex c) simple d) low

Language

- If we don't clean our rooms, will Mom angry?
a) is b) being c) been d) be
- If I free time, I will visit my grandparents this weekend.
a) have b) has c) had d) having
- If I don't get enough sleep, I well tomorrow.
a) will feel b) won't feel c) feel d) not feel

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If Morad works hard, he (achieve) his goals.
- If you (not/wear) sunscreen, you will get sunburned.
- (you/ join) us if we go to the cinema?
- If you don't help me, I (not/finish) the project today.
- Nada will call me this evening if she (have) free time.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "....." means a number which shows how important or good something is.
a) Value b) Device c) Expert d) Interview
2. Factories often chemicals into the air which harms the environment.
a) release b) evaluate c) affect d) outweigh
3. Hany was nervous before the, but he answered all the questions well.
a) habit b) decision c) action d) interview
4. If he every day, he will improve his skills.
a) practice b) practiced c) practices d) practicing
5. If it isn't sunny tomorrow, we go to the beach.
a) are b) aren't c) will d) won't

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Making a decision can be **hard**, but you can make it simpler. First, think about what you need to decide. For example, should you buy a new phone or keep your old one? Next, consider the pros and cons of each option. A new phone has the latest features, but it is expensive. Keeping your old phone saves money, but it might not have all the newest apps or features. After weighing the pros and cons, choose the option that fits your needs best. If you're still unsure, you can talk to someone who knows about phones. Remember, it's okay to make mistakes. What matters is learning from them and making better decisions next time.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
2. What are the two steps in making a decision?
.....
3. Why is it important to consider both the good and bad sides of a decision?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The word "hard" in the passage means
a) fun b) boring c) difficult d) easy
5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
a) mistakes b) decisions c) friends d) choices

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

Paralympics	مندهش
champion	كرسى متحرك
concise summary	إعاقة
take place	إنجاز
highlights	حالة/ ظرف
winner	مسابقة/ منافسة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

from now on	يتغلب على الصعوبات
give my eyes a rest	المنتخب الأولمبي المصري
compare ... to	يرد على

Definitions

.....: something that makes it difficult for someone to do things the way most people do
.....: something that happens or takes place
.....: the last game in a competition, which decides the winner
.....: a disease or unhealthy condition
.....: very bad

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

special – highlights – habit – social – profiles

My name's Tarek. I have one bad digital (1) Sometimes, I compare myself to others by looking at their photos on (2) media. Although I know we only see the (3) of people's lives online, it often makes me feel like I'm not good enough. From now on, I'm going to stop checking other people's (4) and comparing myself to them.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Sama wrote a summary of the research findings.
a) concise b) terrible c) slow d) excited
- Huda hopes to the science competition.
a) lose b) win c) earn d) miss
- Mona took a prize for her great
a) summaries b) champions c) achievements d) diseases

Language

- If we at all, we die.
a) eat b) don't eat c) ate d) didn't eat
- The streets are wet when it a lot.
a) rain b) rained c) will rain d) rains
- If we don't hurry, we get the best seats at the concert.
a) don't b) won't c) wouldn't d) didn't

3 Complete the following dialog:

Sayed asks Shaza about her problem.

Sayed : Shaza, you look sad. What's wrong?

Shaza : I feel (1) sometimes.

Sayed : (2) do you feel left out?

Shaza : I feel left out because other girls can run and play, but I can't.

Sayed : It's okay. You can play sports.

Shaza : What (3) can I play?

Sayed : You can play wheelchair (4)

Shaza : Thanks, Sayed.



Scan & listen



نص الاستماع
في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What sport is Rana very good at?
a) Football. b) Tennis. c) Basketball. d) Swimming.
- What happens when Malak plays against Rana?
a) She wins. b) She loses. c) She runs. d) She sleeps.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mustafa his difficulties with the help of his friends and family.
a) took place b) crossed c) laughed d) overcame
- A/An is something that happens or takes place.
a) final b) event c) oven d) title
- The Paralympic Games include many sports for players with
a) winners b) competitions c) disabilities d) achievements
- If Mariam finishes her report, she us for dinner.
a) join b) doesn't join c) will join d) won't join
- If the sun sets, it dark.
a) gets b) doesn't get c) will get d) won't get

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

- If I stays long hours on the screen, I always get very tired. (.....)
- She gets stomachache when she drink too much coffee. (.....)
- If we leave now, we catch the bus. (.....)
- If Mohamed not ask for help, he won't finish the task. (.....)

Listening Text:

Malak likes her friend Rana so much. They both like playing tennis and are very good at it. However, every time they play, Rana wins.

General

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If they make a good offer, I (accept) it.
- Night comes when the sun (go) down.
- (they/get) upset if we cancel the event?
- We drink lots of water if it (be) very hot.

- 2 Complete the following dialog:

Hadeer uses Instagram and TikTok in her free time.

Noha : Hadeer, do you use social media?

Hadeer: Yes, I (1)

Noha : (2) types of social media do you use?

Hadeer: I use Instagram and TikTok.

Noha : When do you use them?

Hadeer: I (3) them in my free time.

Noha : (4) you use them for long hours?

Hadeer: No, I don't. I cut my screen time.

- 3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Pros and cons of AI"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

- 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Laila is checking Instagram for funny cat videos.

Mariam : Hi, Laila. Are you on your phone?

Laila : (1)

Mariam : (2)

Laila : I'm watching some funny cat videos.

Mariam : Can I watch them with you?

Laila : (3)

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They were to see their old friend at the party.

They were glad.

- a) slow b) fast c) surprised d) terrible

2. My little brother practices hard to become a

- a) champion b) condition c) loser d) championship

3. He had a/an after he had an accident.

- a) ability b) sickness c) champion d) disability

4. Mo Salah scored the winning goal in the

- a) condition b) final c) first d) completion

5. We a lot if we are hungry.

- a) eating b) ate c) eat d) eats

- 3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Food go bad when we leave it for too long outside the fridge. (.....)

2. If it is cold, what you do? (.....)

3. Basmala not watch TV if she has a rest. (.....)

Monthly Model (1) on Units 9 & 10

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

research – share – make – do – addicted

The internet can have advantages as well as disadvantages. On one hand, it helps us learn new things, talk to friends, and (1)..... our work. We can watch videos, and play games online. It also helps us get a lot of information when we do (2)..... for school or work. On the other hand, some people can be (3)..... to going online, and spend most of their time on social media. It's important to be careful and not (4)..... personal information.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- By his promise, all his friends respect him.
a) having b) keeping c) getting d) breaking
- The team worked hard, but their were not enough to win the game.
a) efforts b) businesses c) amounts d) numbers
- Let's the pros and cons of this plan.
a) worry b) solve c) fix d) evaluate
- If Younis improves his skills, he promoted يحصل على ترقية.
a) won't get b) don't get c) get d) will get
- What will you do if you a lot of money?
a) saved b) saves c) save d) will save
- You be late if you don't hurry.
a) will b) are going to c) should d) must

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- She (going) travel to Paris next year.
- I think he (start) a new job on Monday.
- If it rains, the ground (get) wet.
- If I tell you a secret, (you/ keep) it?
- My friends are going (have) a picnic this weekend.

Monthly Model (2) on Units 9 & 10

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

include – realized – friendship – cared – recognized

Lily and Emma were true friends. They (1)..... for each other and were always pleased to chat with one another. One day, a new girl, Sarah, tried to (2)..... herself in their group. At first, they thought she wasn't good, but soon they (3)..... she was kind. The three became best friends, showing that real (4)..... is supportive and helpful.

2 Complete the following dialog:

Sandra and Logy are suggesting going to the beach.

Sandra : We should go to the beach this weekend.

Logy : That's a good (1).....!

Sandra : What (2)..... having a picnic there?

Logy : Sounds good! (3)..... should we take with us?

Sandra : We should take some snacks and drinks.

Logy : OK. But I can't swim well.

Sandra : Don't worry. I can help you.

Logy : (4)..... you very much.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You (will get) 5 if you divide 20 by 4.

2. Do you think your brother (help) you?

3. Retal and Rayan (travel) to Alexandria next Friday. They have arranged everything.

4. If I learn how to cook, I (invite) you over for dinner.

5. If you (dropped) a stone into water, it sinks.

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
motor	مشكلة صحية
relative	ينتج
announcement	جدول مواعيد
clean fuel	يضر/ يتلف
journey	رصيف، محطة
equipment	محطة شحن
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
burn fuel	يصدر انبعاثات
ride a bike	يتجول
make gases	بدلاً من
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
.....	يحرق
.....	يعنى
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
normal	abnormal
.....	يغادر
.....	يعمل
Definitions	
.....	: a place or piece of equipment for giving electric motors in cars more power
.....	: an area on the side of the road that's only for people riding bikes
.....	: a car that gets all or most of its power from electricity

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

emissions – sustainable – population – pollution – electric

Clean transportation refers to eco-friendly means of transportation. We should use vehicles that don't cause (1)..... and save energy. Examples include (2)..... cars, bikes, buses, and trains that run on renewable energy. These forms of transportation help decrease carbon (3)....., improving air quality. Clean transportation is important for creating healthier cities and a (4)..... future for the environment.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Scientists are developing new types of clean to use for our cars.
a) supply b) fuel c) electricity d) lanes
- They stopped at a charging to recharge their electric car.
a) station b) stop c) port d) vehicle
- Trees oxygen for us to breathe.
a) take b) produce c) announce d) reduce

Language

- When the English lesson start?
a) do b) does c) is d) are
- Our train at 5:00 pm, so let's hurry.
a) left b) is leaving c) leave d) leaves
- My father's plane in ten minutes.
a) flying b) flew c) flies d) fly

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Does the film (begins) at 9 this evening?
- What time (is) the bus arrive?
- We are going on a trip to the zoo. It (open) at 9 a.m.
- The final match (start) at 7 o'clock tonight.
- Banks (not/close) before 3 p.m.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Tamer and Nada are talking about transportation.

Tamer : What do you think about using public transportation?

Nada : (1).....!

Tamer : Why do you think it's a great idea?

Nada : Because it helps reduce traffic and pollution.

Tamer : I agree. (2).....?

Nada : Yes, I think electric cars are much cleaner than traditional ones.

Tamer : (3).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. There will be a/an for the next trip after the break.

- a) equipment b) announcement c) electricity d) cause

2. Using clean helps reduce air pollution.

- a) fuel b) emission c) station d) stop

3. The fire caused serious to the building.

- a) winning b) cause c) help d) damage

4. The second term on February 8th.

- a) start b) starts c) is starting d) starting

5. The 06:30 bus in Al Alamein at 07:30.

- a) arriving b) is arriving c) arrives d) arrive

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Clean transportation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
running path	موارد
the Earth	يشحن (ب)
breathe	الحياة اليومية
extra	مساحات خضراء
expect	مركز رياضي
tunnel	صديقه للمناخ
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
ask for directions	يقوم بتمارين رياضية
have a look	يصبح مظلمًا
at least	على طول الطريق
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
يقطع	
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
polite	impolite
واضح	غير واضح
Definitions	
	: to turn left the next time there is a street on your left
	: on the other side of the street
	: continue walking or driving one way
	: walk from one side of the road to the other

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

area – planners – cities – community – driving

People started planning green cities for the future in Egypt in the 2010s. Today, there are many plans to build new green (1)..... in Egypt. In fact, we call these new places cities, but most of them are small places with an (2)..... of about 580 kilometers. This means that they're more like villages than big cities like Cairo. The (3)..... want these new cities to be small because that makes it easier for people to travel around them without (4)..... cars.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

1. People should use energy for homes, schools, and cars.
a) dirty b) black c) green d) blue
2. The park has a beautiful running for children to run on.
a) river b) airport c) path d) port
3. the first right after the bus station.
a) Cross b) Walk c) Take d) Keep

Language

4. The plane flew the city towards the airport.
a) over b) under c) near d) on
5. We walked the forest to the lake.
a) over b) off c) through d) to
6. I'll be there 3 p.m. on Friday.
a) of b) in c) on d) at

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We went to the beach (on) the summer.
2. The ship sailed (cross) the ocean.
3. He studied (in) home in the evening.
4. They walked (long) the beach during sunset.
5. There is a lamp (in) the table.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher likes those children because they are
a) dirty b) clean c) polite d) impolite
2. My father always parks our car front of the house.
a) on b) in c) at d) to
3. My grandparents farm animals like chickens and cows.
a) keep b) go c) appear d) do
4. Ali and Sally are going to the cinema Saturday.
a) into b) in c) at d) on
5. They traveled the country by car.
a) with b) by c) across d) cross

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One hot day, Samy and his dog Max were exploring the desert. They walked for hours, looking for something interesting. Suddenly, Samy realized he was lost. He looked around and saw only sand and rocks. He felt scared and tired. Max stayed close to Samy, giving him comfort. Samy remembered he had some skills. He found some wet leaves and drank their water. They rested under a small tree to stay cool. As the sun set, they saw a **distant** light. It was a fire! Samy and Max walked towards it and found a group of friendly people. They shared their food and water with Samy. He was happy to be safe. Samy learned to be more careful next time.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
2. What did Samy find to drink in the desert?.....
3. Who shared their food and water with Samy?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Samy felt when he realized he was lost.
a) happy b) scared c) excited d) angry
5. The word "**distant**" most likely means
a) far away b) close by c) bright d) dark

Follow-up Worksheet

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

passenger	ينظم
railway line	مقطف/اقتباس
happiness	شخصية
chapter	كوبري/جسر
council	يتحطم/يصطدم
driver	إصدار/نسخة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

make a journey	يصافح
angry with	يصيح بـ
take a risk	ينظر إلى الورا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يقع فى داخل		
يهز/يرج		

Words and Opposites

Words	Opposites
strong	weak
يركب	ينزل

Definitions

.....: to shout with happiness
.....: something that happens quickly or isn't expected
.....: to travel from one side to another

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dangerous – safe – drive – dive – lanes

Cycling is an eco-friendly way to travel. While cycling is great for the environment, the lack of safe bike (1)..... makes it challenging in our town. Traveling by bike can be (2)..... on the busy roads in our town. The town should have bike lanes on Rankin Street and School Road. When people feel (3)..... enough to ride their bikes, they won't (4)..... their cars so often.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. She read a/an from her favorite book.
a) event b) excerpt c) novel d) email
2. The city met to discuss the idea of building a new park.
a) prisoners b) count c) pilots d) council
3. The plane in the mountains. A lot of people died.
a) saved b) created c) crashed d) crossed

Language

4. He was born in 2012, July 4th.
a) for b) at c) on d) in
5. The cat is hiding the bed in the bedroom.
a) into b) under c) across d) along
6. The TV show at eight tonight.
a) starts b) starting c) start d) is starting

3 Complete the following dialog:

Lina thinks it's a great idea to ride bikes to work.

Aya : What do you think about riding bikes to work?

Lina : I think it's (1).....!

Aya : (2)..... do you think so?

Lina : Because it's good for the environment.

Aya : How (3)..... it good for the environment?

Lina : It doesn't cause (4)..... .

Aya : I think it is a lot of fun, too.

Lina : Sure.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع
في نهاية التدريب.

Scan & listen



- What is the main advantage of electric vehicles?
a) Eco-friendly. b) Faster. c) Cheaper. d) Slower.
- What is the challenge for electric vehicles?
a) Cost. b) Charging. c) Speed. d) Color.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- They planned a special for her birthday.
a) century b) excerpt c) seat d) event
- The kids crossed the to get to the park.
a) version b) council c) bridge d) line
- She reads a/an of this book every night.
a) chapter b) character c) email d) post
- This park is because it has a big playground.
a) strong b) weak c) fast d) popular
- We will meet the restaurant in an hour.
a) for b) to c) on d) at

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- The train to Aswan leave at 6 am. (.....)
- She walked toward the entrance to go into the cinema. (.....)
- The cat jumped at the table. (.....)
- When is school start next year? (.....)

Listening Text:

Electric vehicles are eco-friendly. They are better for the environment than cars that use dirty fuel, but we need more charging stations.

General

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She goes to bed (in) midnight.
2. The break (end) at 11 a.m.
3. Manal walked (in) the tunnel.
4. What time (does) the next bus?

- 2 Complete the following dialog:

Tamer is looking for the train station.

Tamer : Excuse me, officer. Can you help me?

Policeman : Yes, of (1) How can I help you?

Tamer : I'm lost. (2) is the train station, please?

Policeman : Go (3) ahead for two blocks.

Tamer : What (4) I do after that?

Policeman : Then, you should turn right. The train station is on your left.

Tamer : Thank you very much, officer.

Policeman : You are welcome.

- 3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Tips for using clean transportation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

AL-Azhar

- 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:
Basant is at the train station. She is asking about "the train to Aswan".

Clerk : Can I help you?

Basant : Yes, please. (1)?

Clerk : The next train to Aswan leaves at 10 a.m.

Basant : How long does it take?

Clerk : (2)

Basant : Which platform does it leave from?

Clerk : (3)

Basant : Thanks for your help.

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. He enjoyed the long by train. He likes traveling on trains.

a) voyage b) walk c) flight d) journey

2. Cars fuel to move. This produces pollution to the environment.

a) travel b) reduce c) burn d) damage

3. People always use the to cross the river.

a) lane b) airport c) fridge d) bridge

4. They drove the ring road to get to work quickly.

a) for b) in c) at d) on

5. the plane fly at 9.45?

a) Does b) Do c) Are d) Is

- 3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The match begin at 4:00 pm tomorrow. (.....)

2. Her birthday is at June 6th. (.....)

3. My friend Hady works on Port Said. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
shuttlebus	عطلة منزلية
historical site	مركز تسوق
terrible	ملازم مائية
fascinating	جبال
interest	مراجعة/نقد
store	منطاد الهواء الساخن
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
have a staycation	في إجازة
go on a walking tour	قريب من
ride in	يذهب بعيداً
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
يتعلم	
يطير	
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
يركب	ينزل
beautiful	ugly
Definitions	
: a place where people stay and spend time on vacation	
: a person who gives information to visitors	
: a business which organizes flights to many places	

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****fantastic – trips – weather – holidays – resort**

Hurghada is a beautiful city in Egypt. It is a famous (1)..... on the Red Sea. It's famous for its (2)..... and clear blue water. The weather is sunny and warm, making it a wonderful place for (3)..... . There are many hotels, restaurants, and fun activities for families. Tourists also enjoy boat (4)..... and shopping at local markets. Hurghada is a quiet place to relax and enjoy nature.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

- The offers flights to many different countries.
a) trip b) airline c) visitor d) review
- They decided to have a and explore their own city.
a) catacomb b) balloon c) resort d) staycation
- The weather was yesterday because it was raining all day.
a) beautiful b) fast c) weak d) terrible

Language

- Do you enjoy the piano?
a) play b) plays c) to play d) playing
- Shahd agreed her phone during free time.
a) use b) using c) to use d) used
- The government plans a lot of trees.
a) plant b) plants c) planting d) to plant

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My father promised me (buy) a new phone next holiday.
- We need (use) cleaner renewable energy.
- He suggested (eat) at that restaurant.
- We should keep (build) new schools.
- Would you mind (help) me?



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hatem is asking Karam about his vacation.

Hatem: Hi, Karam! How was your vacation?

Karam : Hi, Hatem! (1).....

Hatem: Great! (2).....?

Karam : I went to the Pyramids and took a tour of the Nile.

Hatem: Wow! (3).....?

Karam : Yes, I did. I tried koshari and falafel. They were delicious!

Hatem: Sounds amazing.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They enjoyed their stay at the five-star

- a) tour b) hotel c) shop d) mall

2. My sister showed in learning how to cook.

- a) expert b) business c) teaching d) interest

3. She bought a new dress from the

- a) trip b) review c) store d) hotel

4. I finished two years ago.

- a) studying b) to study c) to studying d) study

5. My brother suggests our grandma next weekend.

- a) to visit b) visit c) to visiting d) visiting

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your last vacation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
flexible	مستدام/مستمر
awareness	مسافر
payment	مالك/صاحب
material	ثقافة
rent	السكان المحليون
professionals	صناعة السياحة
recent	يعد/يجهز
expect	الطاقة الشمسية

Language Expressions & Prepositions

do a homestay	يحل مشكلة
in exchange for	أسباب لـ
plan vacations	يرمي/يتخلص من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يبدأ	
يختار	

Definitions

.....	: something which people use once and then throw away
.....	: all the things that people throw away
.....	: things from nature that people use
.....	: a group of people who live in the same place and share a way of life

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****local – pollution – protect – in – environment**

Tourism can have both positive and negative effects on the planet. While it helps (1) people, it often causes harm to the environment, such as (2) and damage to natural habitats. Sustainable tourism focuses on protecting the (3) It allows people to enjoy new places. We should choose eco-friendly tourism to help (4) the planet for future generations.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**Vocabulary**

1. The plan is and we can change it any time.
a) local b) flexible c) sustainable d) fixed
2. It's good to well before doing something new.
a) rent b) delete c) do d) prepare
3. The sun shines every day, so we have lots of energy.
a) water b) solar c) air d) metal

Language

4. He began tired after a long day of work.
a) feel b) to feel c) felt d) feels
5. The baby stopped when she saw her mother.
a) cry b) to crying c) to cry d) crying
6. I remember in the park as a child.
a) playing b) play c) to play d) played

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They tried (solve) the problem, but they couldn't.
2. I stopped (buy) some milk on my way home.
3. Remember (lock) the door when you leave.
4. Sameh began (write) stories at an early age.
5. I remember (meet) this man when we were in Alexandria last summer.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should reduce our to protect the environment.
a) awareness b) tourism c) plants d) waste
2. He to help carry the bags.
a) avoided b) caused c) offered d) enjoyed
3. Hatem asked how much it costs to the house.
a) rent b) cycle c) let d) allow
4. They're trying in a different country.
a) to live b) living c) to living d) live
5. My mom stopped when the lights went out.
a) cooks b) cooked c) to cook d) cooking

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sustainable tourism is about traveling in a way that protects the environment and helps local communities. Tourists can make a big difference by making small changes. For example, they can use public transportation, stay in eco-friendly hotels, and avoid single-use plastics. When visiting natural areas, it's important to respect wildlife and not leave any trash behind. Supporting local businesses and eating local food also helps the community. Learning about the culture and traditions of the place you visit can make the trip more enjoyable.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What are some ways to travel sustainably?
.....
2. How can tourists help local communities?
.....
3. Why is it important to respect nature while traveling?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. We can reduce our environmental impact by using
a) a car b) plastic c) eco-hotels d) fast food
5. We can learn about local culture when we
a) ignore customs b) visit tourist sites
c) eat international food d) learn local traditions

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary	
responsible	إعلان
aquarium	يكتب (على جهاز)
landscape	يطبع
city tour	لا يُصدق/رائع
airport	دليل السفر
trash can	مبنى تاريخي
Language Expressions & Prepositions	
a long way from	يصبح أكثر انشغالاً
on the trip	يسقط القمامة
go/walk past	مشهور بـ
Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	
..... يبيع	.....
..... يبين/يوضح	.....
Words and Opposites	
Words	Opposites
heavy	light
..... قبيح	..... جميل

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

respect – neglect – local – eco-friendly – reducing

Being a responsible tourist means taking care of the environment and respecting local people. You can help by (1)..... waste, saving water, and supporting (2)..... shops and restaurants. Choosing (3)..... hotels and transportation helps protect nature. It's also important to (4)..... wildlife and local traditions so that future visitors can enjoy these places too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Many buildings are protected by the government.
a) strong b) history c) fast d) historic
- When my parents are away, I'm for my little sister.
a) tired b) responsible c) worried d) fond
- The food at the restaurant was We all liked it.
a) incredible b) responsible c) excited d) ugly

Language

- Mazen suggested not this evening, it's very cold.
a) to go b) go c) goes d) going
- We chose at the Italian restaurant.
a) eaten b) eat c) to eat d) eating
- I love time with my family.
a) spend b) to spend c) spending d) both b & c

3 Complete the following dialog:

Rasha and Randa are talking about the importance of sustainable tourism.

Rasha : Do you know about sustainable tourism?

Randa : Yes, I (1)..... . It's very important for our planet.

Rasha : (2)..... is it important?

Randa : Because it helps protect the environment.

Rasha : How can tourists be more sustainable?

Randa : Tourists should use eco-friendly transportation.

Rasha : (3)..... else can they do?

Randa : They should (4)..... single-use plastics.



Scan & listen



نص الاستماع
في نهاية التدريب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What does the speaker suggest about being a responsible tourist?
 - Don't travel.
 - Carry a trash bag.
 - Avoid crowds.
 - Don't drop trash.
- What should you do if you can't find a trash can?
 - Throw trash.
 - Burn trash.
 - Keep trash in your bag.
 - Bury trash.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher asked us to our homework.
 - print
 - explore
 - miss
 - waste
- I busier before the exams.
 - plan
 - get
 - take
 - do
- Would you like the party with us?
 - to attend
 - attending
 - attend
 - to attending
- We should avoid the air.
 - to pollute
 - polluting
 - pollute
 - to polluting
- He promised his best to finish the project.
 - to do
 - doing
 - to doing
 - do

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

- I don't feel like go to work today. (.....)
- Many people dislike wake up early in the morning. (.....)
- She agreed work with us on the project. (.....)
- Mom chose order pizza instead of cooking. (.....)

Listening Text:

It's important to be a responsible tourist. Don't drop trash. If you can't find a trash can, put things back in your bag until you find one.

Part 2

Final Revision & Tests



1

Vocabulary/Language/Writing Revision

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية (يُصاحبها تدريبات) ومهارة الكتابة الخاصة بكل وحدة

2

SB Exercises

التدريبات الخاصة بكتاب المدرسة مصنفة ومقسمة إلى وحدات

3

Final Tests

الامتحانات العامة على المنهج (١٧ امتحاناً عاماً)

4

Al-Azhar Tests

الامتحانات الخاصة بطلبة الأزهر (٥ امتحانات)

5

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع الامتحانات

(1) Vocabulary/Language/Writing Revision

Unit 7: Helping each other to learn

A Vocabulary

annoying (adj)	مزعج	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	perfect (adj)	رائع/ممتاز
appreciate (d) (v)	يقدر	environmentally friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
brain (n)	المخ	exist (ed) (v)	يوجد	recycled (adj)	مُعاد تدويره
cell (n)	الخلية	experience (n)	تجربة (حياتية)	reduce (d) (v)	يقلل
confidence (n)	ثقة	grade (n)	مرحلة/صف/درجة	represent (ed) (v)	يُمثل
connection (n)	اتصال	handicrafts (n)	حرف يدوية	save (d) (v)	يوفر/يدخر/يحفظ
courage (n)	الشجاعة	learning (n)	التعلم	traditions (n)	تقاليد
craft (n)	حرفة	link (n/v)	رابط/يربط	tricky (adj)	صعب/معقد/مخادع
device (n)	جهاز	nervous (adj)	عصبي/متوتر	values (n)	القيم
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	peace (n)	السلام		

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My father traveled to many countries. He had lots of
a) crafts b) traditions c) experiences d) values
- You should make your learning more to help the environment.
a) eco-friendly b) tricky c) recycled d) nervous
- My parents always me to keep going to achieve my goals.
a) encourage b) check c) exist d) protect
- Hana was chosen to her school at the competition.
a) save b) reduce c) represent d) protect

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

appreciate – experience – represent – craft – patience

My grandfather told me stories about his adventures when he was young. He explained that each (1) taught him different lessons. For example, climbing mountains taught him (2); sailing on the sea meant peace and traveling to new lands brought much information. Listening to his stories made me (3) my family history. I learned that these experiences (4) our connection to nature, adventure, and wisdom الحكمة.

B Language

1 Wh- object questions forms (present/past) صيغ الأسئلة بأدوات استفهام في المضارع/الماضي

Question Words كلمات الاستفهام

What ما - ماذا	When متى	Whose لمن	How many كم عدد
What kind ما نوع	Where أين	Which أي	How long كم المدة
What color ما لون	Why لماذا	How كيف	How often كم مرة
What size ما حجم	Who من	How much كم ثمن/كمية	How far كم المسافة

In the present

في المضارع

Q. Word + **do** + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + **inf.** مصدر الفعل.

e.g. • **A:** What time **do** your kids get up? **B:** They **get** up at 6 o'clock.

Q. Word + **does** + he, she, it, اسم مفرد + **inf.** مصدر الفعل.

e.g. • **A:** When **does** Sally **go** to work? **B:** She **goes** to work at 9 a.m.

In the past

في الماضي

Q. Word + **did/didn't** + subject الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل.

e.g. • **A:** Where **did** you **go** on vacation?

B: I **went** to Paris.

• **A:** Why **didn't** Hala **answer** the phone?

B: She **didn't answer** the phone because she was busy.

Subject: الفاعل

I, we, they,

you, he, she, it,

اسم مفرد، اسم جمع

2 Defining Relative Clauses

جمل الوصل المحددة

1. who (الذي/التي للعاقل)

e.g. • I saw **the boy who** won the prize.

2. which (الذي/التي لغير العاقل)

e.g. • **The book which** I read was very exciting.

3. that (الذي/التي للعاقل أو غير العاقل)

e.g. • **The bike that** I got for my birthday is blue.

• **The boy that** helped me is very kind.

4. whose (الذي لديه (الملكية)

e.g. • **That's the boy whose** father is a teacher at school.

5. where (حيث (للمكان)

e.g. • **That's the supermarket where** I bought the groceries.

6. when (عندما (للزمن)

e.g. • **October is the month when** I was born.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Where you spend your last summer vacation?
a) did b) do c) are d) will
- How your father now?
a) does b) is c) did d) was
- I like reading the novel we studied at school.
a) where b) what c) which d) who
- Our relatives live in the USA visit us once a year.
a) who b) how c) which d) what
- I'll never forget the moment I won the prize.
a) when b) where c) who d) which
- A:** What Yara good at? **B:** She is very good at painting.
a) was b) is c) does d) are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What (is) your favorite subject when you were a student?
- When (do) your mother make lunch every day?
- Alexanderia is the city (where) I like to visit in summer.
- My sister (which) is my twin is called Basmala.
- What (do) you do yesterday?
- Where (is) she work?
- I like the friend (what) supports the others.
- I'm worried about the result of the exam (who) was difficult.
- How (did) your last trip?
- We visited a village (who) people were very welcoming.
- How long (does) the way to school?
- A:** Which sport (were) you interested in?
B: I like handball very much.
- This is the factory (where) my father works in.
- When does the meeting (starts)?

Unit 8: New life in old cities

A Vocabulary

artifacts (n) تحف/قطع أثرية	fascinated (adj) مفتون	population (n) سكان
bother (ed) (v) يُزعج	frustrating (adj) محبط/مخيب للأمل	reflect on (ed) (v) يفكر/يتأمل في
confident (adj) واثق	hiking path (n) مسار المشي/التنزه	respect (ed) (v) يحترم
construction (n) بناء/عمران	issues (n) قضايا	shy (adj) خجول
contribute to (d) (v) يساهم في	open spaces (n) مساحات فارغة	subway station (n) محطة مترو الأنفاق
creative (adj) مبدع/مبتكر	organizer (n) مُنظم	teamwork (n) العمل الجماعي
crowd (n) حشد/جمهور	outdated (adj) قديم	transportation (n) المواصلات
enclosure (n) حظيرة محاطة بسياج	park (ed) (v) يركن سيارة	twin (n) توأم
excitement (n) إثارة	peaceful (adj) هادئ/مسالم	urban (adj) حضري/مدني
facilities (n) مرافق/تسهيلات	playful (adj) مرح/لعوب	wildlife (n) الحياة البرية

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- grows and more people need to live in cities.
a) Construction b) Population c) Station d) Transportation
- such as hospitals, shops and clubs help improve the quality of life for people.
a) Issues b) Spaces c) Artifacts d) Facilities
- The museum is full of old
a) enclosures b) spaces c) artifacts d) organizers
- The journey was wonderful and the pupils were
a) outdated b) creative c) shy d) fascinated

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

spaces – stations – sign – outdated – facilities

Farida and Shorouk are friends who has some problems in their cities. Farida went to the basketball court, but it was closed. There was a (1)..... saying it isn't safe. Now there's nowhere to play basketball. Shorouk mentioned a similar problem in her city, where open (2)..... are being used to build apartment buildings. Farida visited the local community center, but found it old and (3)..... They discussed the need for better (4)..... and more subway stations or underground parking.

B Language

1 Past Simple and Past Continuous

الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر

Past Simple

ماضٍ بسيط

Past Continuous

ماضٍ مستمر

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject + الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...

- She **played** tennis **yesterday**.
- We **went** to the zoo **last Friday**.

Subject + الفاعل + **was/were** + (inf. + ing) ...

I/He/She/It اسم مفرد → **was** + (inf. + ing) ...

- I **was eating** lunch **at 3 yesterday**.
- You/We/They** اسم جمع → **were** + (inf. + ing) ...
- We **were sleeping** **yesterday evening**.

Negative النفي

Subject + الفاعل + **didn't** + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...

- He **didn't go** to work last week.

Subject + الفاعل + **wasn't/weren't** + (inf. + ing) ...

- He **wasn't sleeping** from 2 to 4 p.m.
- They **weren't studying** all time yesterday.

Yes/No question السؤال بـهل

Did + Subject + الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...?

- **Did** you **watch** TV last night?

Was/Were + subject + الفاعل + (inf. + ing) ...?

- **Was he** **studying** all night?
- **Were you** **listening** to music?

Wh- question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word + **did** + subject + الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...?

- Where **did** Samy **go** last Sunday?

Q. Word + **was/were** + subject + الفاعل + (inf. + ing) ...?

- Who **was** **studying** all night yesterday?
- What **were** you **doing** yesterday afternoon?

2 While/As أثناء - When عندما

A

While/As + past continuous , past simple

e.g. • While I **was reading** a book, the phone **rang**.

Past simple + while/as + past continuous

e.g. • Grandfather **arrived** while Mom **was cooking**.

B

When + past simple , past continuous

e.g. • When it **rained**, I **was cycling** to school.

Past continuous + when + past simple

e.g. • My father **was watching** TV when the light **turned** off.

3 Quantifiers (many/much/enough)

محددات الكمية

1. (too) many كثيرًا (للجمع)

e.g. • There aren't **many** students in the classroom.

2. (too) much كثيرًا (للكمية)

e.g. • Oh no, there's **too much** noise outside!

3. (not) enough كافٍ/بدرجة كافية (جمع/كمية)

e.g. • We have **enough** chairs for the guests.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My father us to the international park last weekend.
a) take b) takes c) took d) was taking
2. Noha and Retal TV at seven yesterday.
a) were watching b) watched c) watch d) watching
3. My mother lunch when my father came.
a) is making b) makes c) made d) was making
4. I saw so people standing in front of the stadium.
a) enough b) many c) much d) any
5. Nader from Italy a week ago.
a) will return b) returned c) has returned d) returns
6. While my father home, he saw an accident.
a) drive b) was driving c) drove d) is driving

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't like too (many) salt in the food.
2. There aren't (not enough) chairs for us. We need more.
3. My father (travel) to Rome in 2023.
4. My baby brother (sleep) all day yesterday.
5. While they (play), it started to rain.
6. The boys were making much noise when the teacher (come) in.
7. While (read), I fell asleep.
8. When I went to school, I (see) my friends.
9. Mona likes (many) sugar in her tea.
10. My uncle is a businessman. He travels to (enough) countries.
11. While I (wait) for the bus to school, I met my friend, Basim.
12. We (lie) on the beach all afternoon yesterday.
13. Who was (waited) for you at the school gate?
14. I (didn't) at home while Taher was preparing for the party.

Unit 9: Plans with friends

A Vocabulary

adventurous (adj)	مغامر	fake (adj)	مزيف	risk (v)	يعرض للخطر
afraid (adj)	خائف	good cause (n)	مقضية جيدة/سبب وجيه	riverboat pilot (n)	قبطان قارب نهري
biography (n)	سيرة شخصية	group chat (n)	دردشة جماعية	servant (n)	خادم
brave (adj)	شجاع	included (adj)	متضمن/مشمّل	spread (v)	ينتشر/ينشر/يشيع
care (d) (v)	يهتم/يعتني	inventor (n)	مخترع	support (ed) (v)	يسانّد/يدعم
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	left out (adj)	مستبعد/ منبوذ	surprised (adj)	مندهش
crowdfunding (n)	تمويل جماعي	offer (ed) (v)	يعرض	tool (n)	أداة
curious (adj)	فضول	promise (d) (v/n)	يعد/وعد	trick (ed) (v)	يخدع
effort (n)	مجهود	promote (d) (v)	يروج	upset (adj)	منزعج
entrance (n)	مدخل	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر (طباعة)	worth (adj)	مستحق

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I can meet you at the to the mall at 3:00 p.m. if you like.
a) entrance b) effort c) biography d) cause
- He decides to use social media to the word.
a) care b) spread c) publish d) trick
- My friend likes to travel to strange places. He's
a) fake b) upset c) adventurous d) surprised
- The cleaned the house every morning.
a) servant b) charity c) pilot d) tool

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

offered – fake – brave – worth – included

Taher had a real friend named Sami. He always (1)..... him in games and never made him feel left out. Unlike (2)..... friends, Sami always cares and supports his friend. He made an effort to help him when he needed it. One day, he (3)..... to help with his homework. Taher knew that having a friend like Sami was (4)..... more than anything.



Language

Future Plans

الخطط المستقبلية

A Future with "will"

- To talk about promises, quick decisions, and predictions when there is no present evidence.

للتحدث عن الوعود والقرارات السريعة والتنبؤ بدون وجود دليل.

Form

التكوين

Subject + will / won't + inf. مصدر الفعل + الفاعل

e.g. • Aunt Manal **will come** tomorrow. • My father **won't buy** me a new mobile.

Key words

الكلمات الدالة

I'm sure أنا متأكد - I think أنا أعتقد - I promise أنا أعد

B Future with "going to"

- To talk about a plan, we made or an intention we had before the moment of speaking.

للتحدث عن خطة تم وضعها مسبقاً أو نية كانت لدينا قبل لحظة الحديث.

Form

التكوين

I > + **am (not)**
He/She/It/ اسم مفرد > + **is (not)** + **going to** + (inf.) مصدر الفعل
We/You/They/ اسم جمع > + **are (not)**

e.g. • I **am not going to travel** to Alexandria next weekend.

• You're late. You're **going to miss** your train!

C Future with "present continuous"

- We use the present continuous to talk about arrangements in the future, especially when we already know the time and place.

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الترتيبات في المستقبل، خاصة مع ذكر الوقت والمكان.

- كيف تعرف أن الحدث مرتب له مسبقاً؟

e.g. • Omar and I **are travelling** next week. (We have got the tickets.) - يذكر الترتيب الذي تم.

e.g. • Judy and Hadeer **are having** a party next Friday. (It's arranged.) - يذكر كلمة دالة على الترتيب.

e.g. • I **am meeting** my cousin at seven at the new restaurant. - يحدد موعد أو مكان الحدث.

Form

التكوين

I **am/am not**
He } **is/isn't**
She }
It }
You } **are/aren't**
We }
They }

inf. + ing

e.g. • I **am playing** football.

• I **am not playing** chess.

e.g. • He **is reading** a book.

• He **is not (isn't) watching** TV.

e.g. • They **are swimming**.

• They **are not (aren't) diving**.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My aunt us next week. I am not sure.
a) visits b) visited c) will visit d) was visiting
2. Aunt Nadia and Uncle Adel Hurghada tomorrow. They have decided that.
a) are going to visit b) are visiting
c) will visit d) were visiting
3. I can't meet you tomorrow. I my grandma at 5 p.m.
a) was visiting b) am going to visit
c) will visit d) am visiting
4. I think it tomorrow.
a) rains b) will rain c) is raining d) was raining
5. Shereen hopes she as an engineer when she grows up.
a) going to work b) to work c) working d) will work
6. I don't think Yasser is free; he for the trip now.
a) was preparing b) prepared c) is preparing d) preparing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They (be/going) spend their next vacation in Alex.
2. He (travel) to Paris next week. He has arranged everything.
3. Waleed will (staying) at home next holiday.
4. I (meet) my friend at the new restaurant at five.
5. We (have) a party at 9 p.m. next Thursday. We invited all our friends.
6. Omar is (visit) the countryside next Friday. He's planning to do that.
7. I'm (go) to play with my friends tomorrow.
8. Sandy promises she won't (coming) late again.
9. Mom is buying flour and eggs. She (going/make) a cake.
10. They (will) travel next weekend. They're too busy.
11. I hope (join) the first team next year.
12. Nader (volunteer) to help clean the local park at 8 a.m. next weekend.
13. Perhaps, we (go) to the Grand Egyptian Museum.
14. A: (be/visit) your uncle's farm tomorrow?
B: Yes, we've prepared everything.

Unit 10: The online generation

A Vocabulary

adult (n)	بالغ	final (n)	مباراة نهائية	positive (adj)	إيجابي
behavior (n)	سلوك	generation (n)	جيل	pros (n)	مميزات
champion (n)	بطل	habit (n)	عادة	renewable (adj)	متجدد
concise summary (n)	ملخص موجز/مختصر	highlights (n)	أبرز الأحداث	science fiction (n)	الخيال العلمي
cons (n)	عيوب	massive/huge (adj)	ضخم	sickness/disease (n)	مرض
disability (n)	إعاقة	negative (adj)	سلبي	streaming platform (n)	منصة بث
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	notice (d) (v)	يلاحظ	take place (v)	يحدث
evaluate (d) (v)	يقيم	outweigh (ed) (v)	يفوق في الأهمية/ يتجاوز	teenage (adj)	سن المراهقة
event (n)	حدث	Paralympics (n)	ألعاب أولمبياد المعاقين	terrible (adj)	رهيب/فظيع
expert (n)	خبير	personalize (d) (v)	يخصص	value (n)	قيمة

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher gave us two exercises to our progress.
a) notice b) evaluate c) behave d) improve
- I watched the between Al Ahly and Al Zamalek. It was great.
a) value b) habit c) fiction d) final
- We want to use energy to help the environment.
a) positive b) terrible c) renewable d) huge
- Mayada can't walk because she has a
a) disability b) behavior c) platform d) champion

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

behaves – evaluates – expressions – renewable – real

In New Zealand, primary school children are learning about the environment and (1)..... energy from the world's first AI teacher called "Will." Will looks and (2)..... like a real human. When students see him, they think he is (3)..... . If children ask Will a question, he gives an answer. Will can also understand students' (4)..... and helps them if they don't understand something.

B

Language

1 The Zero Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

- We use the zero conditional with **if/when** to talk about actions and events which are always true.

• نستخدم حالة الشرط الصفرية مع **if/when** للتكلم عن أفعال وأحداث حقيقة دائماً. (حقيقة ثابتة بوجه عام)

... مضارع بسيط subject + present simple الفاعل + present simple مضارع بسيط If / When + subject

e.g. • If you heat ice, it melts.

... مضارع بسيط subject + present simple الفاعل + present simple مضارع بسيط If / when + subject

e.g. • Plants die when we don't water them.

- We use the zero conditional to talk about scientific facts or instructions to describe a link or cause and effect between two facts or events.

• نستخدم حالة الشرط الصفرية للحديث عن الحقائق العلمية أو التعليمات لوصف الرابط أو السبب والنتيجة بين حقيقتين أو حدثين.

e.g. • If you heat water to 100 degrees Celsius, it boils.

• When you plant a seed, a flower grows.

2 The First Conditional with "If"

الحالة الشرطية الأولى

- We use "If" to talk about things in the future which we think will probably happen.

- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء نعتقد أنها من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

e.g. • We will go swimming if we go to the beach.

• If he finishes his homework, he will watch a movie.

Form

التكوين

If/ When | subject + present simple مضارع بسيط, subject + will / won't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Subject + will/ won't + inf. مصدر الفعل | if/when|subject + present simple مضارع بسيط

e.g. • If you take the train, you will arrive on time.

• If he doesn't hurry, he will miss the flight.

• You won't get fit if you don't exercise.

Question

السؤال

Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word | subject + present simple مضارع بسيط | if | subject + will / won't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. • A: What will you do if it is hot tomorrow?

B: If it is hot tomorrow, we will go to the beach.

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If my father is angry, he always at us.
a) shout b) shouts c) will shout d) is shouting
- If it's fine tomorrow, we out.
a) will go b) go c) went d) are going
- The machine stops when you this button.
a) press b) will press c) presses d) pressed
- My grandfather will visit us he is free.
a) while b) if c) so d) but
- When we cut down trees, pollution
a) increases b) increased c) increase d) increasing
- You should follow your father's advice if you to make more success.
a) want b) will want c) wanted d) wants

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If I (had) too much homework, I stay up late at night.
- When it (rain), we always stay at home.
- If my uncle (will visit) us tomorrow, I'll tell him about my trip.
- If you (not/have) work, come and visit us.
- What (you/do) if it rains tomorrow?
- If you don't run, you (miss) the bus.
- Plants die if we (not/water) them.
- When it's rainy, streets (becoming) wet.
- His father (be) angry if he comes late.
- If I call her, (she will) help me with my homework?
- What happens if we (leaving) iron in the open air?
- (Is) water change into ice when we put it in a freezer?
- Samir (don't) be pleased if he knows this bad news.
- I (will) angry if Hatim breaks my mobile.

Unit 11: Clean transportation

A Vocabulary

across (adv) عبر	cheer (ed) (v) يهتف	organize (d) (v) ينظم
announcement (n) تصريح/إعلان (لفظي)	climate positive (n) صدقة للمناخ	passenger (n) راكب/مسافر
bike lane (n) حارة طريق للدراجة	council (n) مجلس	platform (n) رصيف محطة
breathe (d) (v) يتنفس	crash (ed) (v) يتحطم/يصطدم	produce (d) (v) ينتج
bridge (n) كوبري/جسر	cross (ed) (v) يعبر	reduce (d) (v) يقلل
carbon emissions (n) انبعاثات الكربون	electric vehicle (n) مركبة كهربائية	relative (n) قريب (أحد الأقارب)
carsharing (n) مشاركة السيارة	equipment (n) معدات	resources (n) موارد
century (n) قرن (١٠٠ عام)	excerpt (n) مقتطف/اقتباس	running path (n) مسار الجري
character (n) شخصية	expect (ed) (v) يتوقع	timetable (n) جدول مواعيد
charging station (n) محطة شحن	express service (n) خدمة سريعة	version (n) إصدار/نسخة

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We usually visit our on special occasions.
a) resources b) passengers c) characters d) relatives
- The is full of people who want to get on the train.
a) passenger b) platform c) lane d) council
- We should use clean transportation to reduce carbon
a) emissions b) services c) resources d) stations
- A is a person who is traveling on a bus, train, ship, or plane.
a) character b) century c) relative d) passenger

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

center – lanes – bridges – charging – organize

Electric vehicles are better for the environment, but our town needs more (1)..... stations. Currently, there's only one, and it's not in the town (2)..... The town should have ten charging stations. Traveling by bike is also good, but can be dangerous on busy roads. The town should have bike (3)..... on our roads. The town council should help (4)..... carsharing, creating a webpage for sharing car information.

B

Language

Present Simple for Timetables

المضارع البسيط مع المواعيد

Form التكوين

1) Affirmative الإثبات

I, We, They, You, جمع اسم + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. • The school holidays start in June.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + (s,es,ies) + مصدر الفعل (inf.)

e.g. • The film starts at 8 pm tonight.

2) Negative النفي

I, We, They, You, جمع اسم + don't + inf.

e.g. • Banks don't work on public holidays.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf.

e.g. • The museum doesn't open before 10 am.

3) Question السؤال

a) Yes/No question السؤال بـهل

Do + I, we, they, you, جمع اسم + inf. ...?

e.g. • Do these shops open at nine tomorrow?

Does + he, she, it, اسم مفرد + inf. ...?

e.g. • Does the bus to Luxor stop here?

b) Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. word أداة استفهام + do +
I, we, they, you, جمع اسم + inf. ...?

e.g. • What time do the shows start?

Q. word أداة استفهام + does +
he, she, it, اسم مفرد + inf. ...?

e.g. • When does the train arrive in Cairo?

Prepositions

حروف الجر

Prepositions of Time حروف الجر الخاصة بالزمن	Prepositions of Place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان	Prepositions of Movement حروف الجر الخاصة بالحركة
in (months / الشهور / years / القرون / centuries / العهود / decades / points of the day / فترات اليوم / longer periods / فترات طويلة / future timeframes / زمن المستقبل)	in (enclosed spaces / المساحات المغلقة / countries / دول / cities / مدن / regions / مساحات كبيرة / large areas / مناطق (المواقع المجردة abstract locations)	across عبر along بطول خط أو مسار around حول
on (special days / أيام محددة / dates / تواريخ / special occasions / مناسبات خاصة)	on (surface / الأسطح / specific areas / مناطق محددة / streets and roads / وسائل الإعلام / media / الأجهزة / devices)	into الحركة من الخارج للداخل off الحركة بعيداً عن السطح onto الحركة نحو السطح
at (specific times / الساعات أوقات محددة / festivals / مهرجانات / expressions / تعبيرات)	at (specific points / نقاط محددة / buildings / مباني / addresses / عناوين / locations / أحداث / events)	out of الحركة من الداخل للخارج over فوق past بجانب
		through خلال (مكان محدود) towards في اتجاه under أسفل

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The train to Aswan at seven o'clock.
a) leave b) leaves c) is leaving d) left
- Our English lesson at 11 am.
a) is being b) be c) is d) will be
- He swam the river in fifteen minutes.
a) across b) over c) past d) under
- Mona and I are at home now. will play together.
a) She b) He c) You d) We
- The plane to London off at 8 p.m.
a) takes b) taking c) are taking d) take
- I usually meet my friends the school gate.
a) out b) in c) at d) into

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The dogs are at the garden. (It) are playing.
- We went to Alex and walked (long) the beach.
- My father likes to have some tea (at) the afternoon.
- I'll wear this white dress (in) my wedding day.
- I come home (on) noon.
- (Does) these shops open at nine tomorrow?
- The film (start) at 8 pm tonight.
- The museum (not/open) before 10 am.
- The bird flew (under) the lake.
- They walked (round) the park.
- Please, bring me a bottle of water (with) the fridge.
- Anas was born (at) July 16th 1996.
- Which platform does the train to Aswan (leaves) from?
- I'm going to meet Soha in the club (on) 03:00 p.m.

Unit 12: Sustainable tourism

A Vocabulary

airline (n) خط جوي/شركة طيران	flexible (adj) مرن	resort (n) منتجع
airplane (n) طائرة	flight (n) رحلة طيران	responsible (adj) مسئول
allow (ed) (v) يسمح بـ	guide (n) مرشد	shuttlebus (n) حافلة نقل
aquarium (n) معرض أحياء مائية	guidebook (n) دليل إرشادي	single-use (adj) ذات الاستخدام الواحد
awareness (n) وعي/توعية	incredible (adj) لا يُصدق/رائع	stall (n) كشك
business (n) شركة/عمل تجاري	landscape (n) منظر طبيعي	staycation (n) عطلة منزلية
cable car (n) عربة معلقة (تليفريك)	modern (adj) حديث	sustainable (adj) مستدام/مستمر
eco-tourism (n) سياحة بيئية	payment (n) الدفع	tourist industry (n) صناعة السياحة
explore (d) (v) يستكشف	professionals (n) محترف/خبراء	trash can (n) سلة المهملات
fascinating (adj) مثير/خلاب/ساحر	rent (ed) (v) يؤجر	type (d) (v) يكتب (على جهاز)

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We made the for our new bike.
a) guidebook b) payment c) staycation d) flight
- Recycling is an important part of building a future.
a) sustainable b) terrible c) flexible d) responsible
- We stayed at a wonderful by the beach.
a) airplane b) flight c) stall d) resort
- We saw colorful fish at the
a) awareness b) aquarium c) industry d) landscape

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Save – responsible – waste – support – can

It's great to visit different places, but it's also important to be a (1) tourist. Don't drop trash; put things back in your bag until you find a trash (2) Think about how you travel – walk, take a train, or cycle. Visit quieter places. (3) energy on vacation by turning off lights and not wasting water. Spend money locally to (4) communities.



Language

Common verbs followed by gerund or to + infinitive

(inf. + ing) أو (to + inf.) الأفعال التي يتبعها

1. Common verbs followed by gerund (inf. + ing):

enjoy, suggest, feel like, dislike, consider, keep, spend, avoid, imagine, finish

Examples:

- e.g. • I **enjoy reading** books in my spare time.
- Hana **suggested taking** a break from work.
 - Kids should **avoid using** screens too much.
 - I can't **finish doing** my project on time.

2. Common verbs followed by (to + inf.):

decide, plan, agree, want, choose, hope, promise, learn, offer, ask, would like to

Examples:

- e.g. • My parents **decided to move** to a new city.
- We **plan to travel** to Europe next year.
 - Heba **hopes to find** a good job.
 - Mazin **offered to carry** the books for me.
 - Sama **would like to visit** the zoo.

3. Common verbs followed by gerund or to + infinitive without changing the meaning:

هناك مجموعة من الأفعال يمكن أن يتبعها (to + inf./ inf. +ing) دون تغيير في المعنى.

like, love, continue, start, hate

Examples:

- e.g. • We **love to visit/ visiting** different places.
- We all **like to look / looking** around museums.

4. Verbs followed by both gerund (inf. + ing) or (to infinitive) with different meanings:

أفعال يتبعها (inf. + ing) & (to + inf.) مع اختلاف المعنى.

stop, begin, try, remember

- | | |
|--|---|
| e.g. • My father stopped smoking . | • Dalia stopped to talk to her friend. |
| • Adel began reading the book. | • Samir began to read the book aloud. |
| • I will try to learn a new language. | • Try adding some spices to the dish. |
| • I remember meeting you last year. | • Remember to lock the door. |

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Let's go next weekend.
a) to shop b) shopping c) to shopping d) shop
- Mazin offered me.
a) to help b) help c) helping d) to helping
- Children continued although it was raining.
a) play b) playing c) to play d) b & c
- I remember you last year.
a) meet b) to meeting c) meeting d) to meet
- Don't forget your camera; we need it for tomorrow's party.
a) bringing b) bring c) to bringing d) to bring
- I suggest the midyear holiday in our village.
a) spend b) to spend c) spending d) to spending

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Dalia stopped (talk) to her friend to tell her something.
- I started to (learning) a new language.
- We didn't expect her (come) early.
- Esraa agreed (going) out for dinner.
- I can't imagine (live) away from my family.
- Hana suggested (take) a break from work.
- I spend my free time (to read) stories.
- We plan (travel) to Europe next year.
- Sama would like (visiting) the zoo.
- Nouren began to (studying) hard for the upcoming test.
- I feel like (to have) a cup of coffee.
- Would you prefer (staying) at home during vacations?
- I'm sorry, I forgot (take) your pen; I will bring it tomorrow.
- Never give up, always try (to making) success.

Writing

Unit 7

1

"How to learn in an eco-friendly way"

We can learn in an eco-friendly way by making small changes. We can walk, use bikes, or use public transport to get to school to reduce pollution. We can choose eco-friendly study materials like recycled notebooks and pens made from sustainable materials. We can take notes on a computer or tablet instead of using notebooks to reduce paper. We can study during daylight hours and turn off lights and devices when not in use to save energy. By making these simple changes, we can help protect our planet.

2

"Learning something new"

Last week, I learned how to ride a bike. At first, I was really scared to get on the bike because I thought I would fall. However, with the help of my older brother, I started practicing in a quiet park. It was hard to balance and cycle at the same time. My brother was patient and encouraged me to keep trying. After a few days of practice, I could ride the bike slowly. It felt amazing to achieve this goal. I'm so proud of myself! I advise young people not to give up their dreams and to ask for help to learn new things.

Unit 8

1

YOUNNA'S BLOG

| HELPING OUT

| ABOUT ME

| LINK

| ARCHIVE



Thursday, 20th March

Helping out

I recently volunteered at a local animal volunteer program. I helped clean the monkey enclosure, feed the animals, and play with the cats and dogs. I helped make a cleaner and happier environment for the animals. I learned the importance of helping others and the joy of giving back to the community. It was a truly amazing experience. I will volunteer again next year.

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

2

"A problem in my community"

Every community has some problems. One of the problems in my community is that there aren't many facilities for children and adults. There aren't enough places for exercising, relaxing, hanging out, and having fun. The main reason is the construction of new buildings in open spaces. For example, they built an apartment building instead of the local park. It was very frustrating. We can work together to solve this problem. We can encourage the local leaders to assign land for building more parks and community centers. We should also keep all these places clean to improve the quality of life.

Unit 9

To: Esraa

From: Sally

About: "A true friend"

Hi Esraa,

How are you? I want to tell you about my friend Emily. She is a true friend. She is kind, understanding, and always there to listen. One day, her best friend, Sarah, was feeling very sad. Sarah had failed a test and was worried about her future. Emily listened carefully to Sarah's worries and said kind, helpful words. She helped Sarah study for the next test and reminded her that everyone makes mistakes. With Emily's support, Sarah could face her fears and start to work again. This story teaches us the importance of true friendship and how a kind word or a helping hand can make a big difference.

Unit 10

"The internet"

The internet can have advantages as well as disadvantages. On one hand, it helps us learn new things, talk to friends, and do our work. We can watch videos, and play games online. It also helps us get a lot of information when we do research for school or work. On the other hand, some people can be addicted to going online, and spend most of their time on social media. It also has a lot of wrong information, so we should browse trusted websites. It's important to be careful and not share personal information because people can hack your information. We should also be aware of fake news and only trust reliable sources.

Unit 11

1

"Clean transportation"

Clean transportation can help the environment in many ways. Electric vehicles, such as cars and buses, help reduce pollution because they don't use the normal fuel. Public transportation like buses and trains can carry many people, which helps reduce the number of cars on the road. Bikes are also a great option for short trips and do not produce any emissions. Carpooling allows people to use the same car, which reduces the number of vehicles. Clean transportation helps improve air quality and reduce carbon emissions. All these ways help protect our planet and keep the air clean.

“A future city”

A city for the future will have new technology and smart buildings to make life easier. People will travel in electric cars, buses, and bikes. There will be lots of green spaces, like parks and gardens, for people to enjoy. The buildings will be tall and use clean energy. The city will be good for the environment with less pollution. People will live in comfortable homes with modern facilities. Schools and hospitals will have the best technology. The future city will stay clean and safe with good planning. It will be a wonderful place to live in.

Unit 12

“My last summer vacation”

Last summer, I went on vacation to Marsa Matrouh with my family. We stayed for a week in a beautiful beach house. Every morning, we enjoyed a delicious breakfast together. During the day, we swam in the sea, built sandcastles, and collected seashells. One day, we went on a boat tour and saw dolphins jumping out of the water. In the evenings, we watched beautiful sunsets and had barbecues on the beach. My favorite part of the vacation was spending time with my family and relaxing by the sea. It was a wonderful vacation, and I hope to go to Marsa Matrouh again next year.

“Sustainable tourism”

Sustainable tourism is important because it helps protect nature and supports local people. It means traveling in ways that don't harm the environment and help the communities in tourist areas. For example, you can use eco-friendly transport, stay in green hotels, and respect the local culture. Sustainable tourism also helps save resources like water and forests. When travelers choose sustainable tourism, they reduce their impact on the planet, and local people get more job opportunities. This kind of tourism helps make sure that future generations can visit beautiful places, too. Everyone can help by making simple, smart choices when planning their trips.

(2) SB Exercises

Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. I need to a presentation, so I'm ready to give it in front of many people.
a) take b) forget c) practice d) type
2. I plan to study for the next twenty minutes and then I will a break and relax.
a) take b) do c) make d) give
3. I want to all the new words in the text in yellow so it's easy to see them.
a) spell b) tell c) print d) highlight
4. I read the website and then notes on the most important information in my notebook.
a) did b) made c) helped d) forgot
5. I always the most important words in a sentence, so I can focus on them.
a) underline b) plan c) print d) practice
6. It's a good idea to different ways to remember words.
a) thank for b) pick up c) look at d) think about

Language

7. That's the boy father is a teacher at the school.
a) who b) whose c) that d) where
8. This is the shop I buy all my notebooks.
a) when b) which c) where d) that
9. This is the website explains grammar rules clearly.
a) who b) where c) who d) which
10. You are the person help I need most.
a) where b) when c) who d) whose
11. Morning is the time I learn best.
a) when b) where c) whose d) that
12. The class is the place I meet my friends.
a) when b) where c) who d) whose
13. Do you know this bag belongs to?
a) where b) which c) who d) whose

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Where (are) you usually study?
2. How did you (traveled) to Luxor last summer?
3. Why does she (likes) painting?
4. When did you (met) in elementary school?
5. How often does Samir (takes) the bus to school?
6. When (are) you go to school?
7. How long (does) you usually study?
8. How (were) you travel to school yesterday?
9. Who (do) you meet last night?
10. What did you (reading) last week?
11. What did you (studied) yesterday?
12. Do you remember any words (who) you learned before?
13. I'm proud of you. You're the only grandchild in the family (whose) works really hard.
14. I believe that home is a place (when) we can learn a lot from each other!
15. The school (who) was near our home was too expensive.
16. The book (this) I bought last year is still difficult for me.
17. The school (whom) you go to now is one of the best in the area.
18. That's the boy (whose) helped me with my English homework.
19. The notebook (what) is in my bag has the new English words from the lesson.
20. Students (why) study every day usually get better grades.
21. I like classmates (who's) share their notes with me.
22. We joined the after-school class (who) helps us with our homework.

Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The is a great place to go on vacation.
a) care b) countryside c) quality d) enclosure
2. There are lots of in our town, like a hospital, a swimming pool, and a basketball court.
a) programs b) movies c) spaces d) facilities

3. The city's helped lots of people find jobs in the new markets.
a) growth b) lane c) community d) tent
4. There is a lot of happening in our neighborhood because they are building a new apartment building.
a) education b) construction c) environment d) neighborhood
5. India has the largest in the world.
a) solution b) safety c) population d) tournament
6. City is really important to make a city a nice place to live.
a) planning b) wildlife c) path d) court

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. I (watch) movies on TV all day yesterday.
2. Mariam (was having) a cat called Felix when she was a child.
3. We (stay) at my uncle's farm in the countryside during the vacation but now we're back at school.
4. The tennis tournament lasted a week, so my dad (was driving) me to the court every morning.
5. On Saturday morning, the volunteers arrived at the park. It was (rained) hard.
6. We went to the mall and (buy) a present for our mom's birthday, then we came home.
7. (When) I was watching the birds, they suddenly flew away.
8. We were watching a movie (while) the internet stopped working.
9. I was reading a book (while) my mom called me for dinner.
10. She was drawing a picture (when) her brother was playing video games.
11. While I (shopping) with my family yesterday, I saw you with your parents.
12. Amany (read) a book for the whole journey while we were taking the train to Aswan.
13. What interesting things did you see when you (visit) the museum?
14. I (play) football yesterday when it started to rain.
15. I got a message from my best friend while I (have) breakfast this morning.
16. While we were playing in the tournament, I (break) my ankle.

Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. I feel when something happens, and I didn't think it would happen.
a) afraid b) nervous c) surprised d) pleased
2. I feel when I lose something that I really liked.
a) upset b) excited c) afraid d) surprised
3. I feel when my mom doesn't answer her phone for a long time.
a) pleased b) upset c) angry d) worried
4. I feel when I'm at the top of a tall building and I look down.
a) angry b) afraid c) pleased d) surprised

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. I am going (help) my friend Sara prepare the food for the party.
2. Look at those black clouds. There is going (be) a storm soon.
3. I (call) you when I get home. I promise.
4. We (bake) some cookies for our friend this afternoon. We plan to do this.
5. My friends (not/have) any problems with the homework. I predict that.
6. Don't worry. I (come) for you!
7. I (bring) my list of questions for the doctor, too.
8. I (come) to your house around 1:45.
9. I'm (visit) my grandma this afternoon.
10. I'm (meet) Karim outside the movie theater in 5 minutes.
11. They're (stay) at home tonight.
12. Omar (taking) an English test tomorrow.
13. Ali (does) playing football this evening.
14. I (meet) my friend Amir on Saturday at 3 p.m. It's arranged.

Review C

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. I was when I got 85% in my exam! I didn't expect it.
a) angry b) afraid c) upset d) surprised
2. It's important to a break when you're studying.
a) make b) take c) do d) stay
3. I'm going to some notes before I write my essay.
a) do b) stay c) make d) get
4. Tamer is very about going on vacation this summer.
a) angry b) afraid c) excited d) nervous
5. It's a good idea to a presentation before you do it in class.
a) practice b) highlight c) underline d) produce
6. Do you feel before you have an exam?
a) angry b) surprised c) excited d) nervous

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

construction – countryside – population – planning – pollution

There's a hospital, a swimming pool, and other facilities in our town. It has got a (1) of 21,000 people and it is in the (2), so there are lots of beautiful green spaces. The town is getting bigger and there's a lot of (3) happening at the moment. Growth will be great for the town, but we need good (4) so they don't build on all the green spaces.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. Who does Basel (plays) football with?
2. Where did you (went) last summer?
3. Why (do) Dad need to rest?
4. How did they (traveled) to Aswan?
5. Where (Amira/learned) to play chess?
6. Rana (go) to the park and met her friends.
7. Uncle Maged fell asleep while he (watch) football.
8. We (have) dinner when we heard someone outside.
9. Fareeda (see) Aunt Samira at the bus stop this morning. It's 2 p.m.
10. Ashraf (read) a book in the library when I saw him.

Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- If something is, you make sure no one else can see it.
a) lonely b) shocked c) private d) sensible
- My cousin asked if I had an to upload photos of our holiday.
a) address b) invitation c) article d) account
- My mom says I shouldn't look at my for more than an hour at a time.
a) settings b) screen c) account d) requests
- Let's send Reem a friend She always posts interesting things!
a) request b) helper c) skill d) generation
- Can you help me? I'm trying to a video of our basketball win. It won't post!
a) look at b) change c) upload d) remind
- I think you need to the settings, then it will post.
a) take b) make c) do d) change

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

- If I (stays) online too long, my eyes hurt.
- Plants die if they (not/get) enough water.
- If it (be) a school night, I go to bed early.
- My friend Reem feel unhappy if she (not/spend) enough time outdoors.
- If you (finds) her on social media, you can see all her videos.
- If they want our help, we (help) them.
- If you (spent) too much time in the sun, you get sunburn.
- If you want to make tea, you (will need) hot water.
- If you forget your notebook again, your teacher (not/be) very happy.
- We won't get there in time if we (not/leave) right now.
- If you (took) a lot of photos, you can look back at them to remember the day.
- Computers get hot if we (used) them for a long time.
- If you (not/sleep) enough, you feel tired.
- If you (not/drink) enough, you have a headache later.
- If we (does) our homework well, we get a good grade.
- If you (posts) photos on social media, people can see them.
- If you (feels) bored, go outside and do something with your friends to feel better.

Unit 11

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. This train (arrive) at 7:35 p.m.
2. The 6:30 bus (not/arrive) in Akhmim at 6:55 p.m.
3. The bus (leave) from the bus stop 1A now.
4. This train is the express service and it (take) two hours.
5. This bus (take) about 20 minutes to get to Safaga.
6. The train to Aswan (not/leave) from this platform.
7. What time (is) the next train stop in Luxor?
8. The next train to Alexandria (leave) at 14:20.
9. When does that bus (arrives)?
10. This train (get) to Cairo at 1:30.
11. We will finish building the city (at) 2028.
12. We're going (under) the tunnel now. Everything will go dark.
13. There are lots of shops (a long) this road.
14. I just saw Bassem dive (to) the pool.
15. When you drive (in) the ring road, you will see a lot of charging stations.

Unit 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Doing a homestay can help you learn about the of the place you visit.
a) payment b) tourism c) case d) culture
2. It helps the local when visitors try new things.
a) owner b) community c) design d) energy
3. Homestays are often more than hotel because they are real homes.
a) interesting b) recent c) sustainable d) flexible
4. Some big don't let people stay for short breaks when they're busy.
a) cultures b) travelers c) resorts d) choices
5. The homestay usually has everything you usually have in a
a) towel b) payment c) company d) home
6. A good way to find a homestay is to read online
a) materials b) designs c) professionals d) reviews

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. If you begin (cook) at 1.00, the meal will be ready at 4.00.
2. People began (feel) worried when the lights went out.
3. Do you remember (take) lots of photos last time we went out?
4. Did you remember (turn off) the lights?
5. We have to try (do) some new hobbies – it might be fun!
6. Can you try (get) home early tonight, because Grandma is coming over.
7. I stopped (watch) that TV show last year – I don't think it's funny anymore.
8. My friends and I stopped (read) a poster about a sports competition.
9. I tried (go) climbing in the mountains last year on vacation, but I didn't like it!

Review D

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. If you don't stop looking at the screen now, you (get) a headache.
2. If you (forgot) your password, you can't log in to your account.
3. This app will work better if you (updated) your software.
4. When you use too much data, your internet speed (slow) down.
5. If you send me that video, I (look) at it now.
6. When you shop online, AI (remember) what you like to buy.
7. We're playing a basketball match (on) the sports center tomorrow.
8. Everyone will use more AI technology (through) 2030.
9. Mr. Adel is going to a town planning meeting (in) Thursday.
10. I prefer cycling on a bike lane than cycling (at) the city.
11. More people live in cities now than (on) the countryside.
12. The bus drove (into) the bridge and stopped down town.
13. Did you enjoy (have) a staycation this year?
14. We were planning (visit) Jordan, but we couldn't go.
15. We're going to Marsa Alam. So, I need (remember) to take my underwater camera.
16. Promise (send) me some photos.
17. My dad suggested (upload) the photos onto my social media page.

General Exercises SB pages 85-86

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Language

1. While we (walk) in the park, it started to rain.
2. What time (you meet) your friends at the mall tomorrow?
3. Lots of people (wait) when we arrived at the market at 6 a.m.
4. I (help) you with those bags. They look heavy.
5. Amira was talking to her sister when her dad (get) home.
6. It (take) thirty minutes for me to get from home to my school in the morning.
7. Ashraf stopped (eating) lunch at a café.
8. Ashraf stopped (eat) when he was full.
9. Do you remember (learn) this in English?
10. Did you remember (bring) the tickets?
11. My mom tries (phone) her sister every evening.
12. My mom tries (cook) a new dish every week.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Vocabulary

Avoid – clear – first – positive – negative

Tips are a way of giving advice or suggestions to help someone in a particular situation. Tips should be (1)..... and easy to follow. When writing tips, use short and simple sentences. (2)..... difficult words and use friendly language. Start with the most important points (3)..... . It can be good to use bullet points or numbers to make the tips easy to read. Always focus on what the reader needs to know and try to be helpful and (4)..... .

(3) Final Tests

Test (1)

30

A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. How does the speaker like to break down new information?

- a) By ignoring it.
- b) By reading it once.
- c) By breaking it down into smaller parts.
- d) By watching TV.

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.



2. What helps the speaker understand information better?

- a) Writing poems.
- b) Using pictures.
- c) Skipping lessons.
- d) Watching movies.

3. What does the speaker do to help remember new information?

- a) Teaches it to someone else.
- b) Hides it.
- c) Reads it only once.
- d) Forgets about it.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Repeating makes it easier to new things.

5. The speaker wants to improve his learning

6. The speaker makes connections to things he/she already

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. When I study, I like to the important words to study them later.

- a) forget
- b) highlight
- c) practice
- d) tell

2. There are lots of in our town, like a hospital and a swimming pool.

- a) leaders
- b) neighborhoods
- c) instructions
- d) facilities

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

crowdfunding – message – negative – positive – importance

Using social media for a good cause can make a big effect. Post a (1) to spread the word about (2) efforts for a local business. People will realize the (3) of supporting their community. Sharing stories and updates can help gather support and donations تبرعات. Together, we can use social media to make a (4) difference and help those in need.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. I will (living) in a big city when I'm older.
2. If children (not/eat) well, they aren't healthy.
3. The next bus (come) in 35 minutes.
4. We really enjoyed (go) to places in the city.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

A father is advising his son, Nader, about using screens.

Father: What are you doing, Nader?

Nader: I (1) chatting with my friend online.

Father: I see you're spending much time looking at screens every day!

Nader : What do you think I (2) do?

Father: You should cut the amount of time you use online.

Nader: What happens (3) I look at screens for a long time?

Father: This is a serious matter.

Nader: Why?

Father: As you will be (4) to screens.

Nader : OK, Dad; I will follow your advice well.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"Your last vacation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

(3 marks)

Scan & listen



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Why is town planning important for small cities in Egypt?

- a) To increase traffic.
- b) To control growth.
- c) To build more houses.
- d) To decrease the population.

2. What does good planning reduce?

- a) Number of trees.
- b) Amount of food.
- c) Traffic.
- d) Rain.

3. What does good planning improve?

- a) Building libraries.
- b) Increasing buses.
- c) Life quality.
- d) Cutting down trees.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Town planning helps stop too many people living in one

5. Good planning helps the

6. By organizing spaces well, town planning natural resources.

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. Children are usually in dark places.

- a) interested
- b) scared
- c) pleased
- d) bored

2. I have a/an on the Facebook app.

- a) count
- b) request
- c) account
- d) screen

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

dangers – gaming – for – dangerous – addicted

My dad has cut my screen time because he wants me to spend less time (1)..... Now my laptop switches off after an hour! He read an article about the (2)..... of too much gaming. It's easy for teens to get (3)..... and ignore other activities. I don't do useful activities or see my friend Yasser for months. I think he's right. I will talk to my parents and go (4)..... a run! That will make Dad happy!

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

(6 marks)

Learning in an eco-friendly way means using methods that are good for the environment. Students can use digital books instead of paper books to save trees. They can also **recycle** paper, plastic, and other materials. Using reusable water bottles instead of plastic ones is another way. Schools can save electricity by turning off lights when not needed and using natural sunlight. Outdoor classes in parks can also reduce the need for electricity. These actions help protect our planet and make learning better for everyone. It's important to think about the environment while learning.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. is one way to save trees.
a) Using plastic bottles b) Using digital books
c) Turning off lights d) Outdoor classes
2. The word "**recycle**" means
a) throw away b) use again
c) read books d) turn off lights

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

5. How can schools help save electricity?

.....

6. Why is it important to learn in an eco-friendly way?

.....



Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. I hope I travel around the world when I grow up.
a) will b) am going to
c) am d) have
2. If babies are hungry, they
a) crying b) cries
c) cry d) to cry

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. Who is (wait) for Basmala?
2. He was so angry that he (leave) the house suddenly.
3. The festival (end) next Sunday.
4. My friends and I stopped (read) a poster about a sports competition.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Manal and Ayman are discussing ways of cutting down pollution.

Manal : Driving cars is bad for the environment.

Ayman : Why?

Manal : Because about 23% of the world's (1)..... emissions come from cars.

Ayman : What can we do to reduce these (2).....?

Manal : We shouldn't use private cars in cities or crowded places. We should use green transportation.

Ayman : What (3)..... you mean by green transportation?

Manal : I mean the kinds of transportation that don't cause pollution, such as (4)..... cars and buses.

Ayman : You're right; that is good for the environment.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"Clean transportation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. Where was Emily Dickinson born?

a) Boston.

b) New York.

c) Amherst.

d) Philadelphia.

2. How many poems did Emily Dickinson write?

a) 800.

b) 1,000.

c) 1,500.

d) 1,800.

3. What themes are often explored in her poems?

a) Love.

b) Death.

c) Happiness.

d) Adventure.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Emily Dickinson was born in, Massachusetts.

5. She rarely left her home, preferring

6. Her work was affected by her notes of

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. is when you travel in someone else's car or take someone with you in your car.

a) Charging

b) Carpooling

c) Damaging

d) Driving

2. A/An is a person who gives information to visitors.

a) doorman

b) guide

c) diver

d) engineer

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

materials – electricity – planets – protect – reduce

When studying, think about the environment. Use a computer or tablet to take notes and save paper. Study during the day to use natural light and save (1)..... . Choose pens and notebooks made from recycled (2)..... . Walk, cycle, or take public transportation to school to (3)..... pollution. These simple steps can help (4)..... our planet while you learn. Making small changes can have a big impact!

(6 marks)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- B) Answer the following questions:**

- Writing**

(1 mark)

- Final Tests 105

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. The girl (who) dress is red, is my cousin.
2. I (break) the vase while I was cleaning the bookshelf.
3. It is difficult to understand people (which) talk too fast.
4. If people eat too many sweets, they (got) fat.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Randa and Salwa are going to spend a week in Hurghada.

Randa: Let's take a taxi to catch our bus to Hurghada.

Salwa: What time does it (1)..... Cairo?

Randa: At 8 a.m.

Salwa: Will we take a long time to (2)..... in Hurghada?

Randa: The bus takes about five to six hours.

Salwa: Don't forget to bring your (3).....

Randa: Sure, I will bring it to take photos there.

Salwa: How long will we stay there?

Randa: We are going to spend a (4)..... there.

Salwa: I hope we will have a nice time.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"How you spent your last weekend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. What is one example of helping out mentioned in the text?

- a) Taking a nap.
- b) Carrying groceries.
- c) Going shopping.
- d) Watching TV.

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

Scan & listen



2. What are small things that can make others happy?

- a) Ignoring people.
- b) Walking away.
- c) Crying.
- d) Opening doors.

3. How is helping others useful?

- a) It brings fun.
- b) It feels tiring.
- c) It spends money.
- d) It gains money.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Volunteering at a local is a great way to give a hand.

5. Helping out can make a big in someone's life.

6. Offering a can make others happy.

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. We should turn off the we aren't using.

- a) materials
- b) sunlight
- c) choices
- d) devices

2. India has the largest in the world; about 1.411 billion people live there.

- a) population
- b) countryside
- c) pollution
- d) pool

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

relax – action – going – doing – worried

I'm nervous about the test tomorrow. I'm (1)..... I might do badly. On Saturday, do you want to do something fun to (2).....? Maybe we could go to the mall and spend some time together. It would be a nice break after the test. Maybe (3)..... shopping isn't the best thing for us to do. What about going to the cinema on Saturday? I want to see that new (4)..... film.

(6 marks)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- B) Answer the following questions:**

- ## Writing

(1 mark)

- 108 Part (2): Final Revision & Tests

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. I (sleeping) happily when a loud noise woke me up.
2. Perhaps children (not) go to school in the future.
3. Maha (buy) expensive clothes if she goes shopping.
4. The train (leaving) Sohag at 7:23.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Rasha and Marwa are speaking about their hobbies during vacations.

Rasha : The summer vacation is coming. We'll have enough time to practice our favorite hobbies.

Marwa : What do you enjoy (1) during vacations?

Rasha : I prefer doing many hobbies.

Marwa : Like what?

Rasha : I like to (2) short stories and collect stamps. What about you?

Marwa : I always read history books and visit ancient (3)

Rasha : What else do you prefer to do?

Marwa : I like to go to (4) to enjoy the sea and the nice weather there.

Rasha : It's important to spend our time doing useful activities.

Marwa : I agree with you. I hope we'll enjoy our time.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"A story about a true friend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. What does the mom want the speaker to do?

- a) Watch more TV.
- b) Spend more time outdoors.
- c) Play video games.
- d) Study more.

2. How long can the speaker watch TV each day?

- a) One hour.
- b) Two hours.
- c) Three hours.
- d) No time.

3. What did the mom read about spending time outside?

- a) It is boring.
- b) It is unhealthy.
- c) It can make you happier.
- d) It is dangerous.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

- 4. Mom wants the speaker to spend more time
- 5. Mom thinks too much screen time is for health.
- 6. The speaker guesses he needs to find some new

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. "....." means not real, but made to look or seem real.

- a) True
- b) Right
- c) Fake
- d) Shy

2. My mom asked me not to any private photos on social media.

- a) change
- b) upload
- c) accept
- d) look at

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

repeat – highlight – make – taking – diagrams

When learning something new, I find it helpful to (1)..... notes and review them often. I always (2)..... new things, so I practice them regularly. I also use (3)..... to make things easier to remember. Teaching what I've learned to someone else helps me understand it better. Lastly, (4)..... breaks and getting good rest make it easier for my brain to remember new information.

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

Scan & listen



4 Read the following, then answer the questions: (6 marks)

Tamer and Gamal are wonderful friends. One day, Tamer had a bad day at school and felt very sad. Gamal noticed and stayed with him, listening to his problems. Gamal told Tamer that everything would be okay and cheered him up with funny stories. They went to the park and played their favorite games. Tamer felt much better because of Gamal's **support**. A real friend like Gamal is always there to help and make you feel better. Friendship means caring for each other and being there in good times and bad. Tamer realized how lucky he was to have a friend like Gamal.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Gamal cheered Tamer up by
 a) ignoring him b) telling him funny stories
 c) laughing at him d) damaging him
2. The word "***support***" is similar in meaning to
 a) help b) argue
 c) ignore d) hurt

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?
.....
5. Why did Gamal feel better at the park?
.....
6. How do you think a real friend can help you in difficult times?
.....

Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1 mark)

- 1.** Grandpa always his umbrella when it rains.
a) take b) takes
c) will take d) is taking
- 2.** I promise I you when I get home.
a) call b) will call
c) called d) am calling

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. It's unlikely that people will stop (stay) in hotels.
2. What (does) your father read this morning?
3. What (you were) doing when I called you last night?
4. I won't (forgot) my friends when I grow up.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Akram and Basim are speaking about sustainable tourism.

Akram: We all should try to encourage sustainable tourism.

Basim: What do you mean by sustainable tourism?

Akram: It's the kind of tourism that doesn't harm the historic
(1)..... or the environment.

Basim: (2)..... should we do to keep these places clean?

Akram: We should guide tourists and show them how to avoid
(3)..... the places they visit.

Basim: How should we treat **يعامل** (4).....?

Akram: We should treat tourists well and help them enjoy their time in Egypt.

Basim: That's right; we all should help tourists and encourage sustainable tourism.

Akram: Then we can provide jobs for young people and help our
(4).....

Basim: I hope so.

8 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Hossam to tell him about your plan for a homestay. Your name is Tarek.

(6 marks)

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. How much of the world's carbon emissions come from cars?

a) 10%.

b) 23%.

c) 50%.

d) 70%.

2. What do vehicles that aren't electric cause?

a) Clean air.

b) Health benefits.

c) No damage.

d) Pollution.

3. What should you use to help the environment?

a) Regular cars.

b) Clean transportation.

c) Fast cars.

d) Old vehicles.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Driving cars harms the

5. Vehicles that don't use clean fuel cause issues.

6. Clean transportation produces fewer carbon

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. I didn't answer the first question. It was

a) simple

b) easy

c) tricky

d) useful

2. We went to Hurghada last year and stayed in a fantastic on the beach.

a) site

b) staycation

c) resort

d) shuttlebus

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

nature – natural – taking – waste – recycled

Making your learning eco-friendly is easy. Use a computer or tablet for (1)..... notes to save paper. Study during the day to use (2)..... light and save electricity. Choose pens and notebooks made from (3)..... materials. Walk or cycle to school instead of using a car. Bring a reusable water bottle and lunch container to avoid plastic (4)..... . Small changes can help protect the planet while you learn.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

(6 marks)

Today was a quiet and thoughtful day. I spent the afternoon sitting by the window, watching the rain. The soft sound of raindrops helped me reflect on my week. I realized that I often forget to appreciate the small moments in life. This week, I made new friends at school and learned new things in class. Writing in my journal helps me remember these special times. It also makes me feel **grateful** and happy. I decided to set a goal to write in my journal every day. I believe this will help me stay positive and mindful of the good things in my life.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is
a) the sound of raindrops
b) the small moments in life
c) making new friends
d) that writing in a journal is helpful
2. The word "**grateful**" means
a) upset
b) sad
c) thankful
d) depressed

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main purpose الغرض of the writer's journal entry?
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
.....
5. What goal did the writer set for themselves?
.....
6. How might writing in a journal every day help someone stay positive?
.....



Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. I brush my teeth the morning.
a) in b) on c) at d) to
2. Our parents suggested some places we don't go to very often.
a) visit b) to visiting c) to visit d) visiting

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. (Who) does Martin do every day?
2. The sun was shining, so we (getting) into the water.
3. I (going) borrow some books from the library today.
4. The river freezes if it (be) very cold.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(6 marks)

Dad and his son are discussing cutting screen time.

Dad : Son, I've decided to cut your screen time.

Son : (1)..... did you decide that?

Dad : Because you spend too much time gaming.

Son : But Dad, I (2)..... to game more, not less!

Dad : I read an article about the dangers of too much gaming.

Son : (3)..... did it say?

Dad : It said too much gaming could be harmful.

Son : What do you mean by harmful?

Dad : It can stop teens from (4)..... other activities.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on "Sustainable tourism".

(6 marks)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. What should you use instead of paper for notes?

a) Plastic sheets.

b) Digital notes.

c) Stone tablets.

d) Metal plates.

2. What should you do with the paper you use?

a) Throw it away.

b) Burn it.

c) Recycle it.

d) Bury it.

3. What type of transportation should you use?

a) Private.

b) Special.

c) Public.

d) Global.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. To make learning eco-friendly, use materials.

5. Turn the devices when not in use.

6. Print on sides of the paper to reduce waste.

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. The noise from the car was very

a) shy

b) annoying

c) proud

d) pretty

2. We went a walking tour and saw the historical sites.

a) on

b) at

c) in

d) of

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

carpooling – fuel – difference – different – tips

Reducing carbon emissions from transportation helps the environment. Here are some (1)..... : use public transportation. Like buses and trains, or (2)..... with friends. Ride a bike or walk for short trips. Choose electric cars if you can because they are better for the environment than cars that use dirty (3)..... . These small changes can make a big (4)..... in reducing carbon emissions and keeping our air clean.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. We (going/have) a picnic tomorrow.
2. I cycle to work if the weather (be) fine.
3. What time (does) the next lesson?
4. More people are choosing (not/stay) in big hotels.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Faten and Huda are talking about the human brain.

Faten: Do you know what's more powerful than all computers?

Huda: Yes, I (1).....

Faten: (2)..... is it?

Huda: It is the human brain.

Faten: (3)..... do you think so?

Huda: Because it works all day without stopping.

Faten: What happens when we learn a new thing?

Huda: We create new (4)..... between brain cells we already have.

Faten: You're right; one brain cell can connect with up to 10,000 others.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"Summarizing a story"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. When do many students study?

a) In the morning.

b) In the evening.

c) At noon.

d) At midnight.

2. What should you do to save energy while studying?

a) Leave lights on.

b) Use more devices.

c) Turn off lights and devices.

d) Study all night.

3. How can you reduce pollution when going to school?

a) Drive alone.

b) Take public transportation.

c) Use a motorcycle.

d) Take a taxi.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Try studying during the day with natural

5. Consider using pens made from recycled materials and notebooks with recycled

6. To reduce pollution, walk,, or take public transportation to school.

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. More cities have bike to make it easier for people to ride their bikes.

a) lanes

b) relatives

c) stations

d) streets

2. My dad works in He builds new houses and apartment blocks.

a) construction

b) population

c) growth

d) space

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

at – in – active – disagree – importance

When we learn something new, our brain makes connections between brain cells we already have. Even when we sleep, some parts of the brain are (1)..... Young people are more interested (2)..... learning if they understand why it's useful. Teachers should explain the (3)..... of what is being learned. When we agree with someone, we think it is a fact. When we (4)....., we think it's just an opinion.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

(6 marks)

The New Administrative Capital is an Egyptian city designed for the future. It's in the east of Cairo; it will be the new home for government buildings, businesses, and many people. The city is planned to have **green spaces**, smart technology, and modern devices. Solar panels will provide clean energy, and there will be efficient public transportation. The city aims to reduce busy roads in Cairo and offer a better quality of life. Schools, hospitals, and entertainment areas are included in the plan. By focusing on sustainability, the New Administrative Capital represents a bright future for Egypt.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The New Administrative Capital is designed to
a) reduce crowdedness in Cairo b) replace Cairo
c) be a tourist attraction d) be a small village
2. The word "green spaces" means
a) schooling b) industry
c) tourism d) planting

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
.....
5. Why is the New Administrative Capital important for Egypt?
.....
6. How can focusing on sustainability be useful for a city?
.....



Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. I fell down while I down the stairs.
a) was going b) went
c) am going d) go
2. What sport Mazin like to do?
a) has b) is
c) do d) does

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. More people are choosing to try (do) a homestay instead.
2. My sister's birthday (be) on Tuesday.
3. I don't earn (too) money to buy that car.
4. Giza is the city (which) I live.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Tamer is researching how to keep the environment clean.

Taher : What are you doing, Tamer?

Tamer : I'm (1)..... how to keep the environment clean.

Taher : That's great; we should all be eco-friendly.

Tamer : Can you share in this task?

Taher : Of (2)..... I will help you. I like to do social work.

Tamer : Thanks. You are always helpful, Taher.

Taher : (3)..... will you finish it?

Tamer : Next Monday.

Taher : Do we need to borrow books from the school (4).....?

Tamer : Yes, Mr. Adly will help us there.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"A city for the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. What helped the speaker succeed?

a) Giving up.

b) Not giving up.

c) Taking breaks.

d) Asking for help.

2. What did the speaker do each time?

a) Made small changes.

b) Stayed the same.

c) Asked for advice.

d) Read a book.

3. What is important for any challenge, according to the speaker?

a) Speed and strength.

b) Practice and patience.

c) Luck and talent.

d) Friends and family.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. I think what helped me was not giving up.

5. Now, I know it's okay to at first.

6. Practice and patience are important for any

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. They bought fresh fruit from a in the market.

a) library

b) stall

c) bakery

d) museum

2. Many teens are to social media.

a) digital

b) lonely

c) massive

d) addicted

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

for – support – situation – upset – to

Liyan and Emma were best friends. They did everything together. One day, Emma felt (1)..... because she lost her favorite toy. Liyan helped her search everywhere. Finally, they found it under the sofa. Emma was so happy and thanked Liyan (2)..... her help. They learned that good friends always (3)..... each other and never give up. Their friendship grew even stronger after this (4).....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. Thank you for putting so (many) effort into the project.
2. Which dress (she is) going to wear for the party?
3. I was enjoying the party, but Sonia (wants) to leave.
4. Who (were) you meet at the party yesterday?

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Kamel and Mohamed are speaking about city planning.

Kamel : I see lots of new buildings in our city.

Mohamed : You're (1)..... . There are different buildings everywhere.

Kamel : Why do you think city planning is important?

Mohamed : (2)..... it helps city leaders decide how to use land.

Kamel : (3)..... happens when the population grows?

Mohamed : People need to live in bigger places with different facilities.

Kamel : What must new buildings be like?

Mohamed : They must be (4)..... for the community.

8 Write an informal email of about EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Peter on the pros and cons of tourism. Your name is Kamel and your email address is kamel@student.com. Your friend's email address is peter@gmail.com.

(6 marks)

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. Why is Farida unable to play basketball?

- a) The court is too small.
- b) The court is closed.
- c) There are no basketballs.
- d) She lost interest.

2. What issue does Shorouk mention about her city?

- a) Moving away.
- b) Building parks.
- c) Closing schools.
- d) Building new apartments.

3. Where did Farida go?

- a) The community center.
- b) The court.
- c) The park.
- d) The new apartment.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Farida went to the local community center to new friends.

5. Shorouk wanted to play

6. They're building new apartments on spaces.

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. The is the smallest thing that you find inside the body.

- a) sale
- b) sail
- c) cell
- d) seal

2. Khalid wanted everyone to know about the charity, so he used social media to the word.

- a) spread
- b) raise
- c) include
- d) share

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

highlights – screens – habits – condition – profiles

Good digital habits include using devices for learning and staying in touch with friends and family. It's also important to take regular breaks from (1)..... to rest your eyes. Bad digital (2)..... are spending too much time online, using social media too much and looking at people's (3)....., seeing only their (4).....



6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. My uncle avoids (go) to work by car.
2. I (not/say) hello because you were walking very fast.
3. She (flying) to New York next week.
4. People spend (too many) time on their mobile phones.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Samir and Ramzy are speaking about their volunteering experiences.

Samir : Last summer, I volunteered at the zoo every weekend.

Ramzy : (1)..... did you do there?

Samir : I fed monkeys and cared about them.

Ramzy : Did you enjoy your work there?

Samir : Yes, I (2).....; monkeys were playful.

Ramzy : Wonderful!

Samir : What (3)..... you?

Ramzy : I volunteered at the museum with my school history club. I helped guides there.

Samir : Who did you see there?

Ramzy : I saw a lot of (4)..... from different countries.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words to promote your good cause.

(6 marks)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. What helps you stay strong and active?

- a) Watching TV.
- b) Eating a balanced diet.
- c) Sleeping more.
- d) Playing video games.

2. What should you eat every day?

- a) Fast food.
- b) Candy.
- c) Fruits.
- d) Ice cream.

3. What is essential to drink plenty of?

- a) Water.
- b) Soda.
- c) Juice.
- d) Milk.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Healthy eating is important for

5. Avoid too much sugar and food.

6. By making healthy food choices, you can improve your overall

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. A is a disadvantage or reason not to do something.

- a) con
- b) pro
- c) decision
- d) chart

2. To is to make something suitable for a particular person.

- a) summarize
- b) personalize
- c) realize
- d) apologize

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

proud – explore – worker – discover – twins

Judy and Hams lived in a tall building in a new city. On a sunny Saturday, they went to (1)..... their neighborhood. They wanted to see the new playground. At the park, they met Mr. Ragab, a friendly (2)..... . He showed them the playground. The (3)..... were excited to help paint the benches. They felt (4)..... to help their community and make the park beautiful.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. I can suggest places where you can stop (eat) lunch when you are out.
2. He was born (at) the 19th century.
3. I don't think we have (time enough) to finish the project.
4. Our neighbors (having) a barbecue at the weekend. It's arranged.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

The clerk and the traveler are at the train station.

Clerk : Can I help you?

Traveler : Yes! (1)..... platform does the Aswan train leave from?

Clerk : The train to Aswan leaves from Platform 4.

Traveler : How often do the trains to Aswan run?

Clerk : They run every hour.

Traveler : When (2)..... the next one?

Clerk : The next one is at 12:15 p.m.

Traveler : Can I buy a ticket here?

Clerk : Yes, you (3)..... . Here it is.

Traveler : (4)..... for all your help.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"Your future plan for next weekend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. Where are new green cities built?

a) Near France.

b) Near Tokyo.

c) Near Luxor.

d) In Egypt.

2. How large will new green cities be?

a) 580 kilometres.

b) 500 hectares.

c) 600 hectares.

d) 700 hectares.

3. What will new green cities include?

a) Skyscrapers.

b) Green spaces.

c) Factories.

d) Shopping malls.



B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. The new green cities are more like a

5. The plan for new green cities was announced in

6. The new green cities will have trees, and community

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. Tourism are the people who plan vacations.

a) professionals

b) visitors

c) problems

d) communities

2. I went to the basketball to play with my friends.

a) block

b) court

c) space

d) park

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

frustrating – appreciated – practiced – encouraged – excited

Today, I spent the afternoon with my grandmother, learning to make a necklace with colored beads. I was (1)..... but found it difficult. The beads were tiny, and I kept dropping them. It was (2)....., but my grandmother (3)..... me, saying, "Patience is key, Sarah." Her words reminded me that learning new skills takes time. In the end, I (4)..... the necklace and the time spent together.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. How many people (she did) invite to the party?
2. I have a friend (that) parents live abroad.
3. Classes end (in) the 4th of July.
4. If you have a problem, the owner will try (helping) you solve it.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Hatim and Gamal are talking about the pros and cons of online shopping.

Hatim : Hello, Gamal. What do you want to buy online?

Gamal : Hello, Hatim. I want to buy a new (1).....

Hatim : A new mobile! But you already have a smart one.

Gamal : It fell to the ground while I was (2)..... in the street and broke down.

Hatim : What bad luck!

Gamal : What are the (3)..... of shopping online?

Hatim : You can choose what you want and save time and effort.

Gamal : Do you think there are any (4)..... to shopping online?

Hatim : Yes, of course. You may receive the wrong item, or the delivery may be late. So, one should be careful to buy from the sites they trust.

Gamal : You're right.

8 Write an informal email of about EIGHTY (80) words to your friend Layla about the pros and cons of the internet. Your name is Lobna and your email address is lobna@hotmail.com. Your friend's email is layla20@gmail.com.

(6 marks)

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. What activity did the speaker do with their mother?

a) Cooking.

b) Gardening.

c) Painting.

d) Sewing.

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

Scan & listen



2. What did the speaker find difficult about gardening?

a) Digging the soil.

b) Watering the plants.

c) Choosing the flowers.

d) Finding the right tools.

3. What lesson did the speaker learn from their mother?

a) Gardening is easy.

b) Gardening is quick.

c) Gardening is boring.

d) Gardening needs patience.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. The speaker wanted to plant

5. The soil was hard to dig, and the speaker kept dropping the

6. The speaker learned that new skills need

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. Some teens find it hard to decisions.

a) have

b) get

c) make

d) do

2. More people are choosing not to stay in big hotels, but to try
a homestay.

a) making

b) doing

c) having

d) taking

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

save – take – keep – lanes – transportation

A city for the future uses clean energy and green spaces. Buildings have solar panels and green roofs. (1)..... is eco-friendly, with electric buses and bike (2)..... . People recycle and use smart technology to (3)..... energy. Parks and trees make the city beautiful and help clean the air. Everyone works together to (4)..... the city safe, clean, and healthy for all.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. Friday is the day (that) I go to the park with my family.
2. As Maha (running), a dog attacked her.
3. We don't know what will happen (at) the future.
4. Homestays are beginning (become) a popular choice for travelers.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Reem talks about her science test and Hala gives her advice.

Hala : You look upset, Reem. What is the matter?

Reem : I'm a bit nervous (1)..... our science test tomorrow.

Hala : Why (2)..... you nervous?

Reem : I'm worried that I'll (3)..... badly.

Hala : But you always study hard, Reem.

Reem : You're right, but I'm not good at science like other subjects.

Hala : You can join our group. We usually discuss difficult points.

Reem : What else (4)..... I do?

Hala : You can follow online video lessons on science.

Reem : Thanks a lot for your advice.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"Addiction to screens"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. What happens in the brain when we learn something new?

- a) New brain cells are made.
 b) New connections are made.
 c) The brain stops working.
 d) The brain gets larger.

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

Scan & listen



2. What does new technology show about the brain during sleep?

- a) It is completely inactive. b) It is very active.
 c) Some parts are still active. d) It reduces in size.

3. Why is it important for teachers to explain the usefulness of what students are learning?

- a) To make the lessons harder. b) To make students more interested.
 c) To give more homework. d) To shorten the classes.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. New technology helps us see what is happening in the more clearly.

5. Young people are more interested in learning if they understand its

6. people think our brains make new brain cells when we learn something new.

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. I'm very interested in our community garden. I'm by it.

- a) talented b) fascinated c) bored d) disappointed

2. My little brother is very He always plays a lot during the day.

- a) true b) useful c) active d) clear

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

closed – frustrating – close – centers – spaces

Leila was excited to explore her new neighborhood, but it was (1) when she discovered the playground was (2) for safety reasons. She felt terrible. Then, Aya noticed that they were building new houses, taking up all the open (3) Both girls wished for more parks and better community (4) with activities for kids.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s)

in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. I want to see the film (who) everybody's talking about.
2. I (hear) the news when I was having lunch.
3. We can drive (under) the tunnel.
4. Many people enjoy (travel) to different cities.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Ali and Heba are talking about traveling.

Heba : Where did you go on holiday?

Ali : I (1)..... to Singapore, a Southeast Asian country.

Heba : Why did you choose that place?

Ali : Because I love to travel to Asian countries.

Heba : How (2)..... did you stay?

Ali : I stayed there for 2 weeks.

Heba : (3)..... traveled with you?

Ali : My best friends (4)..... with me.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"A real friend and a fake friend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(3 marks)

Scan & listen

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.



d) A friend.

d) Sunday afternoon.

d) Painting

(3 marks)

6. It's unusual for the speaker's friend to go

(1 mark)

d) hang

d) post

(2 marks)

path – organizers – planners – wildlife – rising

Last month, our class spent a wonderful day at a national park. We left early on Saturday, just as the sun was (1)..... . We traveled on our school bus and met the park (2)..... . Our first job was to pick up trash on the hiking (3)..... . There was so much to do! Later, we built birdhouses in a tent because it started raining. It felt good to help protect the park and its (4)..... .

(6 marks)

Helping out at different places is important. You can volunteer at a hospital, school, or animal shelter. At hospitals, you can **assist** nurses and make patients smile. In schools, you can help teachers and read to kids. At animal shelters, you can take care of pets. Volunteering teaches you new skills and helps you meet people. It also feels good to help others. Even small actions can make a big difference in the community. Volunteering shows kindness and helps make the world a better place. Everyone can find a way to volunteer and make a positive effect. Helping others is helpful and makes you feel proud of yourself.

1. Volunteering can help you
- a) sleep
 - b) meet people
 - c) buy things
 - d) travel
2. The word "**assist**" is similar in meaning to
- a) help
 - b) ignore
 - c) hurt
 - d) leave

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

.....

- ### 5. Why is volunteering important?

.....

6. How can helping out at different places make you feel good?

.....



Writing

(1 mark)

- Choose the correct form of the verb.**
1. Laura back next Tuesday. I can't wait to see her.
a) is coming b) come
c) comes d) came
2. Did you remember off the lights?
a) to turning b) turning
c) to turn d) turn

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. We will meet (on) the middle of next month.
2. This is the computer (who) I bought from my friend.
3. I (break) a plate last night.
4. What's the name of the man (when) lives next door?

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Hend is asking Hany about his travels.

Hend : How many places did you travel to?

Hany : I (1)..... to every historic place.

Hend : (2)..... do you usually go with?

Hany : I often go with my family, sometimes with my best friends.

Hend : What's your favorite tourist attraction?

Hany : (3)..... favorite tourist attraction is Luxor.

Hend : What language do you use when traveling?

Hany : I usually use English.

Hend : (4)..... do you usually do during your trip?

Hany : I often take pictures.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"A day out"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. What can be harmful without settings or controls?

a) TV.

b) AI.

c) Internet.

d) Books.

2. What happens if you rely only on AI for information? The information may be

a) incorrect

b) smarter

c) faster

d) safer

3. What can happen if you use AI too much without controls?

a) You learn new skills.

b) You become more creative.

c) Your health improves.

d) Personal details can be accessed.

B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. AI is useful, but we must use it

5. We should follow safety when using AI.

6. It can reduce skills if you depend on AI too much.

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. She is wearing a beautiful round her neck.

a) craft

b) necklace

c) rule

d) classmate

2. The Adam and Amira live in a small apartment.

a) twins

b) floors

c) blocks

d) facilities

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

produce – public – supply – protect – emissions

Clean transportation means using ways to travel that help keep the air clean. Riding a bike, walking, or using (1)..... transportation like buses and trains are good options. These ways reduce carbon (2)..... and make the environment healthier. Electric cars are also a cleaner choice because they don't (3)..... as much harmful smoke. Using clean transportation helps (4)..... our planet and keeps our cities beautiful.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

(6 marks)

I recently took a vacation to the beach and had a wonderful time. The weather was perfect, and the water was clear and warm. The hotel was clean, and the staff was very friendly. Each morning, I enjoyed a delicious breakfast by the ocean. During the day, I relaxed on the beach and swam in the sea. In the evening, I explored the nearby town and tried different restaurants. My favorite part was the boat trip where I saw dolphins. This vacation was a great way to relax and have fun. I highly **recommend** this destination to anyone looking for a peaceful vacation. It was wonderful.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The writer enjoyed a vacation
a) in the mountains b) at the beach
c) in the forest d) in the city
- The word "**recommend**" is similar in meaning to
a) warn b) forget
c) suggest d) ignore

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?
.....
- What did the writer enjoy doing in the evening?
.....
- How can a vacation help someone relax and have fun?
.....



Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

- We should only buy products can be recycled.
a) that b) what
c) where d) who
- I didn't answer your call because I
a) is working b) was working
c) worked d) work

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

(4 marks)

1. I (see) my doctor tomorrow.
2. We don't have (time) to have another coffee; we need to leave now.
3. What do you like to do (in) the weekend?
4. She wanted (be) a doctor.

7 Complete the following dialog:

(4 marks)

Sara volunteered at the museum.

Sara : Hi Rana, guess what I did last week!

Rana : What (1) you do, Sara?

Sara : I volunteered at the museum with my school history club.

Rana : That sounds fun! What did you do there?

Sara : I (2) some younger kids draw pictures of their favorite artifacts.

Rana : (3) did the kids react?

Sara : Some were shy at first, but they got more confident.

Rana : Would you do it again?

Sara : (4)! I loved helping others discover history.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 marks)

"A problem in your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

(3 marks)

1 A) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the first direction given by the woman?
 - a) Turn right.
 - b) Go straight.
 - c) Turn left.
 - d) Go back.
2. How many blocks should you walk along Riverbank Street?
 - a) One block.
 - b) Two blocks.
 - c) Three blocks.
 - d) Four blocks.
3. Where is the library located after crossing the bridge?
 - a) On the right.
 - b) On the left.
 - c) Straight ahead.
 - d) Behind you.



B) Listen and complete:

(3 marks)

4. Go straight along this street until you get to the
5. Turn right and walk along Street for three blocks.
6. Go across the bridge and walk for one

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(1 mark)

1. Mohamed Salah is famous his kindness.
 - a) at
 - b) to
 - c) with
 - d) for
2. To is to shout with happiness.
 - a) fall
 - b) agree
 - c) cheer
 - d) cross

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2 marks)

wheelchair – illnesses – terrible – amazing – achievement

Maria was born with a disability that affected her legs, so she used a (1)..... . She worked very hard and became a famous artist. Her paintings were shown in big galleries. Her (2)..... encouraged many people. Her (3)..... story teaches us that (4)..... do not stop people from being successful.

(6 marks)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- B) Answer the following questions:**

- ## Writing

(1 mark)

- Final Tests 147

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (4 marks)

1. They expect (finish) soon.
2. My dad is reading. (She) wants a cup of coffee.
3. He (meet) a lot of friendly people while he was working in the USA.
4. That's the neighbor (how) helped me when I moved in.

7 Complete the following dialog: (4 marks)

Shorouk and Farida are talking about city issues.

Shorouk : Hi Farida, how's life in Europe?

Farida : Hi! It's okay, but the basketball court is (1).....

Shorouk : (2)..... is it closed?

Farida : Because it's not safe.

Shorouk : Oh no! We have a similar problem here.

Farida : (3)..... is it?

Shorouk : They are building new apartments in all open spaces.

Farida : That (4)..... frustrating.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: (6 marks)

"A reflective journal entry"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(4) Al-Azhar Tests

Test (1)

20

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2 marks)

1. We should think about the when we are learning.

a) town

b) country

c) environment

d) community

2. Use a to take notes or to read books.

a) computer

b) tablet

c) a or b

d) none

Scan & listen



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

(3 marks)

Zeinab and Omar are talking about their future plans.

Zeinab : Hi, Omar! How are you?

Omar : Hi, Zeinab! (1).....

Zeinab : Did you think about your future plans?

Omar : Yes, I did. I want to study engineering. What about you?

Zeinab : (2).....

Omar : (3).....?

Zeinab : I want to study at a university in Cairo. How about you?

Omar : I'm thinking of studying in Alexandria.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(5 marks)

1. Mustafa a lot of time playing video games.

a) wasted

b) saved

c) went

d) thought

2. My older brother is a student. He studies engineering.

a) primary

b) college

c) nursery

d) prep

3. Basmala feels when she meets strange people.

a) adventurous

b) kind

c) shy

d) brave

4. I think our team win the next match.

a) will

b) going to

c) is going to

d) is going

5. There is some food this bag.

a) by

b) at

c) on

d) in

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: (5 marks)

Trains, streetcars, and buses are much more eco-friendly than cars or planes, especially for longer distances. Streetcars, which run on electricity, are a green and efficient way to travel, especially in cities. Like buses and trains, streetcars can carry a lot of passengers at once, which greatly lowers the carbon emissions per person. For example, a full bus can replace up to 50 cars on the road, which helps reduce both pollution and traffic. Similarly, trains use less energy and produce fewer carbon emissions than planes or cars. Traveling by trains, streetcars, or buses is a great way to be sustainable and to help protect the environment.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why are trains, streetcars, and buses more eco-friendly than cars or planes?
2. How do streetcars help reduce carbon emissions in cities?
3. Why is it good for the environment to travel by trains, streetcars, or buses?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. run on electricity.
a) Bikes b) Airplanes c) Streetcars d) Trains
5. A full bus can replace cars on the road.
a) 10 b) 20 c) 30 d) 50

5 Read and correct the underlined words: (2 marks)

1. We need a nurse what takes care of patients well. (.....)
2. They were still pick up trash at lunchtime. (.....)
3. There are too much cars on the road. It's too busy. (.....)
4. Where will your sisters going next weekend? (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on: (3 marks)

"Clean transportation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2 marks)

1. Normal cars use fuel.

a) clear

b) green

c) dirty

d) clean

2. Electric vehicles need more stations.

a) saving

b) damaging

c) changing

d) charging

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

Scan & listen



2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

(3 marks)

Taha and Zaher are talking about a homestay.

Taha : Did you do a homestay?

Zaher : (1)..... . What is a homestay?

Taha : It's when you stay with a local family instead of a hotel.

Zaher : (2).....?

Taha : You should try it to experience daily life with the family.

Zaher : Do you think it's safe?

Taha : (3)..... . Homestays are usually safe.

Zaher : I see. It might be fun to try a homestay on my next trip.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(5 marks)

1. Aya became the after winning the tennis competition.

a) loser

b) customer

c) waiter

d) champion

2. Reading more can your vocabulary.

a) agree

b) increase

c) decrease

d) offer

3. My city has lots of green where we can relax.

a) spaces

b) artifacts

c) deserts

d) programs

4. How your last birthday party?

a) did

b) do

c) was

d) is

5. Omar and I next week. We have got the tickets.

a) travel

b) traveled

c) will travel

d) are traveling

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: (5 marks)

When we are learning, it is important to think about the environment. Everyone knows how important it is to protect our planet. You should make your learning eco-friendly.

When do you usually study? A lot of students study in the evening when it gets dark. But ask yourself this question: How did people study before there were electric lights? You can save energy while studying. Turn off lights and devices when you are not using them. Try to study during the day so you can use natural sunlight. This will help you use less electricity.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is it important to protect our planet while learning?

2. How can you save energy while studying?

3. What are some ways to make your learning eco-friendly?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Many students usually study in the/at

a) morning b) afternoon c) evening d) midnight

5. You should use during the day to study and save electricity.

a) electric lights b) natural sunlight c) flashlights d) candles

5 Read and correct the underlined words: (2 marks)

1. What time does your kids get up every day? (.....)

2. My little sister was sleeping when I call her. (.....)

3. I am going travel to Alexandria next weekend. (.....)

4. If he doesn't hurry, he miss the train. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on: (3 marks)

"A problem in my community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2 marks)

1. The park needs more

- a) spaces b) trees
c) buildings d) walls

2. Youssef uses to spread the word.

- a) computers b) mobiles
c) social media d) tablets

Scan & listen



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

(3 marks)

Said and Waleed are talking about learning new things.

Said : What do you find when you study math problems?

Waleed : I find it easy to understand the ideas.

Said : (1).....?

Waleed : I find it difficult to remember new English words.

Said : Do you have any problems with anything else?

Waleed : (2)..... . I have a problem with solving word problems.

Said : You should practice with examples and ask the teacher for help.

Waleed : (3)..... .

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(5 marks)

1. Reducing carbon is important for the environment.

- a) emissions b) platforms c) lanes d) stations

2. It's important to think about how visitors use natural

- a) cultures b) sites c) resources d) causes

3. Tamer stayed home because he had a serious

- a) wheelchair b) event c) story d) sickness

4. There aren't apples for everyone.

- a) too b) much c) enough d) less

5. Sally the movie we watched.

- a) was liking b) liked c) is liking d) like

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

(5 marks)

Last week, I volunteered at the museum with my school history club. I love history and helping people, so I was excited! On Saturday, we arrived at 8:00 a.m. before the museum opened, and helped make some museum displays. Then the museum opened! Not long after that, I saw a group of younger kids who needed some help. I helped them draw pictures of their favorite artifacts. Some kids were shy at first, but when they started coloring, they became more confident. By the end of the day, I realized how much I loved helping others discover history. I can't wait to volunteer again!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why was the writer excited about volunteering at the museum?
.....
2. What time did the writer and the history club arrive at the museum?
.....
3. How did the younger kids become more confident while drawing pictures?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The writer helped make before the museum opened.
a) snacks b) posters
c) museum displays d) cinema displays
5. The writer helped the younger kids
a) draw pictures b) read stories c) write novels d) play games

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

(2 marks).

1. The match begin at 4:00 p.m. tomorrow. (.....)
2. Mohamed is clever. She usually gets high marks. (.....)
3. Sam dislikes wake up early. (.....)
4. Whose pen this is? (.....)

④

Writing

- 6 Write an email of about FIVE (5) sentences to your friend Ahmed to tell him about how to learn in an eco-friendly way. Your name is Adel and your email address is adel10@gmail.com. Your friend's email is ahmed22@gmail.com.** (3 marks)

(3 marks)

Test (4)

20

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2 marks)

1. The speaker is going to his grandparents'

a) village

b) house

c) city

d) town

2. The speaker is to know that his/her friend wants to go to the mall.

a) terrible

b) worried

c) excited

d) surprised



2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

(3 marks)

Mazen and Zahraa are suggesting going to the park for a picnic.

Mazen : I was thinking about what to do this weekend. Any suggestions?

Zahraa : (1).....?

Mazen : That sounds nice. What should we bring?

Zahraa : We should bring some sandwiches, fruits, and drinks.

Mazen : (2).....!

Zahraa : (3).....?

Mazen : We should meet at 10 a.m.

Zahraa : Let's go then.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(5 marks)

1. Many local gave money to the charity to help the poor.

a) businesses

b) tasks

c) tools

d) amounts

2. Clean transportation less carbon emissions.

a) damages

b) produces

c) moves

d) reduces

3. A water is a great place to have fun with friends and family.

a) statue

b) garden

c) park

d) glass

4. Can you imagine without the internet?

a) live

b) living

c) to live

d) to living

5. Don't worry, mum. I promise I take good care of the plants.

a) have

b) am going

c) am

d) will

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: (5 marks)

City planning is very important for small cities in Egypt. It helps city leaders decide how to use land. As the population grows and more people need to live in cities, planning helps towns and cities ensure that all the new people have a good place to live. One part of urban planning is building new homes, schools, and parks. Another important job is creating hospitals, shops, and other community areas. These facilities improve the quality of life for the people who live there. Many small cities are near beautiful open areas. We need to protect the environment in these spaces and build homes and facilities for future population growth.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is city planning important for small cities in Egypt?
.....
2. How does urban planning help with the increasing population?
.....
3. What are some facilities that improve the quality of life for people in small cities?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Building new is one part of urban planning.
a) bridges b) homes c) schools d) b & c
5. We should protect in small cities.
a) roads b) factories c) open areas d) stadiums

5 Read and correct the underlined words: (2 marks)

1. Why do you late now? (.....)
2. She has so enough friends in her class. (.....)
3. Magdy is the person that father helped build this school. (.....)
4. Omar is very tall. I can play basketball. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on: (3 marks)

"A story you read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

(2 marks)

Scan & lister

- نص الاستماع
في نهاية الملحق.



(3 marks)

Amr : (3) Glad I could help!

(5 marks)

1. Reading before bed is a good
a) habit b) habitat c) sign d) signal
2. Green trees and flowers the start of spring:
a) recycle b) represent c) reuse d) rewrite
3. Peter worked as a/an on the river.
a) driver b) journalist c) inventor d) riverboat pilot
4. I can't meet you as I my friend in the hospital.
a) visited b) going to visit c) am visiting d) visit
5. The museum open on Mondays.
a) won't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) don't

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

(5 marks)

Last month, I joined a weekend volunteer program to clean up our local beach. Every Friday and Saturday, we spent a few hours picking up trash. We started early each morning. The team leaders gave us gloves, trash bags, and special grabbers to pick up the trash. Some volunteers were students like me, and others were families or local people. Each weekend, we cleaned the beach and along the shore. I couldn't believe how much trash we found. There were bottles, cans, old shoes, and lots of plastic! I felt very proud to be part of the volunteer team, and pleased that we were helping to keep our beach clean.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the writer join the weekend volunteer program?

2. What did the team leaders provide to the volunteers?

3. How did the writer feel about being part of the volunteer team?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The speaker volunteered every at the beach.

a) day

b) Monday and Wednesday

c) Friday and Saturday

d) Thursday and Sunday

5. The volunteers found on the beach.

a) paper and books

b) bottles, cans, old shoes, and plastic

c) food and clothes

d) electronics and furniture

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

(2 marks)

1. The student which studies hard always gets good grades. (.....)

2. Dalia doesn't go to school because she was ill. (.....)

3. We expect you'll passing your exams. (.....)

4. If you won't clean your room, your mom will be upset. (.....)

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

(3 marks)

"Pros and cons of the internet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

(5) Listening Texts

Test 1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

When I learn something new, I break it down into small parts. I use pictures to help me understand better. I read and listen to the information many times. Teaching it to someone else also helps me remember. I make connections to things I already know. Repeating makes it easier to learn and remember new things. It's a simple way to improve my learning skills.

Test 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Town planning is important for small cities in Egypt to control growth. It makes sure there are good roads, schools, and hospitals. It helps stop too many people living in one place. Good planning improves life quality, reduces traffic, and helps the environment. By organizing spaces well, town planning saves natural resources, creating a happy community.

Test 3

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Emily Dickinson was born in 1830 in Amherst, Massachusetts. She rarely left her home, preferring quietness. Despite this, she wrote over 1,800 poems, many of which explore themes of death. Dickinson's work was affected by her notes of nature and during her lifetime, only a few of her poems were published, and often, they were edited heavily.

Test 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Helping out can make a big difference in someone's life. Simple acts like carrying groceries for an elderly neighbor or volunteering at a local charity are great ways to give a hand. Even small things, like holding the door open or offering a smile, can make others happy. Helping others is not only useful for them but also brings fun to you.

Test 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

My mom wants me to spend more time outdoors. She says I should play outside instead of watching TV. Now, I can only watch TV for one hour a day. She thinks too much screen time is bad for my health. She read that spending time outside can make you happier and healthier. I guess I need to find some new hobbies.

Test 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Driving cars harms the environment. About 23% of the world's carbon emissions come from cars. Vehicles that aren't electric or don't use clean fuel cause pollution and health issues. To help the environment, use clean transportation. Clean transportation produces fewer carbon emissions than regular cars.

Test 7

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

To make your learning eco-friendly, use digital notes instead of paper. Recycle any paper you do use. Choose recyclable materials like pens and notebooks. Use energy-efficient devices and turn them off when not in use. Use public transportation to get to your classes. One idea is to print on both sides of the paper to reduce waste.

Test 8

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Many students study in the evening. To save energy, turn off lights and devices when not in use. Try studying during the day with natural sunlight to use less electricity. Also, consider using pens made from recycled materials and notebooks with recycled paper. Finally, to reduce pollution, walk, cycle, or take public transportation to school.

Test 9

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I think what helped me succeed was not giving up. I kept trying and made small changes each time. Now, I know it's okay to fail at first because that's how you learn. In the future, I'll remember that practice and patience are important for any challenge.

Test 10

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Shorouk: How's your new life in Europe?

Farida : It's OK, but the basketball court is closed. There was a sign saying it's not safe.

Shorouk: Oh no! We have a similar issue here. They're building new apartments on open spaces. I wish we had more parks.

Farida : Exactly! I went to the community center to meet new friends, but it's outdated and doesn't offer many activities.

Test 11

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Healthy eating is important for everyone. Eating a balanced diet helps you stay strong and active. You should eat fruits and vegetables every day. Avoid too much sugar and fast food. Drinking plenty of water is also essential. By making healthy food choices, you can improve your overall health and feel better each day.

Test 12

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Today, there are many plans to build new green cities in Egypt, but most of them are small places with an area of about 580 kilometers, making it more like a village. The plan was announced in 2022, and it will take time to complete. The new green cities will have many green spaces with grass, trees, and community gardens.

Test 13

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Today, I spent the morning gardening with my mother. I wanted to plant flowers, but I quickly realized it wasn't easy. The ground was hard, so digging the soil was very difficult. However, I kept dropping the seeds. This was terrible, and I wanted to stop. My mother helped me, saying, 'Gardening needs patience, Lily.' Her words reminded me that new skills need time. In the end, I felt proud seeing the planted flowers.

Test 14

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Many people think our brains make new brain cells when we learn something new, but actually, we make new connections between existing cells. In the past, people believed our brains were inactive during sleep. However, new technology shows that some parts of the brain remain active. Research indicates that young people are more interested in learning when they understand its usefulness.

Test 15

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Hi Sara! I'm excited for the weekend too. I'm visiting my cousin on Sunday. How about catching up on Saturday afternoon? It's unusual that you want to go hiking. Have you started liking outdoor activities now? Let's make the most of our time and enjoy the fresh air!

Test 16

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

AI is useful, but we must use it carefully. Here are some safety rules: Without settings or controls, AI can be harmful. Relying only on AI means information may be incorrect. It can reduce critical thinking skills if you depend on AI too much. Using AI a lot without controls can risk your personal details being accessed.

Test 17

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Man: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to the library?

Woman: Sure. Go straight along this street until you get to the river, then turn right and walk along Riverbank Street for three blocks. You'll see a bridge on your left. Go across the bridge and walk for one block. The library will be on your left.

Al-Azhar Test 1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

When we are learning, it is important to think about the environment. You should make your learning eco-friendly. First, use less paper. Use a computer or tablet to take notes or to read books.

Al-Azhar Test 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Electric vehicles are better for the environment than cars that use dirty fuel, so we need more charging stations.

Al-Azhar Test 3

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Youssef loves planting trees. One day, he hears that a park needs more trees. The city doesn't have enough money. He decides to use social media to spread the word.

Al-Azhar Test 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

I'm excited about my presentation. I'll do well. I'm going to my grandparents' house on Saturday morning. I'm surprised that you want to go to the mall.

Al-Azhar Test 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Last year, my family and I decided to visit Cape Town in South Africa. It's famous for amazing landscapes, beautiful buildings, and the incredible Table Mountain.

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٩١٧٥

خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع الحقوق محفوظة © لدار نهضة مصر للنشر

يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين

أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية

أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.